

## **Unit-1**

# **Tourism Resources: Definitions, Meaning and Characteristics**

---

### **Structure:**

#### **1.0 Objectives**

#### **1.1 Introduction**

#### **1.2 Inventory of Natural Resources**

##### **1.2.1 Planes of Northern India**

##### **1.2.2 Islands**

##### **1.2.3 Water bodies**

##### **1.2.4 Wet Lands**

##### **1.2.5 Water Falls**

##### **1.2.6 Mountains**

##### **1.2.7 Rivers**

##### **1.2.8 Ponds**

##### **1.2.9 Biotic Resources**

#### **1.3 Tourism Inventory Resources of India**

#### **1.4 World Geographical Resources for tourism**

#### **1.5 Summary**

---

**1.0 Objectives:**

---

After reading this unit, you will be able to:

- Explain the concept and meaning of tourism inventory;
- Discuss the inventory of natural resources;
- List the various biotic resources of our country and
- Describe the elements/ingredients of tourism.

---

**1.1 Introduction:**

---

Our country is one of the most beautiful geographical regions of the world. All types of climates are found here in India. She is dotted with perennial rivers, mountains, hills, desert lands, ponds, beaches, plateaus and dense forests. The inventory of the nation makes her an attractive tourist destination. It is up to the People of a country need to maintain these resources and upgrade their quality so that tourists can visit that country regularly.

This is the first unit of this block. This unit will discuss our country's tourism inventory resources, including the inventory of natural resources such as islands, beaches, wetlands, forests, mountains, biosphere reserves, mangroves, rivers, ponds, etc. This unit also explains the world's geographical resources for tourism.

---

**1.2 Inventory of Natural Resources:**

---

Natural resources have been given to us by nature. These are explained as under:

**1.2.1 Planes of Northern India:**

Indus, Brahmaputra and the Ganges rivers formed these planes. The major sub-regions of these planes are – the Rajasthan plane, Punjab Haryana Plane, the Ganges plane and the Brahmaputra plane. These are the most fertile and inhabited parts of the world. Essential tourist spots of these planes are:

Amritsar (Punjab), Chandigarh, Kurukshetra (Haryana), Agra (UP), Jaipur (Rajasthan), etc.

**(I) Peninsular Plateau:**

It covers an area of 16, 00,000 sq. km. The Arawalis form its boundary in the North West, and Rajasthan hills form the boundary in the north and north-east. In the

south, at nearly 22° N Latitude, the Western Ghats (Sahayadri's) and the Eastern Ghats form its Western and Eastern boundaries, respectively. The places of tourist interest in this region are:

- (a) Ooty
- (b) Mahabaleshwar
- (c) Kalsubai
- (d) Salher
- (e) Annai
- (f) Mahendragiri hills
- (g) Udayagiri hills
- (h) Western Ghats
- (i) Mount Abu
- (j) Nakhi Lake, etc.

**(II) Coastal Planes:**

These planes are narrower on the western coast than on the eastern coast of the Indian peninsula. Many deltas are found on the eastern side of the Indian peninsular landmass. The western coastal planes stretch from Rann of Kutch to Kanya Kumari. Their total length is nearly 1,500 km. Sabarmati, Mahi, and other river systems have formed the Guajrt planes.

The eastern coastal planes start from the mouth of Subarnarekha and go up to Kanya Kumari; their length is nearly 1,100 km. Krishna and Godavari Rivers form a large delta in this region. The Utkal plane includes the Mahanadi Delta. The important tourist centres of the eastern side of the Indian peninsula are:

- Jagannath Temple ( Puri, Orissa)
- Chilika Lake (Orissa)
- Mahendragiri hills (Orissa)
- The Sun Temple at Konark (Orissa)
- Bhubneshwar (Orissa), etc.

The essential tourist centres located on the western side of the Indian peninsula are:

Goa (a total of 30 beaches); Saputara (Daman); Panchgani (Maharashtra); Thiruvananthapuram (Kerala); Kochu Veli Beach (Kerala); Ahmedabad (Gujarat); Gandhinagar (Gujarat); Dwarka (Gujarat); Vadodara (Gujarat), etc.

### 1.2.2 Islands:

India has 247 islands, of which 204 lie in the Bay of Bengal and the remaining lie in the Arabian Sea and the Gulf of Mannar. Andaman and Nicobar Islands have their major island groups in the Bay of Bengal. The Nicobar group has 19 islands. The Lakshadweep Island has an area of 32 sq. km in the Arabian Sea. The Minicoy Island has an area of 4.5 sq. km. These two islands, along with the islands of Rameshwaram on the eastern coast, are famous for their coral reefs.

### 1.2.3 Water bodies:

Lakes – Six significant types of lakes are found in India. These are as follows:

- Tectonic lakes: Wular Lake and the lakes of Kumaon.
- Lakes formed due to Volcanic Activities: Lunner Lake (Maharashtra)
- Lagoon lakes: Chilika (Orissa); Pulicat (TN); Kolleru (AP).
- Glacial Lakes: Khurpatal, Samtal, Punatal, Malwa tal, Nainital, Rakas Tal, Saat Tal, Bhim Tal and Naukuchila Tal (all in the Kumaon region of Uttarakhand).
- Lakes formed due to Aeolian Process: Sambhar (Rajasthan); Panchbhadara; Lunakransar and Didwana (Rajasthan).
- Other Lakes: Dal lake in Kashmir; Udaisagar (Rajasthan); Pichhola (Rajasthan); Rajasmand (Rajasthan); Jaisamand (Rajasthan); Annasagar (Rajasthan); Loktak (Manipur) Vembanad (Kerala); Hussian Sagar (AP); Sukhna lake (Chandigarh); Guru Govind Singh Reservoir (Punjab) and Hirakund Dam's lake (Orissa).

### 1.2.4 Wet Lands:

Sixteen Wetlands have been identified in India. These are as follows:

- Kolleru (AP)
- Wular (Kashmir)
- Chilika (Orissa)
- Loktak (Manipur)
- Bhoj (MP)

- Sambhar (Rajasthan)
- Pichhola (Rajasthan)
- Astha Mundi (Kerala)
- Sasthamkotta (Kerala)
- Harika Pattan (Punjab)
- Kanjali (Punjab)
- Ujni (Maharashtra)
- Reuna (UP)
- Kabar (Bihar)
- Nalsalovar (Gujarat)
- Sukhna (Chandigarh)

### 1.2.5 Water Falls:

Waterfalls are one of the important components of natural tourism attractions. Tourists are very much attracted to see these waterfalls. These are situated in the different parts of our country. Some of the essential waterfalls of India are mentioned below:

Sr. No.	Name of the Waterfall	River	Height (m)
1.	Jog	Sheavati	225
2.	MG Shiv	Cauvery Samundaram	90
3.	Gorak	Krishna	55
4.	Yena	Yena	183
5.	Paikara	Paikara	-
6.	Dhuandhar	Narmada	10
7.	Vihar	Tons	10
8.	Chula	Chamabal	18
9.	Manhar	Chambal	12
10.	Puna.ssa	Chambal	12
11.	Hundru	Subarnarekha	74

12.	Dasam	Kanchi	40
13.	Sadni	Sankh	61
14.	Gantandhara	Ram	85
15.	Ghagri	Ghagri	42
16.	Motijhara	The Ganges	45
17.	Kempty	Himalayan Waterfall	20

### 1.2.6 Mountains:

The great mountain zone is located in the northern part of the country. The Himalayas extend from the north to the northeast and have three almost parallel ranges. These ranges are interspersed with large valleys: Kashmir, Udhampur, Kotli, Lahaul and Spiti, Chamba, Doon, Kullu and Chumbi. The length of these mountains is nearly 2400 km, and their depth varies from 240 km to 320 km. The Garo, Khasi and Naga hills run almost from east to west and join the chain Miro and Rakhine hills from the north to the south.

The three major regions (zones) of the Himalayas are the Greater Himalayas, Middle Himalayas, and Outer Himalayas. The Greater Himalayas have an average height of 6000 m above the MSL. Important peaks in this region are – Hidden peak, Kanchenjuna, Dhaulagiri, Nanga Parbat, etc. The rainy season remains in force in this region from June to December. The major types of trees found here are – sal, pine, sagaun, fir, etc. Middle Himalayas have an average height of 3500 m to 5000 m above MSL. These extend in the south of Shivalik range. Important hill stations in the middle Himalayas are Darjeeling, Almora, Nainital, Shimla, and Mussoorie. Snowfall is witnessed in these areas from December to February. These are some of the best-known tourist spots of the world.

Outer Himalayas have an average height of 1,000m to 1500m above the MSL. The Shivalik range is included in the outer Himalayas. Rainfall varies from 150cm to 220cms. It comprises Dehradun valley, Udhampur valley and Kotli valley. The

Himalayan region has some of the best glaciers of the world. These glaciers give birth to perennial mountain rivers that are flooded during the rainy season.

### **1.2.7 Rivers:**

The rivers of India can be divided into four broad categories. These are as follows:

- Himalayan rivers
- Peninsular rivers
- Coastal rivers
- Rivers of the inland drainage system.

### **1.2.8 Ponds:**

These are small water bodies that cannot be called wetlands. These are seasonal. During rainy seasons, water is filled in these small or medium water bodies. This water is used by local people for bathing, drinking, washing clothes and bathing their cattle. It is usually not used for irrigation purposes. Most of these ponds are located in the southern part of the country. Most of the temples of south India have ponds or servers near or within their premises. These are not found in the peninsular's hilly areas, deserts, and coastal strips.

### **1.2.9 Biotic Resources**

Biosphere reserves, fauna and flora are the resources that fall under this category. India is a wealthy nation from the viewpoint of biodiversity. The total number of living organisms in this country is 75,000. Further, 45,000 types of plants are found in this vast country.

#### **(I) Fauna**

According to the zoological survey of India, there are 89,451 species of fauna in our country.

#### **(II) Flora**

Regarding plant diversity, India is in the tenth position in the world and fourth in Asia. The Botanical Survey of India has surveyed 70 percent of the country's land area and identified 47,000 species of plants.

The vascular floras, which form the conspicuous vegetation cover, comprise 15,000 species of flora. Out of these, more than 35 percent are endemic and not reported

to exist anywhere in the world. The forest cover of India is nearly 6373 million hectares.

### (III) Biosphere Reserves:

As of date, 12 biosphere reserves have been identified in India. These are:

S. No.	Biosphere Reserve	State
1	Nilgiris	Tamil Naidu, Kerela and Karnataka
2	Nanda Devi	Uttarakhand
3	Nukrek	Meghalaya
4	Great Nicobar	Andaman & Nicobar Island
5	Gulf of Mannar	Tamil Naidu
6	Manas	Assam
7	Sunderbans	West Bengal
8	Similipal	Orissa
9	Dibru Dhaikowa	Orissa
10	Dehong Deband	Orissa
11	Pachmarhi	Madhya Pradesh
12	Kanchan Junga	Uttarakhand

Three biosphere reserves have been recognised on the World Network of Biosphere Reserves by UNESCO. These are:

- Nilgiris
- Sunderbans
- Gulf of Mannar

Note that biosphere reserves are multipurpose protected areas and are developed to protect genetic diversity in the ecosystem.

### (IV) Mangroves:

These salt-tolerant ecosystems are found mainly in tropical, sub-tropical intertidal regions worldwide. They have large numbers of plant and animal species associated with one another over an evolutionary period of the seas. The total

mangroves that have been identified for conservation and management purposes are:

<b>Sr. No.</b>	<b>Mangroves</b>	<b>State of Location</b>
1.	Northern Andaman & Nicobar Islands	Andaman & Nicobar Island
2.	Sunderbans	West Bengal
3.	Bhitarkanika	Orissa
4.	Loringa	Andhra Pradesh
5.	Krishna Estuary	Andhra Pradesh
6.	Godavari Delta	Andhra Pradesh
7.	Mahanadi Delta	Orissa
8.	Pichavaram	Tamil Nadu
9.	Point Calimera	Tamil Nadu
10.	Goa	Goa
11.	Gulf of Kutch	Gujarat
12.	Coondapur	Karnataka
13.	Achra	Maharashtra
14.	Ratnagiri	Maharashtra
15.	Vembanad	Kerala

---

**Check Your Progress - I:**

---

Answer the following questions.

1. Name three biosphere reserves that have been recognized by UNESCO on World Network of Biosphere Reserves?
2. \_\_\_\_\_major types of lakes are found in India.
3. The rivers of India can be divided into\_\_\_\_\_broad categories.
4. Dal Lake is situated in \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Nanda Devi biosphere reserve is situated in\_\_\_\_\_.
6. The great mountain zone is located in the\_\_\_\_\_part of the country.

---

**1.3 Tourism Inventory Resources of India:**

---

The attractions of tourism are, to a considerable extent, geographical. Location and accessibility are essential, whether a place has a coastal or inland position and the ease with which a given place can be reached. Physical space may be considered a component for those who seek wilderness and solitude. A scenery or landscape is a compound of landforms, water, and vegetation with aesthetic and recreative value. Climatic conditions, especially the amount of sunshine, temperature and precipitation (snow and rain), are of particular significance. Animal life may be a significant attraction, firstly about bird watching or viewing games in their natural habitat. Secondly, for sporting purposes, e.g., fishing and hunting, Man's impact on the natural landscape in the form of his settlements, historical monuments and archaeological remains is also a major attraction. Finally, various cultural features -- way of life, folklore, artistic expressions, etc. provide valuable attractions to many.

**Peter's inventory of tourist attractions:**

Peter has drawn up an inventory of the significant attractions in tourism. The five categories are given in the following table.

- 1. Cultural:** Sites and areas of archaeological interest, Historical buildings and monuments; Places of historical significance; Museums; Modern culture, Political and Educational Institutions; Religious institutions.
- 2. Traditions:** National festivals; Arts and handicrafts; Music; Folklore; Native life and customs.
- 3. Science:** National parks; wildlife; flora and fauna; Beach resorts; Mountain resorts.
- 4. Entertainment:** Participation and viewing sports; Amusement and recreation parks; Zone and oceanariums; Cinemas and Theatres; Nightlife, Cuisine.
- 5. Other attractions:** Climate, health resorts or spas, and unique attractions unavailable elsewhere.

**Elements of Tourism:**

In addition to the basic components, certain elements or ingredients are crucial to tourism. These include:

**(I) Pleasing weather:**

One of the most crucial attractions of any tourist place is fine weather with warm sunshine. Good weather is a crucial ingredient for holidaying since it plays an essential role in making it a pleasant or unpleasant experience. Millions of tourists from countries with extreme climates visit beaches for fine weather and sunshine. Sunshine and clear sea breeze at the beaches have attracted many for a long time. The development of spas and resorts along the sea coasts in many countries resulted from the travelers' urge to enjoy good weather and sunshine. Countries like France, Italy, Spain and Greece have developed beautiful European beach

resorts. North Europeans visit the Mediterranean coast, searching for older resorts like Monte Carlo, Nice, and Cannes on the Riviera and new resorts in Italy and Spain.

Beautiful beaches in India, Sri Lanka, Thailand, Indonesia, Australia, and some other new destinations are yet more examples of what good weather can do. All these areas, which capitalize on good weather, have become important tourist spots.

Destinations with attractive climates, winter, warmth, and sunshine are also important tourist attractions. Many areas have become important winter holiday resorts attracting many tourists. Around these winter resorts, a variety of winter sports facilities have been installed to cater to the increasing needs of tourists. In countries with tropical climates many upland cool areas have been developed as "hill station resorts". Climate then is of particular significance to tourism and there are many areas which can be potential tourist areas because of their beautiful, bracing climates.

## **(II) Scenic Attractions:**

Scenic attractions, like good weather, are essential factors in tourism. Scenery or the landscape of mountains, lakes, waterfalls, glaciers, forest deserts, etc. are strong forces attracting people to visit them. Breathtaking mountains scenery and coastal stretches exerts an intense fascination for the tourist. The magnificent mountain ranges provide an atmosphere of peace and tranquillity. Tourists visiting the Northern slopes of the Alps in Switzerland and Austria and southern slopes in Italy and the Himalayan mountains slopes on India and Nepal for the first time, can't be charmed by their physical magnificence. Great natural wonders such as the Grand Canyon in the United States, the Giants cause way of Northern Ireland, the Niagara Falls, the Geysers of Iceland, the glaciers of the Alps, the forests of Africa, the mighty rivers, the lakes and the deserts are a source of great interest to many tourists and have become the basis of an expanding tourist industry.

**(III) Historical and Cultural Resources:**

Historical and cultural characteristics exert a powerful attraction for many. Since many centuries these have had a profound influence on the traveler. A large number of tourists are attracted every year by the great drawing power of Stratford-on-Avon in England because of its association with Shakespeare or the city of Agra in India with its famous Taj Mahal or Pisa in Italy for its famous Leaning Tower. Thousands of Americans and Canadians visit Europe because of its long historical heritage, besides, much view Europe as their original homeland and have a sentimental attachment to it. Any foreign visitor to England must visit London not because it is the large city in the country and the capital, but has an appreciable influence on the distribution of the world arrivals of the total international tourist movement within Europe and North America; at least 75 percent are intra-regional. In the America, the United States and Canada alone account for nearly 50 percent of all international tourist movements. Easy accessibility thus is the key factor for the growth and development of tourist movements.

**(IV) Amenities:**

Facilities are a necessary aid to the tourist center. For a seaside resort, facilities like swimming, boating, yachting, surf riding, and other facilities like dancing, recreation and amusements are important for every tourist centre. Amenities can be of two types: natural e.g., beaches, sea bathing, possibilities of fishing, opportunities for climbing, trekking, viewing, etc., and man-made, e.g., various types of entertainments and facilities which cater to the special needs of the tourists. Excellent sandy beaches, sheltered in sunshine with palm and coconut trees and offering good bathing conditions form very good tourist attractions. Certain other natural amenities such as spacious water for purpose of sailing, or the opportunities for fishing and shooting are also very important.

---

**1.4 World Geographical Resources for Tourism:**

---

Certain geographical features of the world attract travellers, e.g., which type of climate are most suitable for different types of tourist activity, and what sort of

coast and landscapes tourist find attractive. Which historical, cultural and wildlife resources have the tourism potential? It is also important to know where these features are located, e.g., what is the world distribution of climatic landscape, coastal, wildlife, and historical and cultural resources for tourism? Following are the main geographical features which attract travelers to them:

**1. Climatic resources for tourism:**

- 1) Rainfall
- 2) Cloud cover
- 3) Sunshine
- 4) Hot climates
- 5) Tropical climate
- 6) Mediterranean climate
- 7) Cool temperature climate
- 8) Cool climate
- 9) Mountain climate

**2. Coastal resources and the sea:**

- 1) The sea
- 2) The beach
- 3) The waves
- 4) The tides

**3. Landscape and wild life resources:**

- 1) Natural landscapes
- 2) Tropical forests
- 3) National parks
- 4) Wildlife sanctuaries
- 5) Hot deserts

**4. Historic resources for tourism:**

- 1) Early civilization
- 2) The classical world
- 3) The age of Migration

- 4) Medieval times
- 5) 17<sup>th</sup> century to the present

5. Cultural, entertainment and man-made resources for tourism:

- 1) Theme parks
- 2) Entertainment
- 3) Leisure shopping
- 4) Sporting events
- 5) Night life

---

**1.5 Summary:**

---

India is one of the most beautiful geographical regions of the world. Scenic attractions, like good weather, are critical factors in tourism. Scenery or the landscape consisting of mountains, lakes, waterfalls, islands, glaciers, forests, deserts, wetlands, rivers, etc. are strong forces attracting people to visit our country. In this unit, we have discussed India's tourism inventory. We have explained the inventory of natural resources, which includes planes of northern India such as peninsular plateau and coastal planes; biotic resources like biosphere reserve, flora, fauna; water bodies; and so on,

---

**1.6 Answers to Check Your Progress:**

---

1. a) Nilgiris  
b) Sunderbans  
c) Gulf of Mannar
2. Six
3. Four
4. Kashmir
5. Uttarakhand
6. Northern
7. 6373

---

**1.7 Suggested Readings:**

---

1. Lonely Planet, India
2. IATO Manual, 2004.
3. Bhatia, A.K., (2002). International Tourism Management, Sterling Publications Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi.
4. Thandavan and Girish, (2006). Tourism Products-I, Dushyant Publishers, New Delhi.
5. [www.unwto.org](http://www.unwto.org)

---

**1.8 Review Questions:**

---

1. List the essential tourist centres located on the eastern and western sides of the Indian peninsula.
2. Write down the names of three major regions (zones) of the Himalayas.
3. What are the important waterfalls of India?
4. Write a short note on Biotic Resources of our country.
5. Write down the names of the major types of lakes found in India.

---

**1.9 Glossary:**

---

1. **Tourism:**

Tourism is travel for predominantly recreational or leisure purposes or providing services to support this leisure travel.

**2. Inventory:**

Inventory is a list of goods and materials, or those goods and materials themselves, held available in stock by a business.

**3. Leisure:**

Leisure or free time, is a period of time spent out of work and essential domestic activity.

**4. Resources:**

Resource is a stock of supply of materials or assets.

---

## **Unit- 2**

### **Tourism Products: Definitions, Meaning, Characteristics and Classification**

---

**Structure:**

**2.0 Objectives**

**2.1 Introduction**

**2.2 Characteristics of Tourism Resources**

**2.2.1 Unique Characteristics of the Tourism Industry**

**2.2.2 Unique Characteristics of the Tourism Product**

**2.3 Summary**

---

**2.0 Objectives:**

---

After reading this unit, you will be able to:

- Explain the meaning and concept of tourism resources;
- Describe the characteristics of tourism resources and
- Differentiate between tangible and intangible services.

---

**2.1 Introduction:**

---

Oxford Concise Dictionary (2002) defines 'resources' as "a stock of supply of materials or assets". A resource is a type of power or asset that can be used to generate money, power and assets. Natural tourist spots are the natural tourism resources of a country. The resources of a nation make her an attractive tourist destination. It is up to the people of that country to maintain those resources and upgrade their quality so that tourists can visit that country regularly.

The beauty of natural and manmade tourist destinations attracts tourists towards them. Further, places of historic and religious significance are also on the agenda of many a tourist. Water-based sports offer water skiing, parasailing, water scooter driving, etc. Land-based sports offer skiing (on snow-clad terrain), horse riding, walking and visiting natural spots like gardens, zoos etc. Air-based sports offer hang-gliding, paragliding, bungee jumping, flying and other related activities to travel in the air. In addition, historic spots, forts, and palaces are also resources; these are invariably owned by the governments of the countries in which they are located. Many of these are also heritage sites. Example: The Sun Temple of Konark (Orissa).

This is the second unit of block, 'Tourism Resources of India'. It introduces you to the characteristics of tourism resources. In this unit, we will discuss the concept and meaning of tourism resources. We will also discuss the unique characteristics of the tourism industry and the characteristics of tourism products.

---

**2.2 Characteristic of Tourism Resources:**

---

The major characteristic of services is that 'services are those separately identifiable, essentially intangible activities which provide want satisfaction and

are not necessarily tied to the sale of a product or another service to produce a service, may not require the use of tangible goods. However, when such use is required, there is no transfer of title to these tangible goods. You should have understood by now that just as in case of product marketing, in case of the service marketing, your starting point for understanding the marketing dynamics is the want-satisfaction of customers. It is imperative to identify the particular want (s) that your service is fulfilling correctly since this will help you design the most appropriate marketing strategy.

Before we study the features of tourism resources, we should study the unique characteristics of the tourism industry.

### **2.2.1 Unique Characteristics of the Tourism Industry:**

- Tourism is a temporary and short-term movement of tourists.
- It is an activity concerned with the utilization of leisure hours. People become tourists for fun or to explore new areas/spots that were hitherto unknown to them.
- Tourism is a composite industry; its components are transport, food, beverages, bars, musical and cultural programmes, various land-based, water and air-based activities, fun and frolic, purchase of goods and staying in the lap of nature. The tourist may also like to confront the relics of the past during his brief sojourn at a tourist spot.
- Business and tourism are being mixed nowadays. This tourism feature has received attention from transporters, hotel owners, resort managers and government authorities alike.
- Efficient tour itinerary planning would decide how a tourism firm would fare in the local, regional, national or global markets. As this industry essentially involves the transport of customers to the products (and not vice versa), its characteristics and marketing strategies are quite different from those that relate to marketing traditional products and services.
- Transport is an essential component of tourism. Without adequate means of transport, this industry cannot survive.

---

**Check Your Progress-I**

---

Put (✓) against the correct statement and (x) against the incorrect statement.

1. Business and tourism are being mixed nowadays. (     )
2. Efficient planning of tour itinerary is not necessary. (     )
3. The tourism product is an intangible item. (     )
4. Attraction does not play a major role in the operations of the tourism industry. (     )
5. The complex nature of tourism product demands unique marketing strategies. (     )

Check your answer with the one given at the end of the unit.

**2.2.2 Unique Characteristics of Tourism Products:**

- The tourism product is an intangible item. Tourists cannot taste, touch or smell a tourism product. They can only “go through” package tours and enjoy experiences during such tours. They have to avail themselves of the services first and then learn about their quality.
- As already stated, shopping sprees of tourists lead to product sales. So, we can state that we are selling some products to tourists. However, these products are not the focus areas for tourists. Their primary objective is to enjoy the environs of a tourist spot. They may or may not indulge in shopping activities. So, visiting a place of tourist interest is mandatory because they have already paid for such services. But purchasing products, eatables, gifts and souvenirs are optional because they would buy such items only if they want to buy them.
- Attraction plays a significant role in the operations of the tourism industry. Tourists are motivated to visit tourist spots of repute because they may have heard a lot about their bewitching beauty. So, if a tourist spot or place is attractive, it can become a hot tourist destination (provided the government, private tour operators and travel agencies pay sufficient attention to it).

- Tourism products are a complex mix of products and services. Airline coaches or railway seats, local transport modes, and other vital elements associated with tourism stay and travel are essential for profit generation. The complex nature of tourism products demands unique marketing strategies. It cannot be sold like Maggie Noodles from a department store. It must be sold in a well-furnished office by professionals (who have been trained to execute such jobs).
- Tourism products are invariably costly. For the residents of the west, the costs may not be very high. However, for the residents of the developing, least developing, and least developed nations, such costs may seem to be whopping. However, air and cruise line travel would prove very costly. Airlines offer Apex Fare schemes during peak holiday seasons. Tour packages are cheap if only these are booked on a twin-sharing basis. Otherwise, a package tour of 8 nights and nine days can cost anywhere between Rs.70000 to Rs.120000, depending upon the class of travel bought and the star categories of hotels opted for stay during the itinerary.
- Customers of a tourism product always look for quality in the tour programme or in its various components. So, the functional responsibilities of the marketing professional in the parlance of tourism administration increase.
- The state is always involved in creating, preserving or developing the infrastructure related to the tourism product. Example: A private firm cannot build roads that are thousands of km in terms of length. Lakes have to be developed by state agencies. Even if a private firm were engaged to execute such Herculean tasks, the government would be required to provide support of finance, electric power, right of way, equipment, etc. This aspect is relevant in developing countries, though trends are changing nowadays. Finally, historic monuments, palaces, forts, gardens, and zoological parks are on the state's priority list. Example: The Archeological Survey of India maintains several monuments, and many sites in India have been identified as part of World Heritage. Thus, even if the tourism industry were privatized around the world, the governments (at local and national levels) would continue to play valuable roles in developing,

---

preserving and maintaining many vital components of tourism products under their jurisdiction.

- Many components of the tourism product are perishable. Example: If the seats of an aircraft are vacant, these cannot be filled once airborne. The airline loses the revenue it could have earned, had these seats been sold to passengers. The same fact applies to cruise line and coach bookings. If hotel rooms remain unoccupied during off seasons, the hotel owner has to spend money for their maintenance, but he cannot earn money simply because these rooms are vacant.
- Insurance, claims management, demurrage charges, banking, Internet operations, the CRS, medical insurance and first aid facilities and infrastructure (roads, railway systems, air networks, etc.) are tourism products' components.
- All the elements of a tourism product mix must be synchronised in such a manner as to ensure good quality of the overall package that is being offered to the customer. Airport-hotel-airport transfers, amenities at historical sites, support of tour guides, fun and frolic activities, food, beverages, liquor, etc. must be planned and executed according to time-bound schedules. This fact is actual for both domestic and international tourism operations.
- Tourism products are designed to give pleasure to their buyers. Some other ingredients are the quest for knowledge, exploration of new sites etc. However, the primary purpose of delivering a tourism product is more or less the same - deriving pleasure and being relaxed at a new or beautiful spot. The modern-day man is constantly under stress due to the daily chores of life. He takes a break by undertaking a tour and, thus, escapes from the excruciating demands of his routine life, at least for some days.
- The customer goes to the tourism product/service; it is not delivered at his doorstep. This is a unique feature of the tourism product.
- Customers of tourism products are heterogeneous people. They can be rich, poor, and whimsical, always in a hurry, very slow, egoists, very old, little children and even executives in their mid-forties. They may feel uncomfortable when they are

huddled together in groups and taken to various tourist spots. If group tourism activities are executed, their personalized needs are given a back seat, which is quite natural. Group tours are cheaper than personalized (individual) tours. However, tourism marketers must try to understand the precise needs of every tourist in a group and try to satisfy those needs to the maximum possible extent. While doing so, however, they must not forget the constraints that have been imposed on them by time, resources, tour itineraries and the tourism organization they work for.

---

### 2.3 Summary:

---

In this unit, we discussed the characteristics of tourism resources. Tourism is a composite industry. Many components of the tourism product are perishable. Tourism products are designed to give pleasure to their buyers. The customer goes to the tourism product/service; it is not delivered to his doorstep.

The principal characteristic of services is that 'services are those separately identifiable, essentially intangible activities which provide want satisfaction and are not necessarily tied to the sale of a product or another service to produce a service, may not require the use of tangible goods. However, when such use is required, there is no transfer of title to these tangible goods.

---

### Check Your Progress-II:

---

Fill in the blanks:

The tourism product is a complex mix of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

Tourism is a temporary and short-term movement of \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_ and tourism are being mixed nowadays.

Customers of tourism products are \_\_\_\_\_ people.

\_\_\_\_\_ plays a major role in the operations of the tourism industry.

Check your answers with the one given at the end of the unit.

---

**2.4 Answers to Check Your Progress**

---

**Check Your Progress - I**

1. Products and Services
2. Tourists
3. Business
4. Heterogeneous
5. Attractions

**Check Your Progress - II**

1. (√)
2. (X)
3. (√)
4. (X)
5. (√)

---

**2.5 Suggested Readings:**

---

1. Lonely Planet, India
2. IATO Manual, 2004
3. Bhatia, A.K., International Tourism Management, Sterling Publications Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi, 2002.
4. Thandavan and Girish, Tourism Products-I, Dushyant Publishers, New Delhi. 2006.
5. [www.unwto.org](http://www.unwto.org)

---

**Check Your Progress-II**

---

**Fill in the blanks:**

1. The tourism product is a complex mix of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Tourism is a temporary and short-term movement of \_\_\_\_\_.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ and tourism are being mixed nowadays.
4. Customers of tourism products are \_\_\_\_\_ people.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ plays a major role in the operations of the tourism industry.

Check your answers with the one given at the end of the unit.

---

**2.6 Review Questions:**

---

1. Explain the concept and meaning of tourism resources.

2. Discuss the unique characteristics of the tourism industry.
  3. Describe the important features of tourism products.
  4. List the mane of intangible tourism products.
- 

**2.7 Glossary:**

---

1. **Tangible** - having physical substance and intrinsic monetary value.
2. **Hospitality** - the practice of receiving and entertaining strangers and guests with kindness.
3. **Planning** - Selection of short- and long-term objectives and the drawing up of tactical and strategic plans to achieve those objectives.
4. **Resources** - Some components which fulfils people's needs.

---

## Unit - 3

### Classification of Tourism Products

---

**Structure:**

**3.0 Objectives**

**3.1 Introduction**

**3.2 Natural Tourism Resources in India**

**3.2.1 Mountains**

**3.2.2 Hill Stations**

**3.2.3 National Parks and Sanctuaries**

**3.2.4 Beaches**

**3.3 Man-made Tourism Resources in India**

**3.3.1 Museums**

**3.4 Socio-cultural Tourism Resources of India**

**3.4.1 Fairs**

**3.4.2 Festivals**

**3.4.3 Dance**

**3.4.4 Cuisine**

**3.5 Heritage Tourism Resources of India**

**3.6 Summary**

---

**3.0 Objectives:**

---

After reading this unit, you will be able to:

- Explain the concept and meaning of tourism resources;
- Discuss about the natural tourism resources of India;
- Explain the history of the country through heritage tourism resources and
- Describe the traditional culture of our country through socio-cultural resources.

---

**3.1 Introduction:**

---

India is the second most popular and sixth largest country in the world, lying entirely in the Northern Hemisphere. It offers various mountains, hills, valleys, peaks, seas, beaches, landscapes, scenic beauty, monuments, memorials, art, dance, fairs, festivals and architecture. India has varied tourism potentials. The wealth of cultural traditions, the natural surroundings, and the architectural masterpieces of art, sculpture, painting, music, dance, customs, and languages all make India a tourist paradise.

In this unit, we shall study the classification of tourism resources in India. These are classified into Natural tourism resources, Man-made tourism resources, Socio-cultural tourism resources and Heritage tourism resources of India

---

**3.2 Natural Tourism Resources of India:**

---

India, with its geographical diversity, has been endowed with a wealth of ecosystem, comprising biosphere reserves, mangroves, coral, coral-reefs, deserts, mountains, forests, flora and fauna, seas, hill stations, lakes and rivers, etc. and many other natural properties. Tourism today is a unifying force globally and contributes to the national unity, cultural integration and understanding among people from different regions of our vast country. In India, millions of people directly or indirectly depend on tourism for employment and livelihood. Tourism is the third largest source of our foreign exchange earnings. However, considering the immense potential of tourism in our country, the growth could be much more significant. Tourism is the largest industry in the world and, therefore of strategic

importance to countries with natural endowments such as ours. Travel for pilgrimage and learning has been an integral part of India culture from the beginning of civilization.

India has been a tourist destination since ancient times. Fahian and Huen Tsiang from China, Mark Twain and a few Christian apostles from the west came to India many years ago. However, many beautiful treasures of our country are still little known or unknown to our people. India presents a remarkable mix of things for a traveller to see and do. One can discover hidden historical gems around almost every corner, from crumbling vestiges of the British Raj fringing city streets to the mighty battle-scarred forts looking high above forlorn country padlocks.

Human perceptions and attitudes define natural resources, wants, technology skills, legal, financial and institutional arrangements, and political systems. These are classified as under:

### **3.2.1 Mountain:**

**Himalayas:** The highest mountain system in the world, and one of the world's youngest mountain ranges. It extends practically uninterrupted for a distance of some 2500 km and covers an area of about 5,00,000 sq. km. It contains the world's highest mountain peak, Everest, and some ten peaks rising to about 7,500 meters. The Himalayas reached their present heights much later. The Himalayas are young; they are called Fold Mountains because they are made of at least three significant folds or parallel ranges. Himadri (Great Himalayas), Himachal (Middle Himalayas), and Siwalik (Lower Himalayas). They are characterized by high peaks, gorges, I-shaped valleys, glaciers, glaciated topography, and steep slopes, which indicate that the mountains are still very young.

The Greater Himalayas are known as Himadri, the loftiest mountain range in the world. The crucial peaks in Himadri are Mount Everest (Nepal), Kanchanjunga (Sikkim), Nanga Parbat (Kashmir) Nanda Devi (Uttarakhand) Namcha Barwa (Tibet).

Himachal or Middle Himalayas, also known as Himachal, lie south of Himadri. Height - 3700 - 4500 meters above the sea level. The important Hill stations are

Dalhousie, Shimla, Mussoorie, Nainital, and Darjeeling. The necessary passes in the Himalayas are Shipkila, the Tibetan Himalayas road in Himachal Pradesh, Nathula, which is on the way from India to Lhasa in Tibet, and Bomdila in Arunachal Pradesh.

The Himalayas are known for some of the most beautiful valleys in the world. Kashmir valley is called "Paradise on the Earth". Kullu is found in Himachal Pradesh, Doons in Kumayun Himalayas and Kathmandu Valley in the Nepal Himalayas. The central Himalayan pilgrim centres are Badrinath, Kedarnath, Gangotri, Hemkund Sahib and Yumunotri. They are situated at a height of 3000-3500 meters and have a steady flow of pilgrims during the season.

Patkai and other allied mountain ranges run along the Indo-Bangladesh-Myanmar border and may collectively be called Purvanchal or eastern mountains. These ranges forming must have come into existence along with the Himalayas.

Aravalli Range in North-Western India is one of the oldest mountain systems in the world. The present Aravalli Range is only a remnant of the gigantic system that existed in pre-historic times, with several of its summits rising above the snow line and nourishing glaciers of stupendous magnitude that feed many great rivers.

Vindhyan Range traverses nearly the whole width of Peninsular India - a distance of about 1050 km with an average elevation of 300 meters. The Vindhyan range appears to have been formed by the weathered products of the ancient Aravalli Range.

Satpura range, another ancient mountain system, extends for a distance of 900 km with many of its peaks arising about 1000 meters. It is triangular, with its apex at Ratnapuri and two sides parallel to the Narmada and Tapti River.

Sahyadri or Western Ghats, with an average height of 1200 meters, is about 1600 km long and runs along the western border of the Deccan Plateau, from the mouth of the river Tapti to Kanyakumari, the southern-most point of India. It over looks the Arabian Sea and catches the full force of the monsoon winds, thus precipitating heavy rains on the West Coast. Eastern Ghats, bordering the East Coast of India, is cut up by the powerful revise into discontinuous blocks of mountains. In the

northern parts between the Godavari and Mahanadi rivers, it rises to above 1000 meters.

### 3.2.2 Hill Stations of India

#### Gujarat

- **Satpura Hill Resort:** It is 164 kms from Surat. It is a picturesque hill station on a plateau with Dang forest of the Sahyadri range of Gujarat. It is situated at an altitude of 1000 meters above sea level. It has a cool, pleasant climate. Tourists enjoy the local Music and Dance called Dangi Nritya.

#### Himachal Pradesh

- **Shimla** is the capital of Himachal Pradesh. It is an essential, attractive summer and winter resort. It is located at an altitude of 2130 meters above sea level. The city owes its name to Shyamala the mother deity. Splendid forests surround it. The Jakkoo Hill is situated at an altitude of 2455 meters. Tourists have a good view of the surrounding valley from Jakkoo Hill. The point where the promenade from the ridge meets the wall is called Scandal Point. A statue of Lala Lajpat Rai is erected in the Scandal Point. On the full moon day the sunset and moonrise can be seen simultaneously from the Prospect Hill. The Chadwick Fall is also an excellent picnic spot. The Wild Flower Hall was once the residence of British General Lord Kitchner and it is now converted into tourist hotel Kausall. It was developed as a cantonment sanatorium and is free from pollution.
- **Dalhousie:** It is situated at 2036 meters above sea level. It is a beautiful health resort. It is the gateway to the charming Chamba Valley. Dense forests, including oak and pine trees, cover it. It is known for its pleasant climate and picturesque scenery. It is a paradise for bird watchers. It is known for its natural scenery and warm sunshine.
- **Bakrota Hills:** It is situated at an altitude of 2055 meters and presents a beautiful view of snow-clad peaks. The Dainkund Hill resort, which is 2745 meters tall, offers a panoramic view of Rives Beas, Ravi, and Chenab.

- **Khajjiar:** It is a beautiful hill station in the Himalayan Region. Conifer trees surround it, and wild reeds surround a tiny lake. It is an ideal place for trekking and golf.
- **Kullu:** It is 233 km from Shimla. Kullu, the valley of Gods, is a place of beauty and serenity. It is situated at an altitude of 1219 meters. Snowcapped peaks of the Himalayas surround it. The tall fir, deodar trees, waterfalls, slopes, and river Beas make it an ideal summer resort. Apples, strawberries, apricots, peas and peaches are found in plenty.
- **Naggar:** It is situated at 1700 meters above sea level. River Ravi flows majestically and enhances the beauty of the resort. Apple orchards cover Naggar, and the houses are built of Deodar timber, with the roof made of Laterite stone tiles. It is a place of tourist attraction. It contains the paintings and sculptures of Nicholas Roerich, a famous Russian Painter. It has tribal museums that display tribal dress, utensils, and musical instruments.
- **Manali:** It is 40 km from Kullu. It is 1926 meters above sea level and is described as Queen of Hill Resort. Lush green meadows and forests surround it. The Sarkund Lake and Rahalla waterfalls add beauty to Manali.
- **Kinnaur:** It is situated at an altitude of 7350 meters. It is on the Indian-Tibetan border. Dense forests and ravines cover it. The two large, beautiful rivers in Kinnaur are Sutlej and Spiti.
- **Panchi:** It is situated at an altitude of 700 meters above sea level. It is a beautiful hill resort. It has beautiful lakes and waterfalls.

### Madhya Pradesh

- **Pachmarhi:** It is situated at an altitude of 1067 meters. It is an ideal place for honey mooners. The natural beauty, solitude and scenic attractions attract tourists. Sunset point and Priyadarshini point are other attractions.

### Rajasthan

- **Mount Abu:** It is 185 km from Udaipur. It is one of the most unique hill stations in India. It is the only hill station in Rajasthan and attracts many tourists from different parts of the country. It is known for its scenic beauty, architecture,

sculpture and excellent natural environment. Thick forests surround it. Mount Abu was described as the home of Gods because saints and sages were attracted to it. The Bikanar palace, Jaipur and Bharathpur palace were converted into deluxe palace hotels. Alwar palace now houses a prestigious school. The Sirchi palace continues to be the summer residence of the royal family. According to inscriptions on the hill, Abu was originally the strong hold of Shaivism. Many important sages like Varisht and Maharishi had their retreat on Mount Abu. The sunset point offers an enchanting view of the crimson colors of the setting sun in the horizon. The Honeymoon point looks especially beautiful at sunset hours.

### **Uttarakhand**

- **Kausani:** It is a fine hill resort in the interior of Himalayas. It is popularly called the Switzerland of India. The Pindari and Pinakesh glaciers are haunting places of tracker. Gandhiji completed this Bhagavat Geeta in this hill resort.
- **Mussoorie:** It is 35 km from Dehradun. It is an ideal place for trekkers. It is covered with streams, valleys and pine forests. It is popularly called as queen of hill stations. It offers a panoramic view of the snow clad Himalayan peaks. Skating, trekking and long walks make this an ideal resort.
- **Nainital:** This enchanting hill station is situated at an altitude of 1938 meters. It is covered by rich emerald green fir and deodar trees. Nainital's beautiful mountains and lakes make this an ideal hill resort.

### **West Bengal:**

- **Darjeeling:** This is a picturesque hill station situated at an altitude of 2134 meters. It is a popular hill station. It is close to Kanchanjunga peak. One can have a panoramic view of the snowcapped Himalayas. The Tiger Hill is the highest point of Darjeeling and it gives close view of mount Kanchanjunga and Mount Everest.

### **Maharashtra:**

- **Mahabali Puran:** Mahabali puran is an enchanting hill resort. It is 120 kms from Pune. It is the highest hill resort of the Sahyadri Ranges. The beautiful valleys, mountains and waterfalls attract the tourist. It is an ideal hill resort for all types of holiday makers. It is birth place of five rivers - Krishna, Koyna, Savithri, Goyathri

and Yenna. Mahabaleshwar is an ideal hill resort and best time for tourist is from October to June.

- **Lonavla:** It is near Pune. It is situated at an altitude of 596 meters in the western Ghats. It is a beautiful hill resort. The attractions are Lonavla Lake, Bhusia Lake and Barometer hill.
- **Khandala:** It is 70 kms from Pune. It is a popular resort in the western ghat. The important land marks are Rajmachi point and Byramji point.
- **Torahmal:** It is in the Satpura Mountains and is situated at an altitude of 1461 meters. The tourist attractions are Sectha Khali and Yeshward Lake.
- **Bhandardara:** This serene and beautiful hill resort is covered by lakes, landscapes and waterfalls. The magnificent hills, deep valleys and water falls make it a paradise for photographers.
- **Chikkaldhara:** It is situated at an altitude of 1118 meters in the Vidarbha region. It has enchanting lakes and waterfalls. It is excellent place to relax during summer.
- **Amboli:** It is a charming hill resort. It is situated at an altitude of 690 meters in the southern ranges of sahyadri. Amboli is an ideal hill resort.
- **Panhala:** Is a beautiful hill station on Western Ghats with an average altitude of 1200 metres above sea level. It is surrounded by thick forests. Panhala is known for its salubrious climate and scenic beauty.

### **Arunachal Pradesh**

- **Bomdila:** It is located at an altitude of 2850 meters. The enchanting sight of Bharati River, pine forests around Dirang valley and Sela pass situated at an altitude of 4600 meters are tourist attractions.

### **3.2.3 National Parks and Sanctuaries:**

India has a wealth of about 80 National Parks and 441 sanctuaries. Even though India is known for its tigers, elephants and rhinoceros, it is home to over 500 mammal species. Antelopes and deer like chinkaras, barasinghas, chitals, barking deers and smaller can easily be spotted in forests and wildlife reserves. Other animals that are easy to spot include buffaloes, massive Indian bisons, striped hyenas, wild pigs, jakals, Indian foxes and wild dogs. Among smaller mammals

are mongoose and giant squirrels. Big cats include leopards, short tailed jungle cats. Beautiful monkeys are very common sight especially around the jungle.

Gir (Gujarat) is famous for its Asiatic lions, the Indian rhinoceros is the pride of Assam (Kaziranga), elephants and tigers are common in the Gir forest. The mangrove forest of Sunderbans is unique habitat of the Royal Bengal Tiger. There are several National Park,s and sanctuaries in India, list of the few National Park,s and sanctuaries are given below:

- Bandhavgarh National Park, Madhya Pradesh.
- Bharatpur National Park, Rajasthan.
- Dandeli National Park, Karnataka.
- Dudhwa National Park, Uttar Pradesh.
- Corbett National Park, Uttarakhand.
- Suderban National Park, West Bengal.
- Kaziranga National Park, Assam
- Govind Sagar Bird sanctuaries, Himalayas
- Dachigam wild life sanctuary, Kashmir

### **3.2.4 Beaches:**

Sun, Sea and Sand is the kind of tourism in vogue today. You can see that it is coastal zone oriented. The boom in water-born recreation accentuated the relevance of beach resorts and island resorts to tourism development.

Beach tourism has led to an overall development of tourism in many parts of the world. Each year during mellow sunshine and warm winter, thousands of tourists throng the world's famous beaches. It utilizes the aesthetic and environment values of the beach. It also combines water and land resource usage. Water usage comprises swimming, surfing, sailing and other water sports. Land use activities incorporate construction of different types of accommodation (hotels, cottages, villas, camping sites, trailer parts), recreational areas, (play grounds, club activities, amusement parks), car and bus parking areas, entertainment and shopping access, roads and transportation networks. Other activities may include visits to tourist attractions in the vicinity of beach areas.

The available statistics show that the beach resorts attract a segment of tourists who stay longer, hence the challenging job of sustaining the interests of tourists. There may thus be provision for adventure sports, indoor games, entertainment, a bar sufficiently stocked with variety of drinks, Yoga, Ayurvedic, Naturopathy, etc. A high degree of vigilance is also needed in a resort. A tourist is the resort's responsibility and his welfare and well-being a constant obligation. As casual visitors also drop into the beach resorts, proper security arrangements are needed since the beach can never be fully fenced.

### Check Your Progress - I:

#### Fill in the blanks:

1. Dachigam wild life sanctuary is situated in \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Corbett National Park is situated in \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Sunderbans is unique habitat for \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ is the capital of Himachal Pradesh.
5. Lonavla is situated near \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The \_\_\_\_\_ is the highest point of Darjeeling.
7. Mount Abu is \_\_\_\_\_ km from Udaipur.

Check your answer with the one given at the end of the unit.

---

### 3.3 Man-made (Built) Tourism Resource of India:

---

Museums today are an essential source of tourist attraction. Objects and artefacts that reveal a country's genesis, its cultural expanse, land marks of its industrial and technological development, etc., are housed in museums. The concepts in musicology emphasize the social responsibilities of the museums towards endearing and entertaining the public. The first important museum was the Indian Museum in Calcutta, which was founded in 1875. The most significant development was the establishment of the National Museum in Delhi in 1949. The International Council of Museums (ICOM) defines a museum as "a non-profit making, permanent institution in the service of society and its development, and open to the public, which acquires, conserves, researches, communicates and

exhibits for study, education and employment, material evidence of man and his environment".

**Museum and Tourism:** The Museum has the potential to play an essential role in the tourism sector. The touring children may be the largest clientele group because the museum offers education and entertainment. Even adults can find them a great source of information about the locality or country's history, culture, and traditions. People can discover their past through museums. The promotion of tourism through museums, however, has to be a concerted effort.

Museums can be categorized as follows based on grants received and the control exercised:

- Central government museums, such as the National Museum, New Delhi.
- State museums such as Bhubaneswar, Assam State Museums, Guwahati etc.
- University, College and School Museums such as folklore museum, university of Mysore, Kala Bhavan B.H.U., Varanasi, etc.
- Private museums include Maharaja Sawai Madho Singh Museum, Jaipur, Birla Academy of Art, Calcutta, etc.

Museums can be classified based on the nature of their collection.

1. **General Museums** - Most of the museums fall under this category. Their collection includes articles of various types ranging from ancient to modern times, encompassing sculpture, painting, jewellery, pottery, technological implements, etc.
2. **Archaeological Museums:** Such museum mainly contains articles discovered from local excavations. Many of them are site museums maintained by the Archaeological Survey of India. Some crucial museums include the Archaeological Museum at Red-fort, Delhi, at Bodh Gaya and Nalanda in Bihar, at Sanchi, Khajuraho and Gwalior in Madhya Pradesh and at Mathura and Sarnath in Uttar Pradesh etc.
3. **Art Museums:** The museums possess works of art, which include sculptures, paintings etc. The most important are the Ashutosh Museum of Art (Calcutta) and National Gallery of Modern Art (New Delhi).

4. **Craft Museums:** These museum endeavours to popularize the crafts traditions of India and help the craftsmen direct access to the consumers. National Craft Museum in Pragati Maidan, New Delhi is the most prominent example.
5. **Children Museums:** Objects mainly of children's interests are housed here. Bal Bhavan and the International Dolls Museum, Delhi are two such museums.
6. **Defense Museums:** Their collections comprise of objects relating to national defense. National Defense Academy museum, Pune and Air Force Museum Palam, New Delhi are essential examples.
7. **Personality-based Museums:** These contain articles used by or related to some influential persons. Gandhi Memorial Museum and Nehru Memorial Museum in Delhi are two such institutions.
8. **Natural History Museums:** Flora and fauna of the world, objects showing the significant landmarks in the development of the earth and its inhabitants, etc. form part of their collection. The The National Museum of Natural History in New Delhi is the most important museum of this kind.
9. **Science and Technology Museums:** For example, central museum, Piloni (Rajasthan) Visvesvaraya museum, Bangalore and Rail Transport Museum, New Delhi.
10. **Specialized Museums:** These museums mostly keep specialized collections. Calico Museum (which has a collection of Indian textiles) and Utensils Museum (which has a collection of Indian utensils) in Ahmedabad (Gujarat) are two such examples.

---

### 3.4 Socio-Cultural Tourism Resource of India:

---

The Indian culture emerges out of a beautiful amalgamation of religion, history, music, dance, fairs and festivals, cuisine and handicrafts associated with people from various backgrounds and regions of the vast sub-continent. Her history dates back to 5000 years. Many foreign races invaded her, some of them made their home here. The rich history of this nation tells us that we have adopted the cultural and religious hues of all the invaders without bias. The feature of our socio-cultural fabric makes us unique in the world. No doubt all these independent cultural

attractions form a unique cultural attraction for the country itself, the image of which is attached to vibrant colors, music, dance and faith. The country's cultural resources are best reflected through fairs and festivals that showcase the reflection of its arts and crafts tradition and also provide opportunities to listen to soul string music, dance to the enchanting rhythm and collect some timeless memories. The country's culture has led to the emergence of ethnic tourism and the promotion of tourism, specifically by capitalizing on socio-cultural resources.

**Fairs and Festivals in India:** Fairs and Festivals are an essential part of social activity and are observed all over India in various ways. Sometimes it is not easy to separate them (fairs and festivals). In many cases they are inter-connected. Many fairs are held in India, usually at religious places or to celebrate religious occasions.

#### 3.4.1 Fairs:

- **Kumbhmela** is unique in that it does not exhibit the features associated with traditional Indian fairs. It is a religious congregation held every 12 years (Maha Kumbha) at one of the four holy places (Allahabad, Ujjain, Nasik and Haridwar). An "Ardha" or half Kumbha occurs every six years.
- **Pushkar Mela is held on the day of Kartik Purnima (from October to November).** Devotees gather around Pushkar lake and take bath in it. Pushkar, one of the holy pilgrimage places of India, is said to possess the only temple where Brahma is still worshipped. According to legend, when Brahma was reflecting on a suitable place to perform "Yagna" (sacrifice), a lotus fell from his hand. That spot became renowned as Pushkar.
- **Ganesh Chaturthi is mainly held in Pune, Orrisa, Mumbai (Bombay), and Chennai (Mad and isas), dedicatedthe** to elephant-headed god Ganesh. Giant models of the deity are worshipped and then immersed in water. It is a colourful festival and is particularly worth visiting on the day of immersion at Mumbai (Bombay).
- **Urs Ajmer Sharif - Ajmer, Rajashtan** - Every year Ajmer prepares for its festival Ajmer Sharif in the dargah of Shaikh Muinuddin Chishti, the founder of Chishti Sufi order in India. Delhi Sultans and Mughal Emperors all used to make

pilgrimage to this shrine. Annual Urs celebration continues here for seven days. Unique character of these celebrations is that people visit in large number to take the blessing of the reversed saints irrespective of their caste and creed.

- **Sonepur-Fair-Sonepur, Bihar** - At the time of Kartik Poornima, cattle fairs are held at Sonepur in Bihar, Bateshwar and Mukteshwar in the state of Utter Pradesh.
- **Gangaur Fair** - This is held in the month of July/August/September. This mela is held all over Rajasthan, especially in Jaipur, Udaipur and Mandawa. Unmarried girls and boys worship the idols of Shiva and Parvati. Women take out processions carrying the idols of Shiva-Parvati on their heads.
- **Nagaur Fair, Nagaur, Rajasthan** - A trading fair for cattle and camels. It is an excellent opportunity to catch up on rural life as cattle owners from all over the states camp on the outskirts of Nagaur.

### 3.4.2 Festivals of India

Festivals are very 'heart' of Indian socio-cultural life. Indian cultural life revolves around festivals and fairs. Regarding the socio-religious content of festivals and fairs, it is tough to separate them. Most of the festivals specific to the Hindus are seasonal. They announce the change in season and mark the harvesting seasons.

- **Holi:** The whole Braj region (Mathura - Brindavan region of Uttar Pradesh), traditionally associated with Krishna, is famous for its unique celebration of the Holi. On the 1st day of Holi the women of Barsana throw coloured water and gulal powder on the men of Nandgaon and hit them with sticks in a mock fight. The next day it is the turn of the women of Nandgaon to throw gulal and coloured water on the men of Barsana and attack them in the same fashion. The mock fight called Lathmaar Holi is considered auspicious and is meant as a harmless fun.
- **Deepawali (Diwali):** brings joy in the whole of India, practically every village, town and city is illuminated with earthen lamps, candles and electric bulbs to welcome Lakshmi, the goddess of prosperity and wealth. These celebrations are enjoyed by everyone, irrespective of their caste and creed, strengthening the feeling of love, prosperity and brotherhood in society.

- **Dashera:** Vijay Dashmi: Ramlila precedes the Vijay Dashmi celebration almost in every city community. Ramlilas are enacted and on the tenth day, huge procession are taken out. Statues of Ravana, Kumbhakaran and Meghnath are burnt down with bursting of crackers, symbolising the destruction of evil.
- **Durga Puja:** During this festival of Durga Pooja, whole of Gujarat comes to life. Women dance Garba around an earthen lamp and on the roads till late night. Durga Pooja celebrations in Bengal are unique. In Calcutta, in huge parks and fields and in every corner of the streets, 'Pandals' are constructed and decoration with light is done. In each Pandals images of Durga are worshipped for 10 days. Durga Pooja conveys the message of collective unity and love without which life becomes colourless.
- **Lohri:** During the Lohri festival the whole Punjab comes to life and dances to the tune of Bhangra.
- **Makar Sankranti:** Is the prominent festival of Hindus. This festival comes after one day of Lohri festival. It is celebrated in one form or other all over the country.
- **Bihu:** On this day, the whole Assam comes to life. People sing and dance on the beat of drum, pepa, tal, etc. In this dance, both men and women take part.
- **Muharram and Milad-un-Nabi:** Celebration in India acquires colour and cultural tradition. Id-ul celebration in India no longer confined to recitation of Namaz and wearing new clothes. In India, from the start of the month of Ramzan, people organise huge parties.
- **Budh-Purnima:** It is celebrated by Buddhists. Taking a holy dip on the day of Purnima is very much part of the Hindu religion. The Buddha, the founder of Buddhism, was born on this day.
- **Christmas:** Christmas is a significant event in all Indian Christian households and one can see Catholic Goa come to life at this time of the year.
- **Gurupurb:** The birth anniversary of Guru Govind Singh Ji is celebrated by Sikh community with great enthusiasm. It falls in December/January. Guru Govind Singh was the founder of Sikhism.

### 3.4.3 Dance:

Dance is nearly as old an art as the human civilization. It has always been a part of the life of Indian people. Our scriptures recognize dance as an essential activity connected with the search of God. The relics of the earliest civilization in India clearly demonstrate the importance of dance. Today's dance is as important as fine art. The recent revival of interest in dance developed as a sign of national pride in the glories of Indigenous art and culture, helped the development and popularity of our various dance styles. The more prominent and popular styles of Indian classical dances are:

- **Bharat Natyam:** It is perhaps the oldest among the contemporary classical dance forms in India. It is fairly well established that the dance was performed both as a solo dance and in groups.
- **Kathak:** Is one of the most popular dance forms of North India. It is also called Natwari dance. Musical forms such as tappa and thumri now provide the rhythmic base for dance. The costume used in Kathak is generally a brilliant sherwani (long coat) churidar Pajama and a decorated cap. The Muslim and Rajput impact is clearly visible on the costume. Kathak has been promoted through three main gharanas- Lucknow, Jaipur and Banaras and owe their origin to the Lucknow gharana.
- **Katha kali:** Is the dance form of the southernmost state of India, its centre has been the region of Kerala and Malabar. The genesis of the word Katha kali is generally traced to a combination of Katha and Kali, the literal meaning of which is dance-drama. In support of the dance performance, a group of singers continuously recited the poems from the epics. The artists who perform Kathakali do not sing the lines themselves. The dance is performed at night on a simple yet specially designed stage. A ritual playing of drums precedes the beginning of the performance.

### 3.4.4 Indian Cuisine:

The essence of good Indian cooking revolves around the appropriate use of mixed aromatic spices. Base ingredients of such mixed spices are elements such as

coriander, cumin, turmeric, red pepper, mustard, saffron, cinnamon, cardamom, ginger powder, paprika, mace, black pepper, etc. The skill lies with subtle blending of these spices to enhance rather than overwhelm the basic flavour of a particular dish. These spices act as appetisers and digestives.

Beside spices, the other main ingredients of Indian cooking and Indian meals are milk products. Milk, ghee, dahi, and dal are also common across the country, and regional preference and availability determine their actual use in particular areas. Vegetables naturally differ across regions and with seasons. The cooking style of vegetables depends upon the main dish or cereal with which they are served. Where Sarson-ka-saag is a perfect accompaniment to Makke-ki-roti eaten in Punjab, the Sambar and rice of Tamil Nadu taste best when eaten with deep-fried vegetable.

Although a number of religions exist in India, the two that have influenced Indian cooking and food habits the most are Hindu and Muslim traditions. Each new wave of settlers brought with them their own culinary practices. However, over time they adopted a lot of specialities and cooking methods from Indian cuisine and blended the two to perfection. The Hindu vegetarian tradition is widespread in India. The Muslim tradition is mostly rich korma (curries), meat balls, biryani, rogan josh and preparation from the clay oven or tandoor like tandoori rotis and tandoori murga (chicken).

A typical north Indian meal would consist of chapatis or rotis or paranthas, rice and an assortment of accessories like dals, fried vegetables, curries, curd, chutney and pickles.

For Desert, one could choose from the wide array of sweets from Bengal, like Rasogulla, Sendesh, Rasamalai and Gulab Jamuns. North Indian deserts are very similar in taste as they are derived from milk pudding and are usually soaked in sugar syrup, kheer, a form of rice pudding, and kulfi a nutty ice cream are other common northern deserts.

South Indian food is largely non-greasy, roasted and steamed. Rice is the staple diet and forms basis of every meal. It is usually served with sambar, rasam, dry

and curried vegetable. Coconut is an important ingredient in all south Indian food. The South Indian dosa, idly and vada, which is made of fermented rice and dal, are now popular throughout the country.

### Check Your Progress- II:

#### Fill in the Blanks.

1. The first important Indian Museum in Calcutta was founded in \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Kumbhmela is a unique religious congregation which is held every \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Kathak is one of the most popular dance forms of \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Lohri is mostly celebrated in \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Gurupurb is birth anniversary of \_\_\_\_\_ and is celebrated by \_\_\_\_\_ community.
6. Sarson-ka-saag and Makke-ki-roti is a famous cuisine of \_\_\_\_\_.

Check your answer with the one given at the end of the unit.

No meal is complete without a paan (betel leaf). The green leaf is rolled with an assortment of digestive species like aniseed, cloves and cardamom. Sometimes, it is stuffed with sweetened rose petals locally known as gulkand to make it more palatable. Paan is considered to be an ideal round off for an Indian meal. Besides the main dishes, countless irresistible snacks, such as samosa, dosa, and vada, are available on every street corner. For more conservative visitors, Western cooking can always be found. Indeed, the best styles of cooking from all over the world can be found in the major centres in India. Tea is India's favourite drink, and several of its varieties are famous worldwide. Coffee is increasingly becoming popular. Nimbu paani, lassi and coconut milk are cool and refreshing. Soft drinks and bottled water are readily available everywhere. An integral part of Indian cuisine is how it is consumed.

---

### 3.5 Heritage Tourism Sources of India:

---

Various Emperors and dynasties have ruled India in the past. The monuments they created showcase the magnificence and glory of art and architecture of that period. The monuments offer visitors a first-hand experience of the lifestyle of these rulers. Some notable monuments of the bygone era are:

**Red Fort, Delhi:** The Red Fort (Lal Quila) lies in the northeast corner of the original city of Shahjahanbad. The entrance to the fort is through the imposing Lahori Gate, which, as its name suggests, faces Lahore, now in Pakistan. This gate has a special significance for India, and has been the venue of many important events and speeches delivered by freedom fighters and national leaders of India. Just beyond the main entrance is the heart of the fort called Naubat Khana or the Drum House. The Fort also houses the Diwan-e-Am or the Hall of Public Audience, where the emperor would sit and hear the complaints of the common folk.

The Diwan-e-Khas is the Hall of Private audiences. Built with white marble, it has a Luxurious Chamber where the Emperor held private meetings. The centre piece of the hall used to be the magnificent Peacock Throne, which was carried away to Iran by Nadir Shah in 1739. Even today, the Lal Quila is an eloquent reminder of the glory of the Mughal era, and its magnificence simply leaves one awestruck.

**Jama - Masjid, Delhi:** The main entrance to the mosque is through the 54 meter high Buland Darwaza, the gate of victory, constructed to commemorate Akbar's victory in Gujarat. It can accommodate 25,000 persons at a time.

**Qutub Minar, Delhi:** A soaring tower of early Muslim Vintage, the Qutub Minar attracts visitors worldwide. Qutub-ud-din Aibak started work on the tower (Minar) in 1199, celebrating the advent of Muslim dominance in Delhi, but his successors completed the construction in the 13th century. The Qutub Minar is covered with intricate carvings and deeply inscribed verses from the Koran. The tower has five storeys, each marked by a projected balcony. The first three storeys are made of red sandstone, and the fourth and fifth are of marble and sandstone.

**Nagarjun Konda and Nagarjun Sagar, Andhra Pradesh:** Nagarjun konda about 150 km south-east of Hyderabad, is located on river Krishna. It was one of the largest and most important Buddhist centres from the 2nd century BC until the 3rd century AD. Known these days as Vijay Nagar, Nagarjun Konda takes its present name from Nagarjun, one of the most revered Buddhist monks who governed the Sangha for nearly 60 years around the turn of the 2nd century AD.

**Hampi, Karnataka:** Old Hampi Bazar is now a bustling village. The village has become something of a traveller Mecca. The Vittala Temple is situated two km away from Hampi bazaar. This temple is a world heritage monument and is in a good state of preservation.

**Taj Mahal, Agra:** The Taj Mahal stands on the bank of river Yamuna. Taj Mahal means 'Crown Palace'. It is, in fact, the most well-preserved and architecturally beautiful tomb in the world. One of the world's seven wonders, it was built by the fifth Mughal Emperor, Shah Jahan, in 1631 in memory of his second wife, Mumtaz Mahal. She died after giving birth to their 14th child. Crestfallen the emperor was so crestfallen at her death that all his hair turned are said to have white overnight. The tomb's construction began in 1631 and was completed in 22 years. Twenty thousand people were employed to work on it. An Iranian architect designed it. It is best appraised when the architecture and its adornments are linked to the passion that inspired it, a symbol of eternal love.

**Shanti Niketan, West Bengal:** The brilliant and prolific poet, writer and nationalist Rabindranath Tagore (1891-1941) founded a school here in 1901. It later developed into a University with an emphasis on humanity's relation with nature -- classes are conducted in the open air. There are colleges of science, teacher training, Hindi, arts and crafts, music and dance. It is difficult to get the real atmosphere of the place, if you are not studying here, but you can still visit it and feel. There is a museum and art gallery within the Uttarayan complex where Tagore lived. The University is open to visitors in the afternoons but remains closed on Wednesday, the day it was founded. Founder of the Shanti Niketan, Rabindranath Tagore, won the Nobel Prize in 1931 and is credited with introducing India's historical and cultural greatness to the modern world. Tagore was awarded knighthood by the British, but he surrendered it in 1919 as a protest against the Amritsar massacre.

---

**3.6 Summary:**

---

India with its geographical diversity, has been endowed with a wealth of ecosystems, comprising biosphere reserves, mangroves, coral coral-reefs, deserts, mountains, forests, flora and fauna, beaches, hill stations, lakes and rivers and many other natural attractions. Tourism today unifies forces globally and contributes to national unity, cultural integration, and understanding among people from different regions of our vast country. Millions of people directly or indirectly depend on tourism for employment and livelihood in India.

In this unit, we studied India's tourism resources. We have discussed the natural tourism resources such as mountains, beaches, hill stations, wildlife sanctuaries and National Park's. This unit also explains the man-made tourism resources, and we have discussed the various types of museums and monuments in India. In socio-cultural tourism resources, we studied fairs, festivals, dance, and Indian cuisine. At the end of the unit, you will read about India's heritage tourism resources.

---

**3.7 Answers to Check Your Progress**

---

**Check Your Progress - I:**

1. Kashmir
2. Uttarakhand
3. Royal Bengal Tiger
4. Shimla
5. Pune
6. Tiger Hill
7. 185 km

**Check Your Progress - II:**

1. 1875
2. 12 years
3. North India

---

**3.8 Suggested Readings:**

---

1. Lonely Planet, India
2. IATO Manual, 2004
3. Bhatia, A.K., International Tourism Management, Sterling Publications Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi, 2002.
4. Thandavan and Girish, Tourism Products-I, Dushyant Publishers, New Delhi. 2006.
5. [www.unwto.org.com](http://www.unwto.org.com)

---

**3.9 Review Questions:**

---

1. Define the various natural tourism resources of India.
2. Differentiate between natural and man-made tourism resources.
3. Name the various popular heritage sites of our country.
4. Discuss in detail the various fairs and festivals of India and how they help promote tourism.

---

## **Unit-4**

### **Tourism Product Life Cycle**

---

**Structure:**

**4.0 Objectives**

**4.1 Introduction**

**4.2 What is a Tourism Product?**

**4.3 Tourism Product Types**

**4.4 Tourism Product Development**

**4.5 Various Components of Tourism Product Design and Development**

**4.5.1 Crucial elements of tourism product designing**

**4.5.2 Design Product/site plan**

**4.5.3 Branding**

**4.5.4 Image**

**4.5.5 Product Life Cycle**

**4.5.6 Product feasibility study**

**4.5.7 Financing**

**4.6 Summary**

---

**4.0 Objectives:**

---

After reading this unit you, will be able to:

- Explain the concept and meaning of a tourism product.
- Discuss the various types of tourism products.
- Describe the components of tourism Product Development.
- Discuss the Product Life Cycle and Product Feasibility Study.

---

**4.1 Introduction:**

---

The term tourism product is a unique concept in the parlance of tourism. It satisfies some specific needs of the customer (tourist). Out of the Six P's of marketing, the first P (Product) assumes greater importance because it is something that provides a service of some kind. So, all the products, gadgets, equipment, etc. deliver services to tourists.

The word product generally refers to any tangible commodity or item produced in a factory or other production units. Tourism as a product is, however, not a single item or entity. It is a combination of several products, services and attractions. Selling tours is similar to selling dreams as tourists' intent to buy, temporarily an environment including unique climate and geographical features along with intangible benefits like luxury services, hospitality atmosphere, heritage, etc. The tourism product is thus both a physical as well as a psychological experience aimed to transform dreams into reality and imagination into experience.

In the earlier unit we have studied the classification of tourism resources. In this unit we shall study the concept and meaning of tourism product, types of tourism product and tourism product development. We shall also discuss the various components of tourism product designing and development such as site plan, branding, image, Product Life Cycle, product feasibility study, financing and so on.

---

**4.2 What is Tourism Product?**

---

The tourism product is an amalgamation of many components or packages. The main components of the tourist product are attractions of the destination,

including its image in the tourist's mind, facilities at the destination, accommodation, catering, entertainment, recreation and accessibility of the destination. Amenities and facilities for tourist include clean comfortable accommodations, restaurant, picnic sites, and entertainment outlets like theatres, musical shows, gambling establishments, sports and swimming. Accessibility is an important component of the tourist product. It relates to the mode of transport to the destination chosen by the tourist. It is determined by the proximity of a destination to the tourist's place of residence. Good climate, beaches, springs, spas and monuments influence the choice of a destination. Apart from these, choice of food, beverages and entertainment centre are also major considerations. Each destination has a particular product to offer.

Modern tourism is a by-product of speedy modes of travel. Availability of printed material and faster mode of transport have also helped. The advent to mechanized transport and road, sea and air transport have made the distribution of goods easier even to every nook and corner of the world. Mass communication like telegraph, telephone and printed material have helped the manufacturers to market their products with competitive spirit in large quantities.

Tourism product consists of tourist attraction and it can be natural or man-made. While scenic beauty, attractive landscape, flora and fauna, beaches and water bodies, sand dunes, etc. form natural attractions, monuments like Taj Mahal, Gateway of India, Khajuraho Temples, etc. are examples of man-made attractions. These attractions, along with the tourist facilities, make people to visit such locations and give rise to different forms and types of tourism.

The ideal tourism product is a package consisting of various physical and psychological elements, which provides the best possible experience and satisfaction to the tourist.

It would consist of: -

- An environment of peace and stability
- An assurance of safety and security
- A friendly host society

- An industry which provides the requisite services
- Absence of extortion and hostility
- Accessible tourist attractions
- An integrated system of functional physical infrastructure including:-
- International accessibility
- Internal transport system including wayside amenities
- Hostels and restaurants
- Entertainment and recreational facilities
- Shopping and communication facilities
- Well preserved monuments with tourist amenities
- Basic amenities like drinking water, toilets, snack bars, etc. at the tourist sites.

---

### **4.3 Tourism Product - Types:**

---

Tourists, right through their course of travels and stay en route and while at the destinations devour a range of elements of tourism product, e.g. goods, facilities/amenities and services, which are put away in different ways. What a tourist at the destination purchases is actually the 'experience' which he derives from the accommodation, transport, food, information and other services availed and the tourist attraction enjoyed at the destination. From the view point of simplicity of discernment, the tourism product can broadly be categorize into following types:

#### **I. Tourist Oriented Products (ToPs)**

These are the goods and services, such as transport, accommodations, food, entertainment and recreation facilities and numerous travel trade services brought about mainly for the consumption of tourists with the perspective of direct economic return, envisioned in their production.

#### **II Resident Oriented Products (RoPs):**

As the name itself connotes, these are the services, facilities and security service (police) and so forth which are not only crucial and fundamental for the residents of the destination area but equally of substance for the tourists.

**III Basic Tourism Products or Background Tourist Elements (BTOs or BTLs):**

The natural and man-made tourist attractions are known as BTOs. As the success of a destination primarily depends on the variety and uniqueness of its BTOs. Therefore, these are termed as Basic Tourism products. This type of products are also typified by the term Background Tourist Elements (BTLs) as these do not enter into a direct sale-purchase transaction, while whatever is transacted as the tourist place can be wholly put down to the existence of BTLs. In fact, BTLs can also be considered "as tourist resources" or the input - the raw material of the tourism industry which, with the help of human efforts, are transformed into products of offer or the 'destination'. For reason that the human resources have the principal role in Tourism from the potential resources identification stage to tourism product (destination) planning, plan execution and finally quality services delivery stage, tourism industry in generally termed as 'people's industry'.

The tourist resources or the Background Tourist Elements can be mainly classified as under in Figure - I

**Figure - I: Classification of Tourist Resources**

Category	Criterion	Consideration
<b>Natural Resources</b> <i>Physical Resources</i>	Landforms and Landscape	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Snow peaks, black mountains, valleys and gorges, glaciers, green slopes and natural caves.</li> <li>- Natural deserts, sea beaches, islands and other unique land features.</li> </ul>
	Water Bodies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Outstanding sunrise and sunset Scenes.</li> <li>- Panoramic views/ vantage points.</li> </ul>
	Climate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Rivers take waterfalls, sea waters, hot and cold water springs.</li> <li>- Amount of sunshine, temperature, rainfall, humidity, snowfall, wind speed</li> </ul>

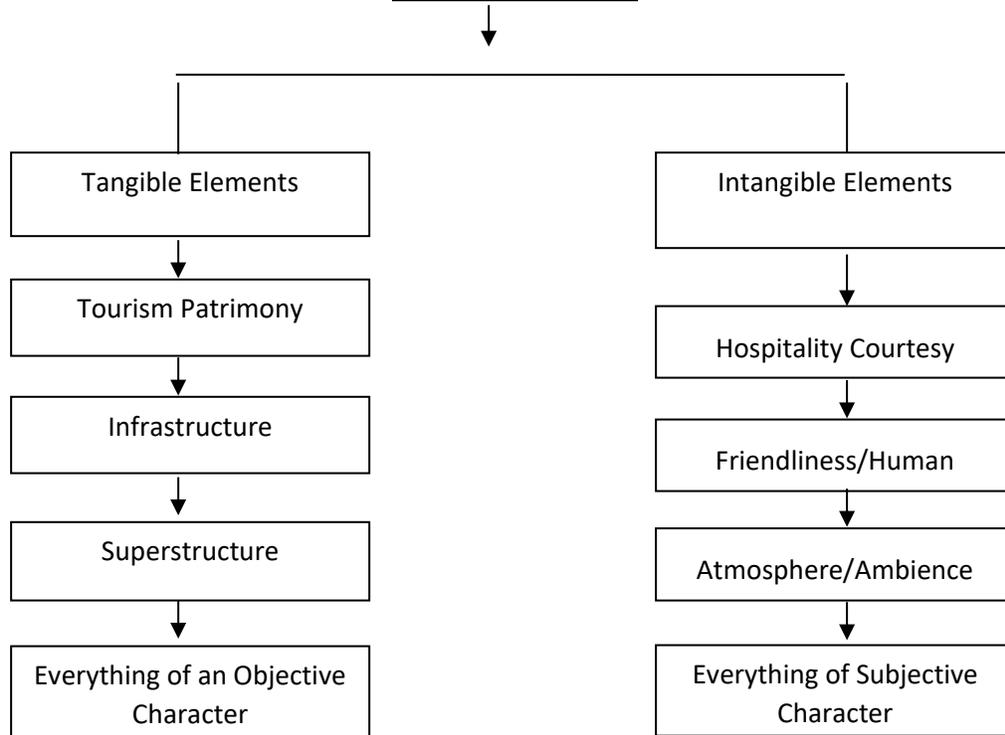
		and direction, climatic comfort/ discomfort index.
<b>Biotic Resources</b>	Wildlife	- Unique, varied, rich wildlife, including mammals, birds, fish, reptiles, butterflies, coral reefs, etc.
	Vegetation	- Dense/varied forests, grasslands, high altitude meadows. - Unique or rare plants, plant of special aesthetic, medicinal or aromatic values.
<b>Manmade Resource</b>	Religious	- Religious centres, Religious observances
	Artistic and Architectural	etc. Performing arts, music and musical instruments, classical and folk dances, folk theatre, handicrafts.
	Other Distinctive local features	- Local architecture, art galleries, museums.
	Fair and Festivals	- Native and ethnic cuisines, folk dress, settlement patterns, socio-cultural values, traditions etc.
	Objects of History	- Social, cultural, commercial and religious fairs and festivals of local, regional or national significance.
	Leading Organisations and Institutions	- Historical monuments, historical sites excavation sites etc.
	Special land use patterns	- Prominent academic, scientific and other institutions. - Agriculture, horticulture etc.
<b>Recreational and Shopping Facilities</b> (Recreational and Shopping facilities have	Sport facilities	- Rafting, canoeing, kayaking, ballooning, skiing, sailing, golfing, mountaineering etc.
	Facilities conducive to health, rest and tranquillity	- Tracking, picnicking, camping, health resort, fishing, bird watching etc.

both product and resource value)	Shopping facilities.	- Souvenir and gift shops, handicraft shops, groceries, etc.
	Night time Recreation (Night Life)	- Theatres, cinemas, light and sound programmes etc.
	Education facilities	- Botanical gardens, aquariums, zoos, etc.
	Infrastructure above minimal tourist quality	- Efficient transport, electricity, safety, health, communication, accommodation facilities etc.

**4.4 Tourism Product Development:**

The great challenge in the tourism industry is to match product and market. The tourism product is very different from the product we usually buy and use. The difference is mainly because tourism products are concerned with the consumer's experience and how these products are delivered to the customers. The tourism products at the destination comprise all those attractions, facilities and services used or visited during a stay. It also comprises everything that happens to visitors, everything they experience. This reveals that the tourism product consists of both tangible and intangible components, as shown in the figure below:

**Figure-II**  
**Tourism Product**



When a tourism product's objective components go hand in hand with subjective components, the visitor feels welcome and friendliness. It is a fact that tangible elements alone cannot guarantee satisfaction. It is also supported by how tourists are treated at the destination, i.e., whether harmony exists in events or situations tourists experience. This fact will determine how well the product is accepted and can generate repeat business. Thus, you must consider all these peculiar characteristics while designing tourism products. Besides other considerations, you must evaluate beforehand several factors which may include:

- The scale and type of development. Sustainable development shall favour small-scale developments that minimize impacts and encourage incremental (staged) development.
- The kind of tourism activities (Eco-tourism, heritage tour), facilities, and attractions that will be included in the desired site plan. Ideally, tourism products are to be developed based on competitive analysis, market research, ecological assessment, and community needs and issue analysis.
- Approaches that minimize negative impacts through design, land use, planning, zoning and management should be considered.
- Development of project financing strategies focusing on local control and minimising economic leakage from the community.
- Tourism vision statements and goals that are communicated to commercial and other stakeholders of the sites to be included in the planning.
- Policies that allow room for future growth and alteration in the plan and the sites themselves.

Here, one must take note of the five product levels mentioned by Philip Kotler.

**Level - 1 Core Benefit:** This is the fundamental service or benefit being brought by the customer (Wildlife).

**Level - 2 General Product:** When the marketer converts the core benefit into basic version of the product it is termed as generic product (National parks, Sanctuaries).

**Level - 3 Expected Product:** Customer generally expects a set of attributes and conditions while making a purchase; if the marketer meets these expectations it is termed as expected product.

**Level 4 Augmented Product:** When a product is developed with such additional services or benefits that make it distinctive from other products, it is termed an augmented product.

**Level - 5 Potential Product:** This indicates the possible evolution of the augmented product in future. This is where an organization searches for new ideas and ways to satisfy customers and simultaneously make their product unique.

At each of these levels are associated certain factors like:

- Basic design, i.e., the size or facilities or the quantity and level of service.
- Presentation, i.e., the standard of service to be offered and maintained --tourism is critical.
- Range, i.e., what is to be included in the product or covered in the service?
- Brand, i.e., association of the name which is well known or associated with high level of customer satisfaction.
- Image, i.e., a reputation earned by the product.
- Warranties, i.e., an assurance of a particular level and quality of service.
- Consumer protection, i.e., assurance of damage claim in case of failure of or sub-standard service.
- Eco-friendly, i.e., care for geology and environmental conservation.
- The travel and tourism product is a package of various components like:
  - Destination attractions.
  - Destination facilities and services.
  - Accessibility of the destination.
  - Image of the destination.
  - Experience of the destination.
  - Attitudes of the locals or host population.

- Price to the consumer, and
- The overall experience of the tourist.

The key to designing the tourist product is to segment the target market and understand customer's preferences and motivations (which constantly change).

---

#### **4.5 Tourism Product Designing Development:**

---

---

##### **Check Your Progress - I**

---

###### **State whether True or False:**

1. Infrastructure is the intangible element of tourism product.
2. 'Core Benefit' is the fundamental service or benefit being brought by the customer.
3. When the marketer converts the core benefit into basic version of the product it is termed as generic product.
4. Range, i.e., a reputation earned by the product.

Check your answers with the one given at the end of the unit.

Tourism products is peculiar because of its characteristics. Therefore, your considerations while designing and developing tourism products tend to be different from those of general products. Tourism product is a term that covers all the attractions and services that can be sold to visitors. This product is so diverse in its nature that tourists just visit a town area, an island or an event rather than the whole country. Some tourists may purchase Bali as a product rather than Indonesia, Phuket rather Thailand, Wimbledon Championship in London and not a holiday in UK. This clearly illustrates that tourist products (destinations) may be an integrated product, or well-appointed product or this may just be a theme-based destination with other related services. Whatever may be the nature of destination/tourist site its product components would remain the same, e.g., built and natural attractions, tour and packages, services for travelers, like shopping, restaurants, accommodation and other recreational activities. It is true that under normal conditions natural attractions cannot be thought of as a product but when

we talk about eco-tours in a national park, this becomes a product. The heritage architecture of a community is not a product, but its interpretation through a guided tour can be seen as a product. It is therefore; important to note that you shall not consider only the tourist attractions as a product, but rather visualize the destination is its totality as the community's livelihood. The result, therefore, shall be an authentic community tourism product that will be attractive for travelers promising hospitable and unique experience:

As tourism learner you must consider the following issues related to tourism product designing and development:

- Crucial elements of tourism product designing
- Design product/site plan
- Branding
- Image
- Product life cycle
- Product feasibility study, and
- Financing.

#### **4.5.1 Crucial Elements of Tourism Products:**

Each destination has its own unique product mix, based on its resources, values, needs and preferences. Tourism products can be designed and developed taking these factors into account. While designing any destination product(s) you should analyze the available resources for tourism product and try to establish and interpret the interrelationship between destination designing and motivations. To develop an attractive and sustainable tourism product you are advised to consider the following elements:

- Choose authentic themes which reflect the local culture(s) and environment-human relationships.
- Keep development on a scale with the community and environment.
- Ensure that development also meets community needs (i.e., through joint use)
- Develop attractions that are attractive and competitive in the long run, not faddish.

- It requires strong community support; don't impose new ideas on an unreceptive population.
- Avoid imitating successful ideas from other places, you must acknowledge that success comes from strong local commitment and enthusiasm and therefore, act in this direction.
- Chose themes which help position the destination products within sustainable development principles.
- Consider sports; many competitions and fun events can be held using existing facilities.
- Inform all visitors of tourism plans, goals and management approach.
- Ask local clubs, associations and businesses to generate meetings and conventions to the extent permitted by infrastructure; and
- Provide high quality experiences.

You will have to decide whether you are developing a unique product, a normal product that is better than others, or a commonly available product.

#### **4.5.2 Designing Product/Site Plans:**

This is an essential issue in visitors/attractions management so as to provide a product which can satisfy the needs of tourists. Every destination needs a design plan for developing attractions and facilities. This should include management of visitor's flow, parking and access to the attractions. Site design should be compatible with local heritage and life-style in order to maintain a sense of harmony and enhance local architecture and culture. Site planning here refers to the specific location (or citing) of buildings, their physical interrelationship, and characteristics of the national environmental setting. Site planning also includes the location of roads, parking areas, landscaped and open space areas, footpaths and recreational facilities, all of which are integrated with the building location and are consumed by tourists along with main products. The grouping of buildings, such as accommodation and their relationships to amenity and recreational facilities is of important concern in site planning. The type of grouping depends on the density and character of the development derived as related to the

natural environment. There are several types of specific standards that are applicable to the controlled development of tourist facilities at the tourist destination.

These standards typically include the following areas:

- Density of development
- Heights of buildings
- Setbacks of buildings from amenity features, shorelines, roads, lot lines, and other buildings
- Ratio of the building floor area to the site area
- Coverage of the site by buildings and others structures
- Parking requirements.
- Other requirements, such as for landscaping and open space, public access to amenity features, signs and utility lines
- Local styles and motifs
- Roof lines
- Use of local building materials
- Environmental relationship, and
- Landscaping design.

However, you must note that a destination, as a product, will always be a mix of different product lines of various departments, length and widths.

#### **4.5.3 Branding:**

Just like consumer products, many tourism products are also given brand names. As you know, brand names are given to a product to ascertain its identity, which many a times couples with promotional activities assisting manufacturers to persuade the customers to buy that particular product. In tourism particularly, many customers observe brand loyalty because they know that they are purchasing an experience or a dream. They need to bank heavily on reliability parameters or standards of product manufacturer's background or previous success record. However, this factor these days is replaced by borrowing an established name, i.e., franchise system. For example, if you are having a five star

hotel, you have the option of entering into franchise agreement with brands like inter-continental, Hilton, Spectrum, Holiday Inn, and more, to assure your customer a higher standard of service. The same may be true of an airlines or an agency. This makes not only the entry of your product easy but it also assures higher level of satisfaction among your users. Resorts, Golf Courses, National Parks etc. are all branded.

#### 4.5.4 Image:

Why does a tourist choose "Place 'X' as his/her destination in comparison to place 'Y' ". An important factor in one's decision making for purchase of a holiday is no doubt the image of the **destination**. The image of the destination is the way in which it project itself and the way it is viewed by its markets due to variety of factors, such as political stability, security, variety of attractions, air connectivity, and currency value and so on. As has already been mentioned, in a particular country, one particular site enjoys a better image that makes a large number of tourists visit it rather than the whole country, e.g., Bali in Indonesia or Phuket in Thailand, Varadero in Cuba and so on. On the contrary, in other cases it is a combination of sites/tourist destination which establishes a great image of the country among tourists, e.g., in India tourist prefer to have on their itineraries Golden Triangle (Delhi-Agra-Jaipur) or Emerald triangle of South (Banglore-Mysore-Madurai). Several destinations the image earned by them is due to their natural resources and location. For example, Switzerland enjoys an image of winter destination. Mauritius is popular as a destination for honeymooners and Singapore for shopping. However, India is lucky enough to enjoy an image of all season destination. In short, image is an over all idea, the association which a place, service or product has. If the image of your product is positive, tourists may buy and enjoy it whereas if the image is negative, tourist may prefer to stay away from it. You must remember that image is built up not just in a few days; it is a result of satisfactory performance of your product over the years. You must always remember that the image of your product also depends upon political viewpoints, e.g., diplomatic relations between the countries of hosts and guests.

**4.5.5 Product life cycle:**

The concept of Product Life Cycle was first used by Levitt (1965) when they stated that every product after it is introduced, grows, matures, levels out and then declines. This holds true for all the products, whether leisure tourism or consumer products. Every product has a life span. In its life cycle, there comes a stage when it needs remodeling in order to retain its appeal to customers. In other words, at the decline stage of your product actions/strategies are required to rejuvenate it to extend its life further.

**4.5.6 Products Feasibility Study:**

The reason for designing products is considered when you move from micro to macro level of planning, i.e., from planning a destination, you shift to designing a product like a hotel, resort, restaurant, theme park, or any other leisure product. It is clearly illustrated that you can conceive and operate your projects only on the basis of a relationship among three dimensions, viz., market, product and costs. When you are considering a new project, your product feasibility study should include:

- (a) A broader definition of your product high, highlighting its location, what services and facilities it tends to render, and what kind of image or perception it aims to create in targeted users' minds.
- (b) Forecasting market potential and details of sales strategies you plan to follow to reach out to the targeted users as well as to expand the market size for your products;
- (c) Outlining the operational plan, i.e., what would be the design and schedule of product development and how budgets and finance would be arranged to meet the required expenditure?
- (d) Design Marketing Plan, i.e., highlighting application marketing mix at each operational stage, more particularly deciding upon the promotional and distribution strategies.
- (e) Organization and Staffing Plan, i.e., pointing out sources for recruitment of skilled and semiskilled employees to accomplish organizational goals. While choosing

your channel for hiring people, you must remember that you are going to be a part of the industry where your success largely depends upon the performance of your employees. This underlines the important of not only recruiting right kind of people but also training and retraining them to meet satisfaction level of your customers.

- (f) Financial Plan: Financing is one of the significant factors in designing and managing tourism products. Public budgets are often inadequate to cover rising activities costs, such as increasing waste disposal due to increasing tourism, management of historical sites and enforcement of building restrictions. Financial sustainability most often involves multiple funding sources with a focus on earned income with measures that contain operating and restoration costs. Your resources for financing should, therefore, include:
- Public sector grants and tax breaks
  - Community initiative and investment
  - Approaches that stress self-help and self-build
  - Joint public/private ventures and partnerships, where often the public sector contributes land or other resources.
  - Financing from various organizations, such as non-profit trusts, foundations/revolving funds, and community development corporations.
  - Build- operate- transfer- arrangements, and
  - The private sector.

In developing countries, governments play a minor role in financing tourism projects due to financial constraints. The private sector does most of the financing to small, medium and large tourism development products. These private sources include individuals, banks, trusts, credit unions and insurance companies. Therefore, in tourism product development, you need to achieve the right funding "mix" by increasing efficiency without compromising the products and attractiveness. One more possible option is to combine market economy and public interventions. In this type of financing situation, public authorities are able to retain ownership of the resources such as facilities or historical buildings, but the

responsibility of development or renovation is transferred to private managers. Build-operate-transfer (BOT) procedures are good examples. These transfers though create other problems. Commercial management is primarily concerned with the facility's ability to attract tourism, which may compromise with other considerations such as its larger role within the destination or conservation concerns. Any attempt at BOT approach requires that the public sector interest group responsible for the facility must have the expertise in developing management policies and contracts that respect the local community and its environment while providing a reasonable rate of return. Aid donations for specific restoration or preservation projects may also be available from international organizations or foreign governments. However, these are often one-time funding and cannot be depended on for a long-term plan. Very often capital funds are available but operational financing is difficult, if not impossible, to obtain.

---

**Check Your Progress-II:**

---

Answer the following question.

1. Name the three broad categories of tourism products?
2. What are the various stages in the Product Life Cycle?
3. List the destinations covered in Golden Triangle.

Check your answer with the one given at the end of the unit.

---

**4.6 Summary:**

---

Tourism products are of vital importance in the tourism industry. It is a combination of both tangible and intangible elements. Travel and tourism products are packages of various components, such as destination attractions, facilities, services, and the overall experiences of the tourist. The ideal tourism product comprises various physical and psychological elements that provide the tourist the best possible experience and satisfaction. In this unit, we studied tourism products in detail. We have discussed the types of tourism product,

tourism product development and components of tourism product designing development.

---

#### 4.7 Answers to Check Your Progress

---

##### Check Your Progress - I:

1. False
2. True
3. True
4. False

##### Check Your Progress - II:

1. a. Tourist Oriented Products (ToPs)  
b. Resident Oriented Products (RoPs)  
c. Basic Tourism Products or Background Tourist Elements (BTOs or BTLs)
2. Introductory, Growth, Maturity and Decline.
3. Golden Triangle: Delhi-Agra-Jaipur

---

#### 4.8 Suggested Readings:

---

1. Lonely Planet, India
2. IATO Manual, 2004
3. Bhatia, A.K., International Tourism Management, Sterling Publications Pvt. Ltd., New Delhi, 2002.
4. Thandavan and Girish, Tourism Products-I, Dushyant Publishers, New Delhi. 2006.
5. [www.unwto.org](http://www.unwto.org)

---

#### 4.9 Review Questions:

---

1. What is a tourism product? Discuss the different types of tourism products.
2. Discuss the various levels of tourism products?
3. Design a tourism product of your choice.
4. Define 'Product Life Cycle'.

---

#### 4.11 Glossary:

---

1. **Product** - A **product** is a good or service that can be bought and sold.

2. **Brand image** - "Brand image" refers to the set of **beliefs** that customers hold about a particular brand. These are important to develop well since a negative brand image can be complicated to shake off.
3. **Product Life Cycle** - The **Product Life Cycle** refers to the succession of stages a product goes through.
4. **Commodity** - A **commodity** is anything for which there is demand, but which is supplied without qualitative differentiation across a given market.
5. **Tourist Destination** - A **tourist destination** is a city, town or other economic area which is dependent to a significant extent on the revenues accruing from tourism

---

## Unit-5

### Jammu and Kashmir and Himachal Pradesh

---

**Structure:**

**5.1 Objectives**

**5.2 Introduction**

**5.3 Flora & fauna**

**5.3.1 Himachal Pradesh**

**5.3.2 Jammu & Kashmir**

**5.4 National Parks & Sanctuaries**

**5.4.1 Himachal Pradesh**

**5.4.2 Jammu & Kashmir**

**5.5 Protected / Restricted Area Permits**

**5.6 Check Your Progress**

**5.7 Summary**

**5.8 Clues to Answer**

**5.9 Glossary**

---

### 5.1 Objectives:

---

The main objectives of the unit is to

- Give an overview of the biodiversity in Himachal Pradesh and Jammu & Kashmir.
- Give a detail of the wildlife sanctuaries, national parks & biosphere reserves in Himachal & J&K.
- To know about protected /Restricted area permits in the two states.
- To know about the wildlife conservation & protection.

---

### 5.2 Introduction:

---

The northern region of India has many wildlife sanctuaries and national parks known for diverse rich flora and fauna. Wildlife lovers, wildlife adventure enthusiasts and nature lovers from all over the world come to enjoy the charisma of wildlife tourism in northern India. The most sought after destinations for wildlife viewing and jungle tourism in this region is certainly **Great Himalayan National Park** in Himachal Pradesh. It is not only a destination for wildlife viewing or birding but also for eco-tourism also called nature tourism. Endowed with superb natural beauty and scenic surrounding this famous park is **India's first national park**. It enjoys rich flora and fauna. The secluded Sainj and Tirthan valleys are home to a plethora of fauna - wild mountain goats like the bharal, goral and serow; musk deer; the brown bear and predators like the leopard and the elusive snow leopard. Different varieties of pheasants - monal, khali cheer, tragopan and other exotic Himalayan birds can be found in the region.

**Hemis National Park** is also a popular destination on North India Wildlife Tour. It is the only national park in India north of the Himalayas, the largest notified protected area in India (**and thus the largest national park of India**), and is the second largest contiguous protected area after the Nanda Devi Biosphere Reserve and surrounding protected areas.

---

### 5.3 Flora & Fauna:

---

Flora & fauna represents the catalogue of plants & animals of a particular region. "**Fauna**" comes from the Latin names of Fauna, a Roman goddess of earth and fertility, the Roman god Faunus, and the related forest spirits called Fauns. The term was first used by Linnaeus in the title of his 1745 work *Fauna Suecica*. Zoologists and paleontologists use fauna to refer to a typical collection of animals found in a specific time or place, e.g. the "Ladakh Desert fauna" or the "Shimla Shale fauna". **Flora** is the plant life occurring in a particular region or time, generally the naturally occurring or indigenous – native plant life. "Flora" comes from the Latin name of Flora, the goddess of plants, flowers, and fertility in Roman mythology. Plants are grouped into floras based on region, period, special environment, or climate. Flora, fauna and other forms of life such as fungi are collectively referred to as **biota**.

---

#### 5.3.1 HIMACHAL PRADESH:

---

Himachal is a land of green forests and fresh air. As much as 68% of the land area is covered with jungles. While the foothills and valleys are a refreshing green, the areas above the snow line are almost bare.

The southernmost tracts are dominated by sal (*Shorea robusta*), shisham, chir pine, dry deciduous and moist broad-leafed forests. The temperate region above this grows oaks, deodar, blue pine, fir and spruce. In the uppermost climes, trees are sturdy with a vast network of roots such as alders, birches, rhododendrons and moist alpine scrubs in the name of vegetation. Himachal is the fruit bowl of the country with orchards scattered all over the place.

Himachal Pradesh forms the catchment of various main rivers of Northern India, namely the Ravi, Chenab, Beas, Sutlej, Jhelum and Yamuna. Himachal Pradesh has diverse forms of rich flora because of varied physic-climate. Out of a total of 45,000 species of plants found in the country, some 3,295 species or 7.32 percent are reported in Himachal Pradesh. There are six main forest – Moist Tropical, Montane Temperate, Sub-Alpine and Alpine Scrub. The conifers consist of Chil (Pine) Fir,

Spruce, Deodar, Juniperus, Taxus and Neora. etc. The broad-leaved varieties comprise Khair, Siris, Semul, Sal, Tun, Bahera, Kimish, Shisham, Khirik, Ash, Bhoj-Patra, Horse-chestnut, Poplar, Robinla, Walnut, Maple, etc. The flowering species include orchids.

Himachal is also home to a wide variety of animals such as leopard, bear, musk deer, ghoral (goat-like stout animal), monal, snow leopard which is the state animal and Jujrana, the state bird.

There are 2 National Parks and 32 wild life sanctuaries in the State. Total area under wild life sanctuaries is 5562 km area under National Parks is 1440 Km and total area of Protected Area Network is 7002 km.

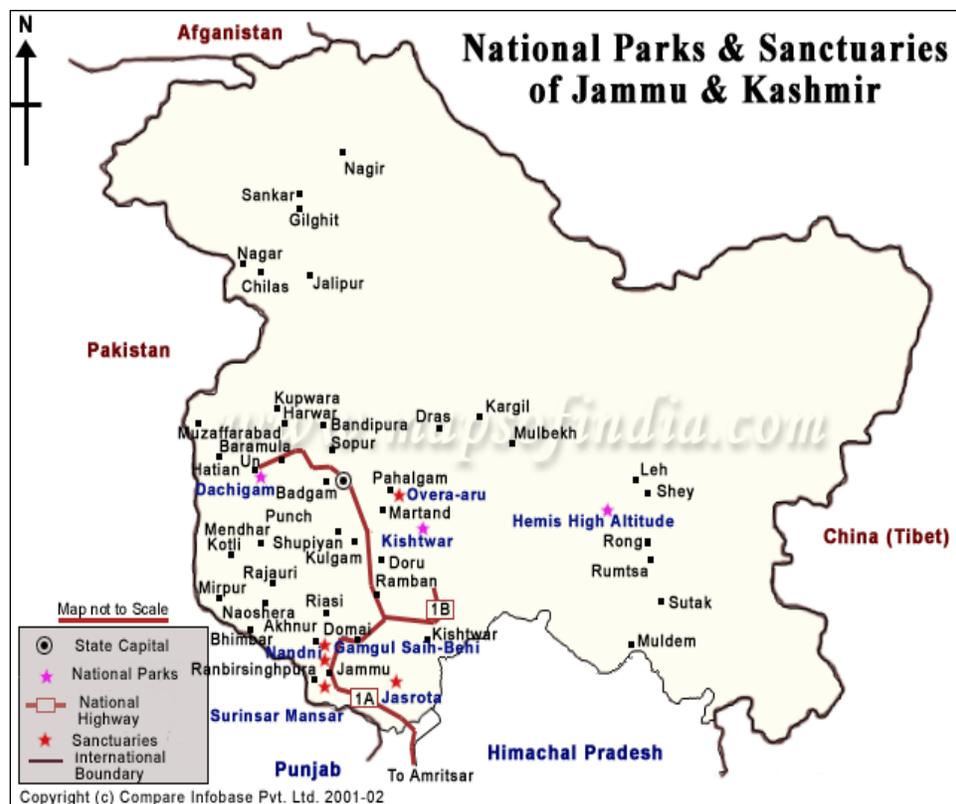


Source - [www.mapsofindia.com](http://www.mapsofindia.com)

The Wildlife species in Himachal Pradesh consist of Mammals 64 species, Birds 463 species, Reptiles 44 species and Aquatic Fauna 316 species.

### 5.3.2 JAMMU & KASHMIR:

Kashmir is rich in the cultural diversity of the people, as well as diversity of flora and fauna in the forest areas, and domesticated species outside the forest. Plants are also an integral part of the social fabric of the state. On the other hand, the faunal component of the bio-diversity of the state is rich, with interesting and unique forms both in the forest zones and above the forest-line. The flora of Himalayan Kashmir comprises about 3,054 species. About 880 species are found in Ladakh. The flora of the Jammu district comprises 506 species. These figures include only the angiosperms, gymnosperms and pteridophytes. The plants of the western Himalayas are well known for their medicinal properties. This area is a storehouse of medicinal and aromatic plants, which are used in pharmaceutical and perfume industries.



Source – [www.mapsofindia.com](http://www.mapsofindia.com)

The list includes 55 species of important medicinal and aromatic plants. Some native medicinal plants have been taken up for cultivation, e.g. *Dioscorea deltoidea* (baniatakari or shingli-mingli) is now cultivated for its tubers which are

rich in diosgenin and yield cortisone, a steroid hormone. Locally called "The Booune" in the Kashmiri language, Chinar tree holds a special place in Kashmiri civilization. The tree presents itself in various enchanting colours through the cycle of the seasons among which its autumnal look is breath-taking. Mountain ranges in the Valley have dense deodar, pine and fir. Walnut, willow, almond and cider also add to the rich flora of Kashmir.

The fauna of Jammu and Kashmir is diverse due to its unique location and climatic condition. About 16% of the Indian mammals, birds, reptiles, amphibians and butterflies are presented in the state. Birds contribute much to the chordate diversity following by mammals, reptiles, fishes and amphibians. Jammu and Kashmir is home to number of species that are listed as endangered like the Kashmiri stag called 'Hangul' and snow leopard that has survived here from times unknown. The winged game includes ducks, goose, partridge, chakor, pheasant, wagtails, herons, water pigeons, warblers, and doves. In otherwise arid desert of Ladakh some 240 species of local and migratory birds have been identified including black-necked crane. The Ladakh fauna includes yak, Himalayan Ibex, Tibetan antelope, snow leopard, wild ass, red bear and gazelle.

---

#### **5.4 NATIONAL PARKS & SANCTUARIES:**

---

India is unique in the richness and diversity of its vegetation and wildlife. Wildlife sanctuaries & National parks in India attract people from all over the world as the rarest of rare species are found here.

Do you know what a sanctuary is? What is a national park? And what is the difference between National Parks & Sanctuaries?

Both are meant for preserving the rich biodiversity at a place but still there are some differences & similarities. National parks and wildlife sanctuaries are protected natural habitats, declared by the government of a country according to the regulations from the IUCN (The World Conservation Union) to preserve the wildlife through conservation of ecosystems. The restriction levels vary within these two categories but, the principal objective of declaring protected areas is the

conservation of nature. Thus, it is important for people to understand the differences and similarities between a national park and a wildlife sanctuary.

A **wildlife sanctuary** is a declared protected area, where very limited human activity is allowed. The ownership of this type of protected area could lie in the hands of either a government or in any private organization or person, provided the regulations are governed by the government. Inside a wildlife sanctuary, the hunting of animals is completely prohibited. Additionally, the trees cannot be cut down for any purpose; especially the clearing of the forest for agriculture is completely banned. However, it is not physically fenced to restrict the public from entering and roaming inside a wildlife sanctuary for research, educational, inspirational, and recreational purposes. The general public could use it up to a certain extent so that the sanctuary is useful for them also. People can collect firewood, fruits, medicinal plants...etc in small scale from a wildlife sanctuary.

A **National park** has a defined boundary, through which no person can get into the park without an approval. Only an approved person can enter into a national park, either via paying a visitor ticket or an approved letter from the governing body (mostly the government). The visitors can only observe the park inside a vehicle that routes through defined trails and they cannot get out the vehicle for any reason unless there is an approved place for visitors. Photographs are allowed but research and educational work can only be done with a prior permission. The park cannot be used for any reason viz. firewood, timber, fruits...etc. With all these regulations, the national parks are established to conserve the natural habitats of the wild fauna and flora with a minimum human interference.

There is also another category of protected area known as Biosphere Reserve. A **biosphere reserve** is a specified protected area of land and or coastal environment in which multiple use of the land is permitted by dividing it into zones, each for a particular activity. A biosphere reserve is divided into three zones core, buffer and manipulation.

### 5.4.1 HIMACHAL PRADESH:

Out of total geographical area of Himachal Pradesh, which is around 55, 670 sq km, a majority of 37, 691 sq km is covered by forests.

The National Parks are established under section 35 (4) of the **Wildlife (Protection) Act, 1972** & Wildlife Sanctuaries have been established under sections 18-26 of the Wildlife (Protection) Act, 1972.

S.No.	Sanctuary/ National Park	District	Area ( Km <sup>2</sup> )
1	Govind Sagar	Bilaspur	100
2	Shri Nainadevi	Bilaspur	123
3	Sach-Tuan Nala	Chamba	103
4	Gamgul-Siyabehi	Chamba	109
5	Tundah	Chamba	64
6	Kugti	Chamba	379
7	Kalatop-Khajjjar	Chamba	69
8	Pongdam Lake	Kangra	307
9	Dhauladhar	Kangra	944
10	Rakchham-Chhitkul	Kinnaur	304
11	Lipa Asrang	Kinnaur	31
12	Rupi-Bhaba	Kinnaur	503
13	Sainj	Kullu	90
14	Tirthan	Kullu	61
15	Kias	Kullu	14
16	Khokhan	Kullu	14
17	Kanawar	Kullu	61
18	Manali	Kullu	32
19	Kibber	Lahaul & Spiti	1400
20	Bandli	Mandi	41
21	Nargu	Mandi	278
22	Shikari Devi	Mandi	72
23	Daranghati I & II	Shimla	167
24	Talra	Shimla	40
25	Water Supply Catchment	Shimla	10
26	Churdhar	Sirmour	66
27	Simbalbara	Sirmour	19
28	Renuka	Sirmour	4
29	Chail	Solan	109
30	Shilli	Solan	2
31	Majathal	Solan	40
32	Darlaghat	Solan	6
	<b>Total Area Wildlife Sanctuary</b>		<b>5562</b>
33	Great Himalayn National Park	Kullu	765
34	PIN Valley Ntional Park	Lahaul & Spiti	675
	<b>Total Area National Parks</b>		<b>1440</b>
	<b>Total Area Of Protected Area Network</b>		<b>7002</b>

Source - [www.hpforest.nic.in](http://www.hpforest.nic.in).

**The Great Himalayan National Park** is situated in the Seraj Tehsil of Kullu district at an altitude of 1300 to 6100 m in Himachal Pradesh. The park is located around 50 km from the Kullu town & covers an area of 754 sq. km. The best time to visit the park is during the summers (April to June) and autumn (September to November) as the weather is pleasant & also the snow melts away. This park was established in 1984.

The park also has three other wildlife destinations sharing their boundaries with it - **the Pin Valley National Park, the Rupi Bhabha Wildlife Sanctuary** and the **Kanawar Wildlife Sanctuary**. The area under the park includes the upper catchment area of Tirthan, Sainj, Parvati and the Jiwa Nalas. All these flow from east to west and finally merge with the Beas river. A considerable portion of the park, especially the eastern part remains covered with snow throughout the year.

There are four entry points to the park which is officially known as the Jawahar Lal Nehru Park. These are Guishaini (34 km from Aut), Neuli (40 km from Aut) Siund village (30 km from Aut) and Barshaini (to the north east of the park). For tourist visiting the park, a permit is essential. The permit can be obtained easily at a low cost from the office of the Park Director at Shamsi or the range officers at Larji, Sairopa and Sainj. The park authorities also provide guides (compulsory) & the timings to visit the park is between sun rise and sun set.

Medicinal plants, trees, herbs and shrubs are found in plenty in the Park. The star animal attractions of the park includes the Snow Leopard, Blue Sheep, Himalayan Brown Bear, Himalayan Tahr and Musk Deer. Other animals of the park are Serow, Rhesus Macaque, Barking Deer, Goral, Red Fox, Langur, Gray Shrew, Giant Indian Flying Squirrel, Porcupine, Himalayan Palm Civet, Himalayan Weasel and Yellow-throated Marten. There are around 180 species of birds in the park out of which the most prominent ones are Western Tragopan, Monal Pheasant, Koklas, White-crested Kaleej and Cheer Pheasant. Other birds spotted in the park include Raptors, Shorebirds, Pigeons, Parakeets, Cuckoos, Owls, Gray Nightjar, Himalayan Swiftlets, Fork-tailed Swifts, White-throated Needletail, Eurasian Hoopoe, Brown-fronted Woodpecker etc.

**Pin Valley National Park:** The Pin Valley National Park spreads over an area of 675 square Km in the trans-Himalayan cold desert region of Spiti valley and falls in the catchment of the Pin river and its major tributary, Parahio. Altitude of the

National Park ranges from about 3,500 metres near Ka dogri to more than 6,000 metres at its highest point.

With its snow laden higher reaches and scree slopes covered with scanty tufted vegetation, Pin Valley National Park forms the natural habitat of a number of endangered animals including Himalayan Ibex, Snow Leopard, Bharal, Woolly Hare, Tibetan Wolf, and Monal Pheasant.

The apparently scanty vegetation in the Park contains many plant species of high conservation value. Prominent amongst these species are Ratanjot (*Arnebia euchroma* & *A. benthamii*), Salampanja (*Dactylorhiza hatageria*), Somlata (*Ephedra gerardiana*), Seabuckthorn (*Hippophae rhamnoides*) and Ateesh (*Aconitum heterophyllum*). Wild rose (*Rosa webbiana*), with its gorgeous pink flowers and bright red fruit, provides a striking contrast to the otherwise dry surrounds.

The National Park, which remains open from May to October every year, can be approached only on foot from the nearest road terminus at Mikkim in Pin Valley. Visitors need to carry sleeping bags and food and can stay in bunkers constructed by the Department in the Park.

---

### **Other Wildlife Destinations:**

---

**Simbalbara Sanctuary:** Located in the Paonta Valley of Sirmour district, the Simbalbara sanctuary is home to Goral, Sambhar and Chittal. The sanctuary can be visited in the winter months to get the best view of the beautiful Sal forest with grassy glades.

**Renuka Sanctuary:** Located near Nahan in the Sirmour district of Himachal Pradesh, the Renuka Wildlife sanctuary spreads over an area of 400 hectares. The sacred Renuka Lake, along with the temple is a huge attraction here. People from all over flock in large number come to pay a visit to these two. The animal and bird attraction of the park include Asiatic lions, Spotted Deer, Lion tailed Macaques,

Peacocks, Nilgai or large Grey Indian Antelope, Barking Deer, Himalayan Black Bears, Red Jungle Fowl and Black Pheasant. There are also a large number of butterflies that add more colour and life in the sanctuary. Added attraction here is a chance to view the lions from pretty close range - from an armoured van which makes an entry into the enclosures of the lions.

**Chail Wildlife Sanctuary:** This one is located in the district of Shimla and covers an area of 10,854.36 hectares. The park was notified in the year 1976 and is an abode of a variety of animals and birds like Sambar, Goral, Himalayan Black Bear, Red Deer, Silver-White Oak, Barking Deer, Indian Hare Common Langur, Leopard, Rhesus Macaque, Himalayan Yellow Throated Marten, Indian Porcupine, Common Giant and Kashmiri Flying Squirrel and Chir Pheasants at Blossom and Jhajja.

**Churdhar Sanctuary:** The Churdhar Sanctuary is located in the Solan valley of the Shimla district at a height of 3647 m. The sanctuary, which spreads in an area of 5616 hectares gets its name from the Churu peak. The top of the peak is occupied by a huge statue of Shiva. Coming back to the sanctuary, it was notified in the year 1985 and is perhaps one of the most recent of the sanctuaries in the country. The attraction of the park include multi coloured Monals Himalayan Black Bear, Barking Deer, Musk Deer, Common Langur and Leopards. For adventure enthusiasts, trekking is a brilliant option in this sanctuary.

**Daranghati Sanctuary:** The Daranghati sanctuary is located near Rampur Bushahr in the Shimla District of Himachal Pradesh. The area was declared a sanctuary in the year 1974 and covers an area of 16740 hectares. The wild attractions of the park include Himalayan Black Bear, Brown Bear, Himalayan Palm Civet, Barking Deer, Musk Deer, Flying Fox, Goral, Indian Hare, Stripped Hyena, Himalayan Ibex, Leopard, Himalayan yellow throated Marten, Serow, Blue Sheep, Common giant flying Squirrel and Himalayan Weasel. Trekking can be highly enjoyable option for the lovers of adventure here.

**Govind Sagar Sanctuary:** Situated in the Bilaspur district of the state, the Govind Sagar Sanctuary was first notified in the year 1962 and then again in 1974. The sanctuary covers an area of 10, 034 hectares and is managed by Bhakra Management Board. Animals that will catch your attention in this sanctuary include Singhara, Chilwa, Catla, Jhalli, Mrigal, Grass crap, Misror crap, Topra, Silver Crap and Gid. And, the best time to visit the park is between the month of July to September.

**Kalatope Wildlife Sanctuary:** This sanctuary, located in Khajjar of Chamba district, is a hot favourite with the tourists. The sanctuary is best visited during the month of April to June and then from October to November. There are thick deodar and fir forest to greet you. Well laid out trekking routes will take you deep inside the sanctuary and increase your chances of sighting Ibex, Deer, Bears and Leopards. More visible in the sanctuary are the Pheasants.

**Pong Lake Sanctuary:** Around 65 km from Dharamshala in the Kangra district, the Pong Lake Sanctuary makes for a good visit if you are interested in seeing animals like Nilgai, Sambar, Barking Deer, Wild Buar, Clawless Otter and Leapord. The lake is a huge drawer of Siberian Ducks during the winter season. The sanctuary covers an area of 9675 sq km and is best visited during the period of October to February.

---

### **Nature Parks of Himachal Pradesh:**

---

In addition to the National Parks and Wildlife Sanctuaries, there are Nature Parks in Himachal Pradesh as well.

**Nature Park of Kufri-** Located very close to Shimla, the Nature Park at Kufri is a huge crowd puller. The denizens of this park include Hangal, Barking Deer, Musk Deer, Brown Bear and rare species of Monal.

**Nature Park at Manali-** This one is located in the Kullu district of the state and is meant to arise a feeling of love an concern for the nature and wildlife of the region.

**Nature Park at Gopalpur-** Gopalpur is frequently visited by tourists. Hence, an effort has been made to expose tourists to the importance of nature in this nature park. Animals are kept in enclosures here.

---

#### **5.4.2 Jammu & Kashmir:**

---

The state of Jammu and Kashmir with the variety of geographical regions, weather, flora and fauna has many delights to offer to the wildlife enthusiast and bird watchers. A number of famous animals found in the region are the snow leopard, common leopard, brown bear, Himalayan black bear, hangul or Kashmir stag, Bharal, red fox, markhor, musk deer, yellow-throated marten, shapu and langurs. Some birds which are also present in Kashmir are golden eagles, lammergeiers, black eagles, kestrels, hobbys, griffon vultures, Cinnamon sparrows, the black and yellow grosbeak, black bulbuls and monal pheasants. Several national parks and wildlife sanctuaries well known in the state of Jammu and Kashmir like Ramnagar Wildlife Sanctuary, Kishtwar High Altitude National Park, Nandni Wildlife Sanctuary, Surinsar Mansar Wildlife Sanctuary, Jasrota Wildlife Sanctuary, Dachigam National Park, Overa Wildlife Sanctuary and Gulmarg Biosphere Reserve.

---

#### **Wildlife Areas of Jammu And Kashmir:**

---

##### **Jammu Region:**

- Kishtwar High Altitude National Park- 425.00 sq.kms, Kishtwar
- Ramnagar Wildlife Sanctuary - 31.50 sq.kms, Kathua.
- Nandni wildlife Sanctuary 44.25 sq.kms -Kathua.
- Jasrota Wildlife Sanctuary 25.75 sq. - Kathua.
- Surinsar Mansar Wildlife -Sanctuary 55.50 sq.kms - Kathua.
- Trikuta Wildlife Sanctuary 27.75 sq.kms - Jammu

##### **Wildlife Conservation Reserves:**

- Sudhmahadev 142.25 sq.kms- Jammu East Kathua

- Jawahar Tunnel Chakore Reserve -18.00sq.kms, Kishtwar
- Gharana -0.75 sq.kms, Kathua
- Pargwal -49.25 sq.kms, Kathua
- Kukarian -24.25 sq.kms, Kathua
- Nanga -15.25 sq.kms, Kathua
- Asa Chak-Sangral -7.00 sq.kms -, Kathua
- Thein Conservation Reserve -19.00 sq, kms (over three state J&K, Punjab and HP)
- Bahu Conservation Reserve -19.75sq.km, Kathua

### **Kashmir Region:**

#### **National Parks & Sanctuaries**

- Dachigam National Park -171.25 sq.kms, Central Kashmir.
- City Forest (Salim Ali) National Park - 9.00 sq.kms, Central Kashmir
- Rajparian (Daksum) Wildlife Sanctuary- 20.00 sq.kms, South Kashmir.
- Overa-Aru Wildlife Sanctuary -511.00 sq.kms South Kashmir.
- Hirpora Wildlife Sanctuary -114.50 sq.kms South Kashmir.
- Baltal (Thajwas) Wildlife Sanctuary - 210.50 sq.kms, Central Kashmir.
- Gulmarg Wildlife Sanctuary- 139.25 sq.kms North Kashmir.
- Limber Wildlife Sanctuary 43.75 sq.kms north Kashmir.
- Lachipora Wildlife Sanctuary 93.50 sq.kms North Kashmir.

#### **Conservation Reserves:**

Khiram Conservation Reserve, Panyar, Khanagund, Shikargah, Khrew, Khonmoh, Brain-Nishat, Sharazbal, Khimber / Dara / Sharazbal, Wangat / Chatergul, Ajas, Naganari, Zaloor, Harwan.

**Wetland Reserves:**

Hokera, Malgam, Chatlam, Pampore, Manibugh, Mirgund, Shallabugh, Ajaz Jheel and Hygam.

**Ladakh Region:**

- Hemis High Altitude National Park -4100.00 sq.kms, Leh.
- Changthang Cold Desert Wildlife Sanctuary -4000.00 sq.km Leh
- Karakoram (Nubra-Shyok) Wildlife Sanctuary 5000.00 sq.km Leh
- Kanji Wildlife Sanctuary -100.00 sq.km Kargil
- Budhkhharbo Wildlife Sanctuary -12.00 sq.kms
- Noorichan Conservation Reserve-2.00 sq.km
- Tsomoriri Wetland-(The Wetland has been declared as Ramsar Site under Ramsar Convention), Leh. The area of this Wetland falls in Changthang Wildlife Sanctuary.
- Pangong Tso Wetland- Leh .This area comes under Changthang Wildlife Sanctuary.
- Chushul Marshes (Wetland). This area comes under Changthang Wildlife Sanctuary.
- Tsokar Basin (Wetland). This area comes under Changthang Wildlife Sanctuary.
- Hanley Marshes (Wetland). This area comes under Changthang Wildlife Sanctuary.

**SOURCE-** [http://jkforest.com/jkforest/act\\_pdf/wildlife\\_areas.pdf](http://jkforest.com/jkforest/act_pdf/wildlife_areas.pdf)

**Ramnagar Wildlife Sanctuary:** Ramnagar Wildlife Sanctuary is situated only 6 km. away from Jammu city. This sanctuary occupies an area of 31 square km and has an altitudinal range of 430 to 611 meters above sea level. About 8 mammal species of animals including nilgai and barking deer, wild boar, rhesus monkey can be seen in this sanctuary. About 15 species of birds can also be seen in this

sanctuary like Indian Mynah, blue rock pigeon, peafowl, red jungle fowl, jungle crow, golden oriole, white cheeked bulbul. The best time to view the mammals is from September to March and for birds is March to May.

**Kishtwar High Altitude National Park:** Kishtwar High Altitude National Park is situated only 248 kms away from Jammu city. This national park occupies an area of 400 square km and has an altitudinal range of 1,700 to 4,800 meters above sea level. The area is characterized by marked variations in topography, climate and altitude as a result of which different types of forest vegetation occur. The principal tree species are *Cedrus deodara*, *Pinus gerardiana*, *Pinus wallichiana*, *Quercus* spp., *Juglans regia*, *Ulmus* spp., etc. The major herbs include *Primula* spp., *Brachypodium* spp., *Anemone* spp., *Dipsacus mitis*, *Artemisia vulgaris*, etc. The park contains 15 species of mammals including the musk deer, Himalayan black and brown bear, hangul, markhor, goral, langur, leopard, etc.

*Kishtwar High Altitude National Park, Kashmir*

There are about 50 species of birds like the Himalayan jungle crow, bearded vulture, griffon vulture, flycatcher, golden oriole, white cheeked bulbul and Indian Mynah. The best season to view the birds is from March to May and for animals is September to March.

**Surinsar Mansar Wildlife Sanctuary:** Surinsar Mansar Wildlife Sanctuary has been named after the two lakes located on each corner of the sanctuary. This sanctuary comprises an area of 98 square km. and located about 56 kms away from the Jammu city. The vegetation consists of the mixed scrub forest with broad leaved species mixed with stands of *Pinus gerardiana*. The common broad leaved species are *Acacia* spp., *Mallotus phillipensis*, *dalbergia sissii*, *ficus religiosa*, *bahunia variegata*. This wildlife sanctuary supports 8 species of mammals and 15 species of birds. The mammals found in the sanctuary are Goral, wild boar, barking deer, leopard. There is multitude of birds like black partridge, red jungle fowl, peafowl, grey partridge, green pigeon, blue rock pigeon, rufus turtle dove. The best season to view the mammals is from September to March and for birds is March to May.

**Dachigam National Park:** Dachigam National Park is situated about 22 kms. from Srinagar. Dachigam National Park forms almost half of the Dal Lake's catchment area and is one of the famous natural reserves in India. This park covers an area of 141 square kms. and situated at an altitude of 1700 to 4000 meters above sea level. The dense forests of Dachigam offers a brilliant view along with a Glacier fed rivulet flowing right through the middle. There are over fifty species of trees, twenty of shrubs and five hundred species of herbs. The principal tree species are *Pinus griffithii*, *Abies pindrow*, *Juglans regia*, *Morus alba*, *Betula utilis*, *Salix spp.*, *Populus spp.*, *Prunus armeniaca*, *Corylus colurna*, *Quercus robur*, *Ulmus wallichiana*, *Aesculus indica*, etc. This park is the home of the endangered Hangul Stag, the species of the red deer in the country. The various other mammals include Himalayan brown bear, Himalayan black bear, musk deer, langur, Himalayan marmot, leopard etc. There are over 150 species of birds. The principal species are monal, koklas, bearded vulture, griffon vulture, golden eagle, grey heron, starling, golden oriole, paradise flycatcher, western yellow-billed blue magpie, kestrel, peregrine falcon, black bulbul, etc.

**Gulmarg Biosphere Reserve:** Gulmarg Biosphere Reserve is located about 48 kms to its south-west of Srinagar. This reserve covers an area of 180 square kms and situated at an altitude of 2400 to 4300 meters above sea level. The sanctuary is of particular interest to ornithologists. The area holds a rich cover of vegetation and consists of conifers which account for over 90% of area. The principal species are *Cedrus deodara*, *Pinus griffithii*, *Abies pindrow*, *Aesculus indica* etc. The ground cover is very rich and dicotyledonous herbs dominate that comprises of *Rumex patientia*, *Primula spp.*, *anemone spp.*, etc. It is famous for retaining several rare and endangered species of animals like the musk deer, hangul, serow, brown bear, Leopard, black bear and red fox etc. The reserve also houses a good population of pheasants and resident and migratory birds.

**Hemis National Park** (or Hemis High Altitude National Park) is a high altitude national park in the eastern Ladakh region of the state of Jammu and Kashmir in India. It is the only national park in India north of the Himalayas, the largest

notified protected area in India (and thus the largest national park of India), and is the second largest contiguous protected area after the Nanda Devi Biosphere Reserve and surrounding protected areas. The park is home to a number of species of endangered mammals including the snow leopard. The park is home to a viable breeding population of about 200 snow leopards, especially in the Rumbak catchment area. The prey base for the apex predator in the Central Asian Highlands is primarily supported in Hemis by Argali (Great Tibetan Sheep), Bharal (Blue Sheep), Shapu (Ladakhi Urial), and livestock. A small population of the Asiatic Ibex is also present in Hemis. Hemis is the only refuge in India containing the Shapu. The park is a good place to study Himalayan and Trans-Himalayan birds of prey. Among birds of prey noted here are the Golden Eagle, the Lammergeier vulture, and the Himalayan Griffon vulture.

The Rumbak Valley offers good opportunities for bird watching, including several Tibetan species not common in other parts of India. This region is in the rain shadow of the Himalayas, and does not receive much precipitation. Hence, dry forests of juniper, Populus - Salix forests, subalpine dry birch - fir are present at lower altitudes.

**Salim Ali National Park:** Salim Ali National Park (formerly the City Forest National Park) is a national park in Jammu and Kashmir in India. It covers 9.07 km<sup>2</sup> and is located in the proximity of the capital city of Srinagar. The Srinagar airport is 12 km from the park. The name of the park commemorates the Indian ornithologist Salim Ali.

---

### 5.5 Protected/Restricted Area Permits:

---

The Foreigner (Protected Areas) Act, 1958 requires Foreigners to obtain a Protected Area Permit (PAP) to visit certain areas in India. This is an additional requirement, apart from having Indian visa. For Indian citizens, who do not belong to protected areas require an Inner Line Permit, on the other hand the NRIs, PIO card holders and OCI holders are not eligible for an Inner line Permit. They need to have a

Protected or Restricted Area Permit like Foreigners. The basic purpose of these permits is to ensure protection of these areas as well as security of tourist.

The requirements for permit are that tourists are required to travel in group of two or four or more; however they are required to pay no fees for these permits. A Protected Area Permit is normally issued for 10 days and has a option of 1 week (7 day) extension. These permits are issued by concerned Indian states, FRRO's & Indian Mission Abroad. However, the citizens of Pakistan, Bangladesh, China & Myanmar can get these permits only with the approval of the Ministry of Home Affairs.

Everyone who is entering these areas with a valid Inner Line Permit, Protected Area Permit (PAP) or Restricted Area Permit (RAP) should adhere to the following guidelines issued by the Ministry of Home Affairs.

- Permit is valid for group tourists with more than two persons.
- Tourists are to travel through the specific routes and use the specific entry and exit points
- Copy of permit must be deposited at each entry and exit points
- The permit holder shall not stay back in the protected or restricted area
- Foreigners are allowed to travel to the above places by air only
- While traveling, the permit holders are allowed to travel only on the National Highways unless permitted to use other roads.

---

### **Himachal Pradesh:**

---

Following areas in Himachal Pradesh require protected areas permits Khab, Samdo, Dhankar, Tabo, Gompa, Kaza, Morang and Dubling (Lahaul & Spiti). Diplomatic & Officials Passport holders who wish to visit, stay or pass through the above mentioned areas and required to obtain necessary protected areas permits from Ministry of External Affairs. Application (in triplicate) should be submitted to the Northern Division, MDA, South Block, Room No. 235, New Delhi giving a

minimum of 8 (eight) weeks notice to process the relevant case. However, application does not imply automatic issue of permits.

Such permits for the foreigners who want to visit such places in connection with their engagement with some U.N. Aided or World Bank Project are required to submit their applications to the Resident Commissioner, Himachal Govt., Himachal Bhavan, Sikandra Road, New Delhi. This Officer issues such permits to foreigners required to visit such places in connection with the World Bank or U.N. Aided projects and the Projects sponsored by the Govt. of India or any State Govt. or U.T. Administration. In such cases Resident Commissioner would insist upon a letter of requisition from the sponsoring authority i.e. World Bank or U.N. Agency or a concerned Union Ministry or State Govt. or U.T. Administration under whose aegis the project is being implemented.

Foreigners intending to visit protected areas which are now open for tourism, as tourists in group consisting of four or more foreigners, sponsored by the recognized travel agencies in India with predrawn itinerary can get protected area permits from the State Govt. The H.P. State Govt. has further delegated these powers to District Magistrates in their Jurisdictions.

---

### **Jammu & Kashmir**

---

Tourists can visit the following areas provided they obtain special permits in Jammu & Kashmir. **Ministry of Home Affairs** and **District Magistrates** of concerned districts issue the special permits.

- **Khaltse Sub-Division** (Droka hpa Area)
  - Khaltse-Dunkhar-Sroduchan
  - Hanudo-Biana-Dha
- **Nubra Sub Division**
  - Leh-Khardung La-Khalsar-Tirit up to Panasik
  - Leh-Khardung La-Khalsar up to Hunder
  - Leh-Sabo-Digar La-Digar-Labab-Khungru Gampa-Tangar

- **Note:** Only for trekking conducted by approved tour operators and accompanied by State Police personnel
- **Nyona Sub Division**
  - Leh-Upshi-Chusathang-Mahe-Puga-Tso-Moari Lake/Kozok
  - Leh-Upshi-Debring-Puga-Tso-Moari Lake/Korzok
  - Leh-Karu-Chang La-Durbuk-Tangtse-Lukung-Spansik.
  - Pangong Lake up to Spansik

Individual tourists are not permitted. Tourist groups are to travel on the identified tour circuits only. Groups should consist of 4 to 20 persons and should be accompanied by a liaison officer. A period of 7 days is permitted.

---

**5.6 CHECK YOUR PROGRESS:**

---

1. What do you mean by Flora & Fauna of a Place?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

2. What do you mean by a national park?

.....

.....

.....

.....  
.....

3. What do you mean by a sanctuary?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

4. What is the difference between National Park & Wildlife Sanctuary?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

5. What is a Biosphere Reserve?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

6. Name any five wildlife national park & sanctuaries present in Himachal Pradesh?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

7. Name any five wildlife national park & sanctuaries present in Jammu & Kashmir?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

8. Dachigam National Park is Famous for Which Animal?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....  
.....

9. What are protected & restricted areas?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

10. What are the protected areas present in Himachal Pradesh?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

11. What are the protected areas present in Jammu & Kashmir?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

12. What are the Guidelines for tourists entering the protected areas by the Ministry of Home Affairs?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

---

**5.7 SUMMARY:**

---

The northern region of India has many wildlife sanctuaries and national parks known for diverse rich flora and fauna. Wildlife lovers, wildlife adventure enthusiasts and nature lovers from all over the world come to enjoy the charisma of wildlife tourism especially in Jammu & Kashmir and Himachal Pradesh.

Flora & fauna represents the catalogue of plants & animals of a particular region. National parks and wildlife sanctuaries are protected natural habitats, declared by the government of a country according to the regulations from the IUCN (The World Conservation Union) to preserve the wildlife through conservation of ecosystems.

Himachal Pradesh has 32 Wildlife Sanctuaries, 2 National Parks and 3 Game Reserves which cover an area of about 5940 square kilometers, to preserve its exceptional natural wealth. Also, the state of Jammu and Kashmir has a fairly rich diversity of plant & animal life. The flora of Himalayan Kashmir comprises about 3,054 species besides being home to about 75 species of mammals. About 16% of the Indian mammals, birds, reptiles, amphibians and butterflies are presented in the state.

The Foreigner (Protected Areas) Act, 1958 requires Foreigners to obtain a Protected Area Permit (PAP) to visit certain areas in India. This is an additional requirement, apart from having Indian visa. The basic purpose of these permits is to ensure protection of these areas as well as security of tourist. A Protected Area Permit is normally issued for 10 days and has a option of 1 week (7 day) extension. These permits are issued by concerned Indian states, FRRO's & Indian Mission Abroad. The protected areas present in two states comprise Khab, Samdo, Dhankar, Tabo, Gompa, Kaza, Morang and Dubling (Lahaul & Spiti) in Himachal Pradesh & some areas in Nyona, Nubra, and Khaltse Sub-Division in Jammu & Kashmir.

---

### 5.8 CLUES TO ANSWER (CHECK YOUR PROGRESS):

---

1. Refer section 4.3
2. Refer section 4.4
3. Refer section 4.4
4. Refer section 4.4
5. Refer section 4.4
6. Refer section 4.4
7. Refer section 4.4
8. Refer section 4.4
9. Refer section 4.5
10. Refer section 4.5
11. Refer section 4.5
12. Refer section 4.5

---

### 5.9 GLOSSARY:

---

- **Fauna** is the animal life occurring in a particular region or time, generally the naturally occurring or indigenous – native animal life.
- **Flora** is the plant life occurring in a particular region or time, generally the naturally occurring or indigenous – native plant life.

- **Wildlife sanctuary** is a protected area where wild animals are protected in natural habitat & very limited human activity is allowed.
- **National Park** is a area protected to preserve flora & fauna as a whole & no human activity is allowed inside it.
- **Wildlife (Protection) Act, 1972-** Government of India enacted a comprehensive legislation "**Wild Life (Protection) Act, 1972**" with the objective of effectively controlling poaching and illegal trade in wildlife and its derivatives. This has been amended recently (January, 2003) and punishment and penalty for offences under the Act have been made more stringent.
- **Man and Biosphere Programme (MABP) - The Man and the Biosphere Programme (MAB)** of UNESCO was established in 1971 to promote interdisciplinary approaches to management, research and education in ecosystem conservation and sustainable use of natural resources. Sub-programmes and activities focus on specific ecosystems: mountains; drylands; tropical forests; urban systems; wetlands; and marine, island and coastal ecosystems.
- **UNESCO-United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organization** was made on 16 November 1945 to create the conditions for dialogue among civilizations, cultures and peoples, based upon respect for commonly shared values.
- **IUCN (The World Conservation Union)-** Founded in 1948 as the world's first global environmental organization and largest global environmental organization.
- **The Foreigner (Protected Areas) Act, 1958** requires Foreigners to obtain a Protected Area Permit (PAP) to visit certain areas in India.

---

### 5.10 References:

---

- <http://www.zimbio.com/India+Tours/articles/sPZGmQTRMfH/North+India+Wildlife+Tour+Explore+Diverse>
- wikipedia
- <http://www.sunrisevilla.in/himachal/flora-fauna-himachal.asp>
- <http://www.spectrumtour.com/north-india-tourism/geography-of-himachal-pradesh.htm>

- 
- <http://www.kasheeronline.com/kashmir-flora-fauna.asp>
  - [http://www.indianetzone.com/14/flora\\_fauna\\_jammu\\_kashmir.htm](http://www.indianetzone.com/14/flora_fauna_jammu_kashmir.htm)
  - <http://www.kashmirnetwork.com/wildlife/biodiversity.html>
  - <http://www.travelmasti.com/Wildlife-sanct/>
  - <http://www.indianwildlifeportal.com/national-parks/>
  - <http://www.differencebetween.com/difference-between-wildlife-sanctuary-and-vs-national-park/>
  - <http://ptuas.loremate.com/evs/node/5>
  - <http://www.indialine.com/travel/himachalpradesh/wildlife.html>
  - <http://hpforest.nic.in/wparks2.htm>
  - <http://www.indiawildliferesorts.com/national-parks-in-jammu-kashmir.html>
  - [http://www.kashmir-tours.net/JK\\_Wildlife.htm](http://www.kashmir-tours.net/JK_Wildlife.htm)
  - [http://jkforest.com/jkforest/act\\_pdf/wildlife\\_areas.pdf](http://jkforest.com/jkforest/act_pdf/wildlife_areas.pdf)
  - <http://www.immihelp.com/nri/protected-restricted-area-permit-india.html>
  - [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Foreigners\\_%28Protected\\_Areas%29\\_Order\\_1958\\_%28India%29](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Foreigners_%28Protected_Areas%29_Order_1958_%28India%29)
  - <http://hplahaulspiti.nic.in/foreigner.htm>
  - <http://indtravel.com/misc/restrict.html>
  - [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Man\\_and\\_the\\_Biosphere\\_Programme](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Man_and_the_Biosphere_Programme)
  - <http://www.unesco.org>
  - [www.mapsofindia.com](http://www.mapsofindia.com)
  - [http://m.wikitravel.org/en/Himachal\\_Pradesh](http://m.wikitravel.org/en/Himachal_Pradesh)
  - [www.myhimalayas.com](http://www.myhimalayas.com)
  - [www.thehuntingbroker.com](http://www.thehuntingbroker.com)

---

## **Unit-6**

### **Uttar Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh and Maharashtra**

---

**Structure:**

**6.1 Introduction**

**6.2 Objectives**

**6.3 National Parks, Wildlife Sanctuaries and Other Unique Natural Heritage**

**6.3.1 Uttar Pradesh**

**6.3.2 Madhya Pradesh**

**6.4 Role of National Parks, Wildlife Sanctuaries and Other Unique Natural Heritage in Tourism Promotion**

**6.5 Summary**

**6.6 Glossary**

**6.7 Answer to Check Your Progress**

**6.8 References**

**6.9 Suggested Readings**

**6.10 Terminal and Model Questions**

---

**6.1 Introduction:**

---

The World Heritage Sites in India are recognized by the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) as on 29, as of 2012. These are places of importance of cultural or natural heritage as described in the UNESCO World Heritage Convention, established in 1972. The Convention concerning the protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage was adopted on 17 November 1997 following the General Conference of the UNESCO held from 17 October 1972 to 21 November 1972. The Convention is defined under 28 Articles. Broadly, the Cultural Heritage Sites are defined in Article 1 as monuments, groups of buildings and sites, while the natural sites defined under Article 2 refer to natural features, geological and physiographical formations and natural sites. As of date, there are 911 properties under the World Heritage List, which cover 711 cultural sites, 180 natural sites and 27 mixed properties encompassing 152

countries, including India. Countries who have signed the Convention are 187 States, including India, which signed the Convention on November 14, 1977.

India is an incredible country where visitors can relish all from vibrant culture, traditions to rich bio-diversity. India is the only country where you will find 441 wildlife sanctuaries, 80 National Parks and 28 Tiger Reserves. These sanctuaries are referred as "Wildlife Sanctuaries" (IUCN Category IV Protected Area). Among these, the 28 Tiger Reserves are governed by Project Tiger and are of special significance in the conservation of the tiger. Some wildlife sanctuaries are specifically named "Bird Sanctuary", eg. Keoladeo Ghana National Park (Rajasthan) before attained National Park status. Many National Parks were initially Wildlife Sanctuaries.

---

**6.2 Objectives:**

---

After reading carefully this unit you will be able to:

- Know the importance of National Parks, Wildlife Sanctuaries and Other Unique Natural Heritage
- Know in detail about the various natural sites and unique natural heritage.
- Enrich your knowledge of various wildlife sanctuaries and national parks of different states of India.

---

### **6.3 National Parks, Wildlife Sanctuaries and Other Unique Natural Heritage:**

---

#### **6.3.1 Uttar Pradesh:**

---

**Dudhwa National Park:** Dudhwa National Park is a national park that is a major part of the Dudhwa Tiger Reserve. It is located in the Terai region of U.P, India. It covers an area of 680 km square (260sq miles). Out of this total area, there is a buffer zone of almost 190 km square (73 sq miles). It was established in 1958 as a wildlife sanctuary mainly for swamp deer. It was notified as a national park in January 1977, mainly due to the efforts of Billy Arjan Singh. In the year 1988, it was declared a tiger reserve along with Kishanpur Wildlife Sanctuary and Katarniaghat Wildlife Sanctuary.

**Kishanpur Wildlife Sanctuary:** The Kishanpur Wildlife Sanctuary is also a part of the Dudhwa Tiger Reserve, which is situated near Mailani in Uttar Pradesh, India. It covers approximately an area of 227 km (141 mi), and it was founded in 1972.

**Katarniaghat Wildlife Sanctuary:** Katarniaghat Wildlife Sanctuary is also a part of the Dudhwa Tiger Reserve, located in Uttar Pradesh near the India-Nepal border, in the Terai area of Bahraich district. It spreads in an area of 400 km<sup>2</sup> (150 sq mi) and was established

in 1976. This sanctuary is now being managed along with the Dudhwa National Park and Kishanpur Wildlife Sanctuary, as part of the Dudhwa Tiger Reserve under Project Tiger of the Government of India. The Forests of Katarniaghat provide strategic connectivity between tiger habitats of Dudhwa and Kishanpur in India and the Bardia National Park in Nepal. It is a safe place endangered and critically endangered species, which occurs here and include the gharial, tiger,

rhino, Gangetic dolphin, Swamp Deer, Hispid hare, Bengal florican, the White-backed and Long-billed vultures.

**Pilibhit Tiger Reserve:** Pilibhit Tiger Reserve, located in Pilibhit district, Lakhimpur Kheri District and Bahraich District of Uttar Pradesh state in India. It lies along the India-Nepal border in the foothills of the Himalayas and the plains of the 'terai' of Uttar Pradesh. It is amongst one of India's 41 Project Tiger reserves. Pilibhit is one of the few well forested districts in Uttar Pradesh.

**Nawabganj Bird Sanctuary:** This sanctuary is mainly a bird sanctuary, situated on the Kanpur-Lucknow road in Uttar Pradesh, India consisting of a lake and the surrounding environs. The sanctuary provides protection for 250 species of migratory birds mostly from CIS (or formerly USSR) countries, but the numbers have been declining since the 1990s, most of them relocated to newer areas in Himachal and Rajasthan.

**Hastinapur Sanctuary:** It was established in 1986, in Meerut, Ghaziabad, Bijnore and Jyotiba Phule Nagar. The Hastinapur Sanctuary spreading in an area of 2073 km<sup>2</sup>. Mainly the wild animals in this sanctuary include various species of animals including antelope, sambhar, cheetal, blue bull, leopard, hyena, wild cat, and different types of birds. It is also the house of alligators.

**National Chambal Sanctuary:** It is a 5,400 km<sup>2</sup> (2,100 sq mi) protected area for critically endangered Gharial Crocodiles and the Red-crowned roof turtle and the endangered Ganges River Dolphin. It is Located near Etawah in Uttar Pradesh, in North India. It was declared in 1978 and constitutes a long narrow tri-state eco-reserve co-administered by the states of Rajasthan, MP and UP.

**Mahavir Swami Sanctuary:** Mahavir Swami Sanctuary is one of many wildlife sanctuaries in Uttar Pradesh. It is 125 km from Jhansi. The sanctuary is spreads over an area of 5.4 km<sup>2</sup>. Jhansi provides for a wonderful gateway to the Bundelkhand region and has been rendered famous by the legendary Rani Laxmi Bai. In addition to a variety of birds, the residents include leopard, nilgai, wild boar, sambhar, black buck, blue bull, bear, jackals, langur and monkeys. The best

time to visit here is from November to April. There is a forest rest house to provide accommodation facilities.

**Ranipur Sanctuary:** Ranipur Wildlife Sanctuary, founded in 1977, is one of the attractions of Banda district in Uttar Pradesh. It spreads over 230 km<sup>2</sup> and it is noted for its

diverse wildlife. It is the natural habitat of various animals including the tiger, leopard, sloth bear, sambar, blackbuck, peafowl, spur fowl, jungle fowl, painted partridge, fishing cat and chinkara.

**Chandra Prabha Sanctuary:** Chandraprabha sanctuary is situated in the eastern region of Uttar Pradesh. It is well endowed with beautiful picnic spots, dense forests, and scenic waterfalls like Rajdari and Devdari which attract tourists all over the world. Chandra Prabha Wildlife Sanctuary is situated about 70 kilometres from the historic city Varanasi.

**Kaimoor Sanctuary:** This sanctuary set up in 1982. It is located on the border area of Uttar Pradesh and Bihar. The vegetation of this sanctuary consists of 500 square kilometers of verdant land. The topography of the region is as varied as the types of animals that it possesses.

**Lakh Bahosi Sanctuary:** It is also a bird sanctuary spreading over two jheels (shallow lakes) near the villages of Lakh and Bahosi (abt 4km apart) in Kannauj district, Uttar Pradesh. It is about a distance of 40 km from Kannauj. Primarily a bird sanctuary, species from 49 genera (of the 97 inhabiting India) can be seen at the sanctuary. It is one of India's largest bird sanctuary, covering 80 km<sup>2</sup> including a stretch of the Upper Ganges canal.

**Samaspur Sanctuary:** Samaspur Sanctuary is situated near Salon in Rae Bareilly District. Samaspur Bird Sanctuary lies at about 122 km from Lucknow on Lucknow-Varanasi highway. It was established in 1987 in 780 hectare.

**Suhelva Sanctuary:** Suhelva Sanctuary is 60 KM from Balrampur in Uttar Pradesh. It is famous for its Tiger, Cheetal, Leopard, Bear, Boar, Wild cat & Birds.

**Sandi Bird Sanctuary:** Sandi Bird Sanctuary is a bird sanctuary in Hardoi district of Uttar Pradesh, India. The sanctuary is located at a distance of 19 km on Hardoi-

Sandi Road in Hardoi district of Uttar Pradesh. Sandi Bird Sanctuary is 1 km from Sandi town on Main Road, Nawabganj, near Sandi Police Station Hardoi. Sandi Bird sanctuary was created in the year 1990 in order to protect the natural habitats and aquatic vegetation for the local residents and migratory birds. The Sandi Bird sanctuary is also known by its ancient name as "Dahar Jheel" (Jheel = Lake). The lake's area is 309 ha (3.09 km<sup>2</sup>). River Garra, formerly known as Garun Ganga, passes near the sanctuary.

**Bakhira Sanctuary:** The Bakhira Bird Sanctuary is the largest natural flood plain wetland in Sant Kabir Nagar district of Eastern Uttar Pradesh. This sanctuary was established in 1980. It is situated 44 km west of Gorakhpur city. It is a vast stretch of water body expanding over an area of 29 km<sup>2</sup>. This is an important lake of eastern UP, which provides a wintering and staging ground for a number of migratory waterfowls and a breeding ground for resident birds.

**Patna Bird Sanctuary:** Patna Vihar Bird Sanctuary is a protected sanctuary in the Jalesar sub division of Etah district in Uttar Pradesh. It was founded in 1991. It is the smallest Bird Sanctuary in Uttar Pradesh, with a wetland area of only 1 km<sup>2</sup>. About 200,000 birds of 300 different species of birds visit the sanctuary. Pied Mynas, herons, cormorants & ducks and geese of all descriptions also frequent the Sanctuary.

**Keetham Lake:** Keetham Lake is a scenic lake located just outside Agra on the Agra - Delhi highway (NH 2). It is also known as the Sur Sarovar. It is a tranquil spot, ideal for a relaxed outing. A wide variety of fish and water-birds add to the lake's natural charm and beauty.

**Vijai Sagar Sanctuary:** Vijai Sagar Sanctuary is located in Mahoba District of Uttar Pradesh. This Wildlife Sanctuary was founded in 1990. Jackal, mongoose, wildcat and various local and migratory birds occupy the 3 km<sup>2</sup> of area.

**Saman Sanctuary:** This Bird Sanctuary is in Mainpuri district, in western Uttar Pradesh. It was established in the year 1990. The sanctuary is spread over an area of 5 km<sup>2</sup>. There are many birds which can be seen here and it is best suited for Bird

safari. In this there are different animals such as Jackal, Mongoose, Hare and various local and migratory birds.

**Okhla Sanctuary:** The Okhla barrage bird sanctuary in Okhla, near Delhi is a heaven for water birds. In 1990, an area of 3.5 square kilometres (1.4 sq mi) on the river Yamuna was notified as a bird sanctuary under the Wildlife Protection Act of India. The site is located at the point where the river leaves for Uttar Pradesh. The most prominent feature of the sanctuary is the large lake created by damming the river, which lies sandwiched between Okhla village towards the west and Gautam Budh Nagar towards the east.

**Sohagi Barwa Sanctuary:** Sohagi Barwa Sanctuary is in Maharajganj district in Uttar Pradesh. Sohagi Barwa is one of the prominent habitats of Tiger in Uttar Pradesh. . There are other animal also such as Leopard, Cheetal, Bear, Wild cat, Wild boar & Python.

**Kachhua Sanctuary:** Kachhua Sanctuary is in Varanasi District in Uttar Pradesh, India. There are different species of tortoise, Ganges dolphin and other water animals, which can be found here.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS - 1:**

---

1. Dudhwa National Park is a part of which Tiger Reserve?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

2. Mentioned name one main Bird Sanctuary.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

3. In which year Hastinapur Sanctuary was established?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4. Which Sanctuary is situated in Hardoi district of U.P? Write a note on it.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

---

**6.3.2 MADHYA PRADESH:**

---

**Bandhavgarh National Park:** This is one of the most popular national parks in India located in the Umaria district of Madhya Pradesh. Bandhavgarh was declared a national park in 1968, with an area of 105 km<sup>2</sup>. This park has a large biodiversity. The density of the tiger population at Bandhavgarh is one of the highest known in India. The park has a large breeding population of Leopards, and various species of deer.

**Kanha National Park:** Kanha National Park is a national park and a Tiger Reserve in the Mandla and Balaghat districts of Madhya Pradesh, India. It was divided into 2 sanctuaries till 1933 named as Hallon and Banjar of 250 and 300 square miles respectively. Created on June 1 1955, it stretches over an area of approximately 940 km squares combined in the two districts of Mandla and Balaghat. With its buffer zone of 1067 km square and 110 km square of Phensar sanctuary, it forms the Kanha tiger reserve in the year 1974. It is the largest national park in central India. The popular name of this park is WILD MAGIC. This park project is running with the help of World Bank. This park is having a large population of Royal Bengal tiger's along with the leopards, the sloth bear, barasingha, and the Indian wild Dog.

**Satpura National:** Satpura National Park is located in the Hoshangabad district of Madhya Pradesh in India. It is named after the Satpura hill ranges (Mahadeo hills). Satpura National Park, an unique ecosystem, is very rich in biodiversity. The fauna comprises of tiger, leopard, sambar, chital, Bhedki, nilgai, four-horned antelope, chinkara, bison (gour), wild boar, wild dog, bear, black buck, fox, porcupine, flying squirrel, mouse deer, Indian Giant squirrel etc. There is a wide variety of birds. Hornbills and peafowl are some of them. The flora of this national park consists mainly of sal, teak, tendu, Phyllanthus emblica, mahua, bel, bamboo, and a wide variety of grasses and medicinal plants.

**Sanjay National Park:** It is located in the Sidhi District of Madhya Pradesh, in India. It is a part of the Sanjay-Dubri Tiger Reserve. It covers an area of 466.7 km<sup>2</sup>. The national park consists mainly of sal forests. It also consists of Tiger, leopard, spotted deer, sambar deer, wild boar, Neelgai, Chinkara, Civet, Porcupine, Monitor Lizard, and three hundred nine species of birds. Most attractive birds in this national park are Golden Hooded Oriole, Racket-tailed drongos, Indian Pitta Rufus-Treepie, Lesser Adjutant, Red-headed vulture, cinereous vulture, Indian white-rumped vulture, Ezyption vulture, Nightjars and many other species.

**Madhav National Park:** Madhav National Park is located in Shivpuri District of Gwalior region in northwest Madhya Pradesh, India. It is considered as the ancestral

home of the line of Ali Khan, a region based in Punjab, and most famous for the laws of commonly credited with defining modern day jurisprudence. . Shivpuri is well known for the royal legacy of its past, when it was the summer capital of the Scindia rulers of Gwalior.

**Van Vihar National Park:** Van Vihar National Park is a national park in India located in the heart of Bhopal, which is the capital city of Madhya Pradesh. In 1983 it was declared a national park. It covers an area of about 4.45 km<sup>2</sup>. In spite of its status as a national park, Van Vihar is developed and managed as a modern zoological park, followed by the guidelines of the Central Zoo Authority. The animals here are kept in their natural habitat. Most of the animals here kept are either orphaned which are brought from various parts of the state or are those which are exchanged from other zoos.

**Mandla Plant Fossils National Park:** National Fossils Park is situated in Dindori district of Madhya Pradesh in India. This national park has plants in fossil form that existed in India anywhere between 40 million and 150 million years ago. It spreads over seven villages of Mandla District which are Ghuguwa, Umaria, Deorakhurd, Barbaspur, Chanti-hills, Chargaon and Deori Kohani. The Mandla Plant Fossils National Park extends in an area that spreads over 274,100 square metres. Such fossils are found in three other villages but they are outside the national park.

**Panna National Park:** Panna National Park is a national park located in Panna and Chhatarpur districts of Madhya Pradesh in India. It has an area of approximately 542.67 km<sup>2</sup> (209.53 sq mi). In 1994 it was declared as the twenty second Tiger reserve of India and the fifth in Madhya Pradesh. In 2007 it was rewarded with the *Award of Excellence* as the best maintained national park of India by the Ministry of Tourism of India. It is a notable fact that by 2009, the entire tiger population had been eliminated by poaching with the collusion of forest department officials.

**Pench National Park, Madhya Pradesh:** Pench National Park is situated in Chhindwara and Seoni districts of Madhya Pradesh, India. It derives its name from the Pench River that flows through the National park from north to south dividing the park into almost equal

Western and eastern halves- the well forested areas of Chhindwara and Seoni districts respectively. In 1977 it was declared a sanctuary but it raised to the status of National park in 1983. Later on it was established as Tiger Reserve area in 1992. It is the only national park famous for water rafting.

**Nature reserves:**

---

There are a number of nature reserves, including:

**Amarkantak:** Amarkantak is a pilgrim town located in Anuppur District in the state of Madhya Pradesh, India. It is also known as "Teerthraj" (the king of pilgrimages). Amarkantak region is a unique natural heritage area. Also it is the meeting point of the Vindhyas and the Satpuras, with the Maikal Hills being the fulcrum. This is where the Narmada River, the Sone River and Johila River emerge.

**Bagh Caves:** The Bagh Caves are a group of nine rock-cut monuments which are situated among the southern slopes of the Vindhyas in Kukshi tehsil of Dhar district in Madhya Pradesh state, India. These monuments are located at a distance of 97 km from Dhar town. These caves are renowned for mural paintings by master painters of ancient India.

**Bhedaghat:** Bhedaghat is a town in Jabalpur district of Madhya Pradesh, India. It is situated by the side of river Narmada and is approximately 20 km from Jabalpur city. Its most famous sights are the Dhuandhar Fall, Marble Rocks, and the Chausath Yogini temple. The temple is one of the four major extant temples containing carvings of sixty four yogini, which are female yoga mystics. It was built in the 10th century under the Kalachuri Empire.

**Chambal River:** The Chambal River is a tributary of the Yamuna River in central India, and it forms a part of the greater Gangetic drainage system. The river flows north-northeast through Madhya Pradesh, running for a time through Rajasthan, then forming the boundary between Rajasthan and Madhya Pradesh before turning southeast to join the Yamuna in Uttar Pradesh state. It is a legendary river and we find mention in ancient scriptures. The perennial Chambal originates at Manpura which is south of Mhow town, near Indore, on the south slope of the Vindhya Range in Madhya Pradesh. The Chambal and its tributaries drain the Malwa region of northwestern Madhya Pradesh, while its tributary, the Banas, drains southeastern Rajasthan. It ends a confluence of five rivers, including the Chambal, Kaweri, Yamuna, Sind, Pahuj, at Pachnada near Bhareh in Uttar Pradesh state, at the border of Bhind and Etawah districts.

**Narwar:** Narwar is a town in Shivpuri district in Madhya Pradesh in India. Narwar is a historic town and the Narwar Fort is just east of the Kali Sindh River and it is situated at a distance of 42 km from Shivpuri. Narwar was known as Narwar District during the times of Gwalior State. It is also known as Nalpura

(Nala's town) in many medieval Sanskrit inscriptions. The Narwar Fort is renowned for its architecture and it is also very ancient. The fort is surrounded by the Kali Sindh River. There are 3 dams namely as Harsi Dam, Mohini Sagar and Atal Sagar. The Narwar is a very good tourist place due to its surroundings by river Kali Sindh and archaeological importance of Narwar Fort. Presently the Fort is being renovated by the Archaeological Survey of India.

**Pachmarhi:** Pachmarhi is a hill station in Madhya Pradesh state of central India. It is known as "*Satpura ki Rani*" (Queen of Satpura), situated at a height of 1100 m in a valley of the Satpura Range in Hoshangabad district. It is the highest point in the central India region and the Vindhya and Satpura range.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS - 2**

---

1. Kanha National Park is divided into two sanctuaries namely.

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

2. Which park is popularly known as Wild Magic?

---



---



---



---



---

---

---

3. Which National Park mainly consists of Sal forests?

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

4. Which National Park is declared as the 22<sup>nd</sup> Tiger Reserve?

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**6.4 Role of National Parks, Wildlife Sanctuaries and Other Unique Natural Heritage in Tourism Promotion**

---

Natural tourism is entirely a new approach in tourism. Natural tourism is a preserving travel to natural areas to appreciate the cultural and natural history of

the environment, taking care not to disturb the integrity of the ecosystem, while creating economic opportunities that make conservation and protection of natural resources advantageous to the local people.

In short, natural tourism can be categorized as a tourism programme that is - "Nature based, ecologically sustainable, where education and interpretation is a major constituent and where local people are benefited."

All this together can be called natural tourism. If a travel does not satisfy any one of these constituents, then it is not called a real natural tourism venture.

---

### 6.5 GLOSSARY:

---

1. **Preserving-** Maintain (something) in its original or existing state.
2. **Conservation-** Preservation, protection, or restoration of the natural environment, natural ecosystems, vegetation, and wildlife
3. **Wildlife-** Wild animals collectively; the native fauna (and sometimes flora) of a region
4. **Integrity-** The quality of being honest and having strong moral principles; moral uprightness.
5. **Categorized-** Place in a particular class or group.

---

### 6.6 ANSWERS TO 'CHECK YOUR PROGRESS':

---

#### Check Your Progress - 1

1. Dudhwa Tiger Reserve
2. Nawabganj Bird Sanctuary
3. 1986
4. Sandai Bird Sanctuary

#### Check Your Progress - 2

1. Hallon and Banjara
2. Kanha National Park
3. Sanjay National Park
4. Panna National Park

#### Check Your Progress - 3

1. Chitrakote Water Fall
2. Tirathgarh Water Fall
3. Gadiya Mountain
4. Achanakmar Wildlife Sanctuary

---

**6.7 References Books:**

---

- Nature tourism by Tense Whelam
- Uttarakhand Char Dham / Sangeeta & Ajay Khullar – 2008
- The Bandhavgarh Inheritance / Bittu Sahgal – 2008

---

**6.8 Further Study:**

---

- "India Tourism Statistics". Ministry of Tourism, Governemtn of India. Retrieved 2012-02-15.
- US and UK top foreign tourist arrivals in India
- "Uttar Pradesh top tourist destination: Tourism Ministry". Financialexpress.com. 2011-07-18. Retrieved 2011-07-23.
- Tourism Statistics at a Glance, 2010. Ministry of Tourism Government of India
- "North India's top 10 tourist destinations". July 19, 2011. Retrieved 2010-01-19.

---

**6.9 TERMINAL AND MODAL QUESTIONS:**

---

**Short Answer Type:**

1. Write a short note on Hastinapur Sanctuary.
2. Describe in brief the importance of Kanha Tiger Reserve.
3. Briefly describe any two Bird Sancturries.
4. Write the name of animals found in Satpura National Park.
5. What is the significance of Amarkantak?
6. Describe the location of Madhav National Park.
7. Write about the vegetation of Barnawapra Sanctuary.
8. Write a short note on Gomarda Reserve forest.

**Long Answer Type:**

1. What is the importance of Sancturries in relation of wild life?
2. Describe about "Teerth Raj".
3. Discuss the importance Gadiya Mountains.

---

## Unit-7

### Tamil Nadu and Andaman and Nicobar Islands

---

**Structure:**

**7.1 Objectives**

**7.2 Introduction**

**7.3 Beaches & Backwaters**

**7.4 Natural Manifestations of Touristic Significance**

**7.5 Check Your Progress**

**7.6 Summary**

**7.7 Clues to Answer**

---

## 7.1 Objectives

---

After going through the Unit 12 on **Beaches & Other Natural Manifestations' of Touristic Significance** with a special reference to **Tamil Nadu and Andaman & Nicobar Islands**, you would be able to:

- Know about the popular beaches in Tamil Nadu and Andaman & Nicobar Islands.
- Know about the natural attractions in Tamil Nadu and Andaman & Nicobar Islands.
- Understand the role of Natural attractions in attracting tourists.
- Understand the various forms of nature tourism at these places.
- Understand the tourism in Tamil Nadu and Andaman & Nicobar Islands.

---

## 7.2 Introduction

---

Unit 12 gives detailed information about Beaches & Other Natural Manifestations' of Touristic Significance in India with special reference to Tamil Nadu Andaman & Nicobar Islands. These states have got immense potential with regard to nature & nature tourism. And provide a number of opportunities for tourists. Most of India's finest beaches are in Kerala. Virtually its entire 900 km length coastline is lined with sandy beaches, rocky promontories and coconut palms. Each year, a great number of visitors arrive here in search of tranquil, palm-fringed beaches. Tamil Nadu is full of surprises! The intrepid tourist, who has heard and read about Tamil Nadu, expects to see Lots of Temples. Several Monuments perhaps. Then the surprises begin, 1000 km sun kissed beaches, magnificent historical monuments, eternal rhythm of the gurgling waterfalls, wondrous wildlife & bird sanctuaries, emerald green natural habitats, artefacts, paintings, dance forms, the colour and pageantry of festive days with good network of road, rail and air linking all the destinations in the country. Often described as a sleepy French provincial town, Pondicherry retains a distinct Gallic flavour. French is still spoken among the older residents, while stately colonial mansions stand in tree-lined

streets that are still known by their colonial names. Even the policemen continue to wear the military-style caps, known as kepis. Today, Pondicherry, has been renamed Puduchcheri. Located on the east coast of Tamil nadu, it is the administrative capital of a Union Territory that includes the former French enclaves of Mahe in Kerala, Yanam in Andhra Pradesh and Karaikkal in Tamil nadu. On the way to Pondicherry, one can view the natural beauty of the scenic Deccan plateau. Andaman and Nicobar Islands (6°30'-9°30'N; 93-94°E) are high islands forming the southward extension of this mountain chain. Floating in splendid isolation, east of the Indian mainland, is the archipelago of 572 emerald islands, islets and rocks known as the Andaman and Nicobar Islands. This Union Territory is spread over a distance nearly 800 Kms. from North to South with 38 inhabited islands. A hill range extending from Burma (Myanmar) to Indonesia, these undulating islands are covered with dense forests and an endless variety of exotic flora & fauna. Andaman & Nicobar Island offers beautiful island vacations and beach tours. Each island in Andaman's has its own uniqueness and beauty. The beaches in Andaman's are very clean & crystal clear. In no place, we can find both island vacations and beach tours in a same place. All these states of Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Pondicherry and Andaman & Nicobar Islands provide great opportunities to natives, tourist & Tourism.

---

### 7.3 Beaches & Backwaters

---

#### Tamil nadu

Tamil Nadu beach destination is famous among the tourists. The long golden sand, the bountiful sea ends his journey and meets the land. The state of Tamil Nadu faces Bay of Bengal and Indian Ocean and these water bodies give rise to various beach destination of India which are very much popular among the international tourist as well as to the domestic travelers. All the beaches of Tamil Nadu lies on the southern tip of the country, Tamil Nadu enjoy a wonderful coastline. The sights on rising as well as setting sun can be seen from this coastal area.

**Covelong Beach:** Covelong beach of Tamil Nadu lies in a picturesque village on the State Highway that joins Chennai to the temple town of Mahabalipuram. This beach of Tamil Nadu is one of the most beautiful and virgin beaches of India and adjoins a small but charming fishing village and is on the coast of the Bay of Bengal. This Tamil Nadu Beach is located at a distance of 40 km from Chennai. The beach is located on the site that was developed originally as a port by Saadat Ali, Nawab of Carnatic.

**Ellot's Beach:** This Beach of Tamil Nadu is one of the cleanest beaches of India and is in the city of Chennai. This Beach of Tamil Nadu is located towards the south of Marina Beach and is an extremely calm and tranquil place. The beach of Tamil Nadu is known as 'Bessei' amongst the locals. As the Tamil Nadu beach does not offer much activity, it is ideal for long walks. Elliot's Beach of Tamil Nadu is quite a hit amongst both the tourists as well as the natives of Tamil Nadu.

**Kanyakumari Beach:** This beach of Tamil Nadu is in the southernmost tip of India, Cape Comorin or Kanyakumari the place where tourists love to see Sangam (the confluence point) of the three seas - Bay of Bengal, Arabian Sea and Indian Ocean it is also a lagoon where steps lead you into the waters to bathe at once, all merging into blue waters of a huge water body surrounding this important pilgrim center on three sides.



Source: (Marina Beach from air)

**Marina Beach:** Marina Beach of Tamil Nadu is the longest beach of India. Marina Beach, comprising of golden sand, good surf and a shimmering clean blue sea. This

Beach of Tamil Nadu is counted among one of the longest beaches in Asia. Marina beach is located on the eastern side of Chennai, adjoining the Bay of Bengal. Watching the sun set and Sun rise from the beach is a fascinating experience.

**Mahabalipuram Beach:** Mahabalipuram Beach of Tamil Nadu is also known as Mamallapuram Beach and is on the shores of the Bay of Bengal has a coastline spanning a distance of over 20 km with beautiful beaches. This Tamil Nadu Beach is located 58km from Chennai on the Mahabalipuram road, the golden sandy beach is a picturesque place bounded by the shimmering sea and rolling hills.

**Rameshwaram Beach:** Rameshwaram Beach of Tamil Nadu is one of the most popular pilgrimage centers of South India. The sea here is also a home to rare sea species and coral reefs. Remarkable variety of marine life-algae, starfish, sea cucumber, crabs, sponges and the sea cow are found here. One may also sight some dolphins playing in the serene waters of Rameshwaram. The serene beach with shallow waters makes an ideal site for swimming and sunbathing.



Source: [www.mytripolog.com](http://www.mytripolog.com) (**Rameshwaram Beach**)

**Muttukkadu Beach:** The “Muttukkadu” Beach of Tamil Nadu is one of the most exciting and thrilling tourist destination of India. Amidst the picturesque landscape of the place, the Muttukkadu beach is known for the calm and serene backwater of the sea and the natural estuary which adds to the beauty of the place. The natural scenic beauty of the place captures the imagination of a poet. The

backwaters provide an excellent view of the sunrise and sunset which attracts many local tourists as well.

**Poompuhar Beach:** This Tamil Nadu Beach is also known as Kaveri poompattinam and is about 40 km from Chidambaram in Tamil Nadu. The Cauvery River drains into the Bay of Bengal at Poompuhar. Poompuhar is an ancient historic town situated in Sirkali Taluk of Nagapattinam district, Tamil Nadu. An archaeologist delight, Poompuhar is a town for those who like to wander amidst history and take a stroll through time. It was once a major port during the reign of Cholas.

**Tiruchendur Beach:** This Beach of Tamil Nadu is 85km from Kanyakumari and the temple which lies on the shores of the sea is an inspiring sight. The surging fresh tide of the sea washing the feet of the temple is a lovely sight to behold. The sea is believed to have miraculous benefits for those who dip in it before praying at the temple.



**Source:** [ligysspace.blogspot.com](http://ligysspace.blogspot.com) (**Velankanni Beach**)

**Velankanni Beach:** This beach of Tamil Nadu is located at Tamil Nadu. Velankanni beach is 350 kilometers away from Chennai. Sobriquet name of this Tamil Nadu beach is Lourdes of the East as both the places experience a large number of pilgrims on an annual basis. There are a couple of festivals that go on in the months of August and September. These are major tourist attractions as well. A major tourist attraction of Velankanni beach is the Church of our Lady of Health.

**Vattakottai Beach:** This Tamil Nadu Beach is a solitary beach destination located in Tamil Nadu. Specially known for the 18th century citadel, the place is also called

as the Vattakottai Fort. Bearing the imprints of past rulers, the granite Fort is the prime attraction of the place. Vattakottai Fort was once the dwelling ground of the Pandya rulers. With the fading streamline of a small river flowing by the side of the Fort, there are visible evidences of the existence of a canon in the ancient times. Protected by the 25-26 feet high surrounding walls, the Fort has an extension that touches the waters of the sea.

### **Andaman & Nicobar Islands**

India has almost a 6000 km long coastline, which is home to some of the finest beaches in the world. Andaman & Nicobar Islands has many beautiful, crystal clear and fine eco-friendly beaches. Andaman & Nicobar Islands have also recently been recognized as a world-class eco-tourist destination to discover the underwater treasures of marine life. Andaman & Nicobar Islands has many sandy crystal clear beaches and it's an eco-friendly tourist destination. Despite the tropical climate of the region, beaches of Andaman and Nicobar Islands offer a calm and cool environment that add to the beauty of the turquoise blue waters. The beaches at Andaman and Nicobar Islands also support a diverse range of marine life and water sports. Some of the popular types of the water sports that the beaches in this region offer include swimming, scuba diving, water-skiing windsurfing etc. The most amazing feature of the beaches in Andaman and Nicobar Islands is that they do not have any such major man made developments such as beach side cafes or parks, etc., but they are still one of the star attractions for tourists. The reason is their all pervasive beauty which is nature's gift. Once you are at the Andaman and Nicobar Islands beaches, you are sure to soak yourself in the eternal beauty of the place.



**Source:** pritskulkarni.blogspot.com (**Corbyn's Cove Beach**)

**Carbyn's Cove Beach:** Carbyn's cove beach, the coconut-palm-fringed beach, ideal for sun basking is 6 km away from Port Blair town. Historical remains like Japanese bunkers can be seen on the way. The Snake Island, situated just across the beach is famous for Scuba Diving.

**North Bay Beach:** North Bay beach is just north of Port Blair. The beach and the snorkelling opportunities in its fringing coral reefs are the closest ones you will find to Port Blair, and therefore, it gets quite crowded.

**Munda Pahar Beach, Chidiya Tapu:** Before the sunset, enjoy a swim at Munda Pahar Beach, which is 1 km ahead of the bus stand at Chidiya Tapu.

**Wandoor Beach:** Twenty Five Kms. from west of Port Blair is Wandoor Beach famous for swimmings & for Coral Viewing. One can also go to Mahatma Gandhi Marine National Park from Wandoor by boat. Situated near Tirur, this place has a beautiful sandy beach with shallow water. It is suitable for swimming, sun basking and sunset viewing.

**Radhanagar Beach:** is one of the two popular beaches located at Havelock Island in Andaman and Nicobar Islands. The other one is Vijaynagar Island. The serene beach which is far away from the polluted cities and towns has a majestic spell that attracts tourists to its beauty. Radhanagar Beach of Andaman and Nicobar Islands is situated at a place which is 7 kilometers away from Dolphin Yatri Niwas at

Havelock Island. The beach is the favourite among all nature lovers who love to explore the nature of different places.

*Harminder Bay Beach:* is counted amongst one of the most exquisite beaches of Andaman and Nicobar Islands. The beach is sited 100 kilometers away from Port Blair at Hut Bay Island. You can travel to the pristine beach through ships run by Inter Islands shipping services from Port Blair.

*Ramnagar Beach:* is situated in the northern region at the Diglipur Island and is accessible through water and road. The sandy beach is only 15 kilometers away from Kalighat. The beach is surrounded by palm and coconut trees and other coastal shrubs.

Other Beaches to explore in Andaman's are Sylvan Sands, Chidyatapu, South Andaman; Cinque Island, South Andaman; North Bay, South Andaman; Collinpur, North Passage Island; Merk Bay, Neil Island etc.<sup>1</sup>

#### **7.4 Natural Manifestations of Touristic Significance**

##### **Tamil nadu**

The perfect blend of cultural significance and majestic natural beauty makes Tamil nadu one of the most visited Indian tourist destinations. The state also has popular hill stations like Ooty and Kodaikanal that are milestone destinations of Tamil nadu tourism. Wildlife sanctuaries & National parks of the state are other attractions.

##### **Backwaters in Tamil nadu**

*Pichavaram:* Pichavaram the second largest Mangrove forest in the world, near the temple town of Chidambaram, is one of the unique Eco-tourism spots in South India. The backwaters, inter connected by the Vellar and Coleroon river systems, offer abundant scope for water sports, rowing, Kayak and canoeing. The Pichavaram forest not only offers waterscape and back water cruises, but combines another very rare occurrence - the mangrove forest trees permanently rooted in a few feet of water. The Pichavaram mangroves are considered among the healthiest

mangrove occurrence in the world. Pichavaram consists of a number of islands interspersing a vast expanse of water covered with green trees. The area is about 2800 acres and is separated from the sea by a sand bar which is a patch of extraordinary loveliness. The Pichavaram mangrove biotope, with its peculiar topography and environmental condition, supports the existence of many rare varieties of economically important shell and fin fishes. The Pichavaram mangroves attract an appreciable bird population of residents, local migrants and true migrants. At the mangroves, so far, 177 species of birds belonging to 15 orders and 41 families have been recorded. The season for birds is from September to April every year. Peak population of birds could be seen from November to January. This is due to high productive nature (in terms of prey organisms) of the ecosystem and coincidence of the time of arrival of true migrants from foreign countries and local migrants from their breeding grounds across India. The availability of different habitat types such as channels, creeks, gullies, mud flats and sand flats and adjacent sea shore offers ideal habitat for difference species of birds.

*Backwaters of Muttukkadu:* Muttukkadu, located at a distance of 36 km from Chennai, is a small town which serves as the most preferred picnic spot along with backwaters and water activities. Muttukkadu is adorned with greenery, including coconut trees and lush grassland to provide ample shade and to give relaxation to the visitors, making the environment pollution free and breezy. Helped by the fact that the backwaters and the facility of boat house have been developed by the Tamil Nadu Tourism Development Corporation for the visitors to stay and enjoy, the place is visited by hordes every year who come here to enjoy their holidays. The main attraction of this place is windsurfing regatta which is organized every year in the month of February, plus many other water games such as kayaking, boating, canoeing, etc are organized here. Those who are adventurous and fun loving, they can also join the training programs which are held in Muttukkadu. No wonder it is visited by thrill seekers as well as peace lovers form India and abroad. Prawns and Jellyfishes are well-known in this place and due to these reasons, it is

also known as 'the land of flora and fauna'. It is just the perfect destination for spending holidays with beguilingly exquisite backwaters, peaceful surroundings and a charismatic blend of greenery and gleaming blue.

### **National parks & sanctuaries**

The topography of Tamil Nadu is delightfully varied and diverse. Of the 1, 30,058 sq km land area, 17.6% is covered with forest area. These spreads over the plain and on mountain slopes. Dry lands are bestowed with dry-deciduous forests, thorn forests, scrubs and mangroves. The Western Ghats and a few cooler regions are endowed with moist deciduous, wet evergreen forests, sholas and grasslands. There are 5 National Parks and 17 Wildlife Sanctuaries in Tamil Nadu. The famous ones are:

*Indira Gandhi Wildlife Sanctuary and National Park:* Spread over 958 sq kms, this sanctuary can be reached through Top slip in Anamalai Hills on the Western Ghats. An ecological Paradise, this sanctuary encompasses a National Park with an area of 108 sq kms. About 800 species out of 2000 South Indian Flora are distributed here. This sanctuary nurtures Arboreal animals like lion tailed macaque, bonnet macaque, Common Langur, nilgiris langur, Malabar Giant squirrel and Grizzled Giant Squirrel. The ground animals listed are: Tiger, Panther, Elephant, Gaur, Pangolin, Sambar, Spotted Deer, Barking Deer, Mouse Deer, Wild boar, Dhole, Sloth Bear, Porcupine, Nilgiris Tahr, Civet Cat and Taddy Cat. The Avifauna includes Racket Tailed Drongo, Black Headed Oriole, Paradise Flycatcher, Whistling Thrush, Emerald Dove, Green pigeon, Tickell's Flower Pecker, Rufus Wood Pecker, Rose Ringed Parakeet, Black Eagle, Great Indian, Malabar pied Hornbill, Fiary Blue Bird and green billed malkhoha etc.



**Source:** homestay360.com (**Mudumalai Wildlife Sanctuary**)

***Mudumalai Wildlife Sanctuary:*** Located in Nilgiri Hills, the offshoot of the Western ghats meet the eastern ghats. This 321 sq km wide sanctuary encompasses a National Park measuring an area of 103 sq kms.

***Mukkurthi National Park:*** Located on the high altitudes of the Nilgiris, 40 kms from Udhagamandalam. It contains a viable population of Nilgiri Tahr (*Hemitragus himalocrius*), Sambar, Nilgiri Marten, Barking deer

***Kalakkadu Wildlife Sanctuary:*** Situated in an area of 223 sq kms in the Tirunelveli District. Wildlife seen in the sanctuary includes Lion Tailed Macaque, Nilgiri Langur, Bonnet Macaque and common Langur, Nilgiri Tahr.

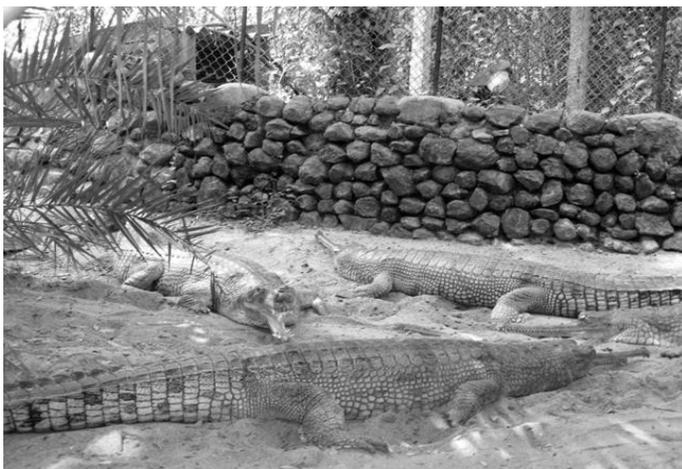
***Mundanthurai Wildlife Sanctuary:*** Situated in an area of 567 sq kms in the Tirunelveli District. Animal wealth includes Tiger, Bonnet Macaque, Langurs, Slender Loris.



**Source:** animaladventurer.blogspot.com (**Blackbucks in Point Calimere Wildlife Sanctuary**)

**Point Calimere Wild Life Sanctuary:** Sprawling on 17.26 sq km surrounded by sea and shore, comprising forests of tidal swamps, this sanctuary is situated in Nagapattinam district. It is bestowed with populations of varied wild life such as Chittal, Wild Boar.

**Srivilliputhur Grizzled Squirrel Wild Life Sanctuary:** Located in Virudhunagar District, 45 kms off Virudhanagar Town. Interesting species are Flying Squirrel, Tree Shrew, Elephant , Lion-Tailed Macaque, many species of birds.



**Source:** ebharatdarshan.blogspot.com (**Guindy National Park**)

***Guindy National Park:*** Situated in Chennai. Compositions of animals Black Buck, Chital, Jackal, Pangolin and a variety of Avi fauna.

***Vallanadu Black Buck Sanctuary:*** A scrub forest area spread over to 16.41 sq km this sanctuary is situated in Thuthukudi (Tuticorn) District. Blackbuck, Spotted Deer, Macaques, Jungle cat, Mongoose and hares are plenty. This sanctuary can be visited through out the year.

***Vedanthangal And Karikili Bird Sanctuaries:*** Situated in the Kanchipuram district. In all 115 species of birds have been recorded in this sanctuary.

***Arignar Ann Zoological Park - Chennai***

Situated in the outskirts of Chennai. More than 170 species of Mammals, Aviaries & reptiles are exhibited.

***The Madras Crocodile Bank Trust - Nemmeli:*** This Crocodile Bank has been established with an aim to protectand conserve the endangered reptiles such as crocodiles, Alligators etc. Situated 14 kms from Mamallapuram, this trust now houses more than 6 species of crocodiles.

***Viralimalai:*** This small town is situated south of tiruchirapalli, is bestowed with a large number of wild Peacocks, which roam around the Murugan Temple situated here.

***Gulf Of Mannar Marine National Park:*** This a marine Bio Sphere, running along with coasts of Ramanathapuram and Tuthukudi (Tuticorn) Districts. This national Park is full of coral reefs, Dolphins, Turtles.

### **Waterfalls**

The eternal rhythm of the gurgling, cascading waterfalls in many parts of Tamil Nadu. Ecology is well preserved in the waterfalls around Tamil Nadu.



**Source:** jamesxyz.wordpress.com (**Courtallam Waterfalls, Tamil Nadu**)

**Courtallam Waterfalls:** The 'Spa of South' is situated at an elevation of 167mts in the Western Ghats. This is a popular health resort. Its waterfalls are known for their curative and recuperative properties. It is situated about 160 kms. south of Madurai. A shower in the cascading waters is a great experience. There are nine waterfalls here, Main falls, Chitraruvi, Shenbagadevi falls, Honey falls, Five falls, Tiger falls, Old falls, Fruit farm falls and the New falls. Its bracing season extends particularly from June to September. Excursions : Tiruchendur Murugan Temple(99kms), Tirunelveli(58kms), Krishnapuram(68kms), Tenkasi(5kms) and the Mundanthurai Tiger Sanctuary(75kms). Hogenakkal means " Smoking Rock" has got the name because of the smoke like appearance created by the spray of the plunging waters of River Kaveri at this spot. The falls, the rugged scenery and the enchanting natural attractions have made it an ideal holiday spot. It is a health resort known for its waterfalls with medicinal properties, set amidst lush green woods. 'Parisal' (a boat made of palm fibre) ride through River Cauvery will be a pleasant experience. Hogenakkal is famed for the curative power of its waters. Surrounded by mountains, this place now offers a quiet holiday in comfort. It is 65 kms. from Salem.



**Source:** commons.wikimedia.org (**Hogenakkal Waterfalls**)

*Hogenakkal Waterfalls:* Attaru" river passes through the Elagiri hills and falls from 30 mtr. height at Jadaiyanur on the other side of the hills. This could either be reached from Tirupphthur(15 kms.) or by an hour's trek from the hills. Adjacent to the Jalagambarai falls, there is a Murugan temple located within a building constructed in the shape of a lingam. *Kumbakkarai Falls:* An amazing feat of Nature, the Kumbakkarai Falls is yet another jewel in the crown of Tamil Nadu's tourist attractions. Comparatively less known, these falls offer a breath taking view of the fascinating interaction between gushing water and solid rocks. Add a verdant and wild backdrop and you have an exquisite sight. Situated on the foothills of the Kodaikanal hills, the falls are located 8 kms from Periyakulam. The water from these falls is full of the goodness of minerals and herbs. There are two stages in these falls. At the first stage water gathers in huge rocks recesses which are variously named after wild animals such as tiger, elephant, snake etc., before falling as the main fall. *Suruli falls:* The Suruli falls which falls from a height of 150 feet gathers into a pool, flows for a short distance and again plummets to a depth of 40 feet , offering a spectacular sight of nature's raw and wild beauty. The dense forests that surround it provide an awesome backdrop. Facilities are available for men and women to bathe separately in these falls. The special feature of the fall is that it is a "round the year" falls. However the best season to visit is June - October, when the thickness of the water column is astounding. The beauty of this fall finds mention in Tamil Epic, Silappathikaram written by poet Ilango.

Cloud Land Falls popularly known as Chinna Suruli is situated 54 kms from Theni near Kombathozhu village. These falls originate in the Megamalai. Tiger Falls is a dainty fall on the route to Munnar between Bodi and Bodimettu from Theni. **Killiyur Falls:** Killiyur Falls is a 90-foot high waterfalls is situated amidst picturesque surroundings in Yercaud. Akasagangai waterfalls is on Kolli hills which is known for medical herbs and plants. **Kalhatty Water Falls:** Kalhatty Water Falls, is located on the Kalhatty slopes and about 13 kms. from Ooty. Law's falls(7kms.) is situated in the Ghat RF of Coonoor forest range. the height of the falls is about 180 feet. St.Catherine Falls, located at 8 kms, the enoviron of the falls has beautiful scenery. **Fairy Falls:** Fairy Falls, is a delightful picnic spot just 5kms away from Kodai Lake. It is a wondrous waterfall. Silver Cascade is 8kms from Kodai lake. The overflow of Kodai Lake comes down here as a 180 foot high waterfall. Thalaiyar falls also known as Rat Tail falls, is one of the highest waterfalls in the world(975 foot high). It can be seen while climbing the Ghat Road to Kodaikanal from Kodai Road. It is not possible to visit this spectacular waterfall, as there is no approach route to this site.

### **Hill stations**

Tamil Nadu offers some of the most beautiful hill stations. Trekking, Hang-gliding, fishing and golf are just some of the activities you can take part in on these hill stations. **Kodaikanal** referred to as 'The Princess of Hill Stations', is situated amidst the folds of the verdant Palani hills in the Western Ghats at an altitude of about 2133 m. Kodaikanal is one of the most frequented hill resorts in India. With its spectacular rocks, tranquil woods, lovely lake and intoxicating air, Kodaikanal is an ideal hill resort for the tourists from all over. The pride of Kodaikanal is the 'Kurinji-flower', which blossoms once in 12 years. The hill-plantain fruits and plums are known for their freshness and taste. Kodaikanal lies pretty in the Palani Hills of Tamil Nadu. The summer retreat of Kodaikanal literally means 'gift of the forest'.



**Source:** hearty-india.com (Kodaikanal)

*Coonoor* is the second largest hill station in the Nilgiris, surrounded by tea plantations. It stands at an altitude of 1839 metres. It is essentially a small tea garden town where the weather is pleasantly cool through the year. It falls on the toy-train line between Mettupalayam (28 km) and Ooty. A popular pastime here is birdwatching as it is home to an extensive array of birds. The main attraction of course is Sim's Park, a small botanical garden that boasts of a wide variety of plants. It offers panoramic views of the Nilgiris, its hills and valleys lush with tea shrubs and eucalyptus trees. There is a quaint hill market which peddles leaf tea and essential oils. Although the height of summer is peak season, winter too is enjoyable in its own special way. Sports and honey moon travel.



**Source:** commons.wikimedia.org (Botanical garden in Ooty)

*Ooty* (Ootacamund) the Queen of the Hill Stations, also known as Blue Mountains is one of the most beautiful hill stations in India. This hill station has splendid green downs and lofty hills of extraordinary scenic beauty and is endowed with a

salubrious climate similar to the English summer. Located in the Western Ghats at a height of 7,500ft. Ooty nestles in an amphitheater created by four majestic hills-Doddabetta, Snowdon, Elk Hill and Club Hill. These hills are part of the Nilgiri ranges that are really the meeting point for the Western and the Eastern Ghats. **Kotagiri:** Kotagiri is a pristine little town, situated about 16 km from Ooty. Situated at an altitude of 1,950 mts, it was developed as a summer retreat for the British during the colonial days. **Yercaud** is a hill station in Salem District, in Tamil Nadu, India. It located in the Shevaroy's range of hills in the Eastern Ghats; the Yercaud hill area is called the Shevaroy Hills. It is situated at an altitude of 1515 metres (4970 ft) above sea level, and the highest point in Yercaud is the Servarayan temple, at 5,326 feet (1,623 m). It is so named owing to the abundance of trees categorised as a forest near the lake, the name signifying Lake Forest. As a popular tourist destination, Yercaud is also called as Jewel of the South. Yercaud is connected to city of Salem, Tamil Nadu through Highway of 28 km.

### **Andaman & Nicobar Islands**

The Andaman and Nicobar Islands, located in the Bay of Bengal (east of the Indian mainland geographically), is a splendid tropical island outpost, belonging to India but closer to south east Asia. From being known as 'Kalapani' (Black waters) due to the atrocious history of the British Regime in India, to being known as one of the best tourist destinations of India, Andaman Islands have come a long way. They are no more being called by that name. These islands were once a hill range extending from Myanmar to Indonesia, but are now a group of 572 near deserted islets (small islands), covered with lush forests and endless varieties of exotic flora and fauna. Incredible corals and marine life, crystal clear water and mangrove-lined creeks lure travellers to these picturesque islands. While the sandy beaches form as nesting homes to turtles, animals such as spotted deer, wild boar, gecko, crab-eating macaque and python can be spotted in the 86% area still covered by dense forests. These islands were populated mainly by indigenous tribes until the beginning of the colonial rule, but the majority of the population now, comprise of mainland settlers who live in and around Port Blair, the capital of South Andaman.

Even with tourist infrastructure developments, these islands still remain virgin in the sense of unpolluted natural beauty and unexplored marine life. There if you wish to visit these islands, you would have a good time there.

### **Islands**

The islands of Andaman and Nicobar are truly spectacular as the qualities possessed by them deserves some sincere appreciation. Eager holiday-makers assemble here from all over the world to experience the grandeur of mother natural at her very finest. As a matter of fact, the islands of Andaman and Nicobar actually are the chief tourist attractions. The most frequently visited islands in Andaman and Nicobar are mentioned in the list below:-

***The Jolly Island:*** Being situated in the Mahatma Gandhi Marine National Park, this island allows its visitors to witness the gorgeous corals and experience recreational activities like snorkeling.

***Chatham Island:*** Previously, this was one of the islands of Andaman and Nicobar that has the reputation of housing the hugest and most veteran saw mill found across the entire continent of Asia. In fact, the dilapidated saw mill can be approached by virtue of a bridge.

***Barren Island:*** This is also counted amongst the many islands at Andaman and Nicobar and is home to the solitary volcano in India that is active.

***Ross Island:*** This Island is blessed with a rich British heritage and houses a museum that displays snaps along with other crucial artifacts belonging to the British era. The name of the museum is 'Smritika'.

***Viper Island:*** The maiden jail was erected in this eventful island that has seen the ends of numerous convicts including Sher Ali who assassinated Lord Mayo, the Viceroy of India.<sup>1</sup>



**Source:** greenogreindia.org (Volcano in Barren Island, Andaman)

### Wildlife

When everything in Andaman and Nicobar is unique, how could wildlife remain behind? Andaman and Nicobar is home to some exclusive flora and fauna that stays hidden in the deep jungles of these islands or in the lagoons surrounding the islands. Andaman and Nicobar Islands are also a great place for all the enthusiastic bird watchers. The main attraction among birds definitely is the Nicobari Pigeon.

***Great Nicobar Biosphere Reserve:*** Situated in The Great Nicobar Island, the biggest island of Nicobar group, the reserve covers an area of 885 sq. km, nearly 85% of the total land area of Great Nicobar Island. It was declared as a Reserve in January of 1989. It incorporates two National parks of India namely *Cambell Bay National Park* on the northern part of the island and *Galathea National Park* on the southern part. The main attraction of the reserve are Nicobar scrubfowl, the Edible-nest Swiftlet, the Nicobar Long-tailed Macaque, saltwater crocodile, giant Leatherback Sea Turtle, Malayan box turtle, Nicobar tree shrew, reticulated python and the giant robber crab.

***Saddle Peak National Park:*** Saddle Peak National Park was started in Andaman district in the year 1979. It spreads on an area of 33sq.km. Situated just 5km from Diglipur, it is nearly 200km from Port Blair which is the administrative centre of Andaman and Nicobar Islands and also the nearest airport. The forest area of the islands is covered by thick tropical rain forests. The main vegetation is generally conducive to humid, warm and wet tropical climate. The main animal species in the park comprises Andaman wild pig, water monitor lizard, and salt water crocodile. The important birds found here are Andaman hill mynah and imperial pigeon. The best time to visit the park is between November and March. For accommodation, there are two rest houses inside the park.

***Mahatma Gandhi Marine National Park:*** Covering an area of 281sq.km, Marine National Park is just 20 km from the capital of Andaman and Nicobar Island, Port Blair. The park is spread over 15 islands of Labyrinth group of Islands towards the West Coast of south Andaman. Each Island has diverse flora and that comprises of moist deciduous evergreen forests and mangroves in small numbers. The island shores are nesting grounds for 5 different types of tropical sea turtles. The main attraction for most tourists to this park is the living coral reefs and colorful marine life. Water-monitor, lizard, wild boar, sea snakes are other animal species that are found here. December to April is the best months for visiting the park.

## 7.5 Check Your Progress

---

### 7.6 Summary:

---

In this unit we learned about natural fabric & beauty of the states of Kerala, Tamil nadu, Pondicherry & Andaman & Nicobar Islands. We learned that apart from the heritage, these places, are also blessed with bounties of nature such as beaches, backwaters, sanctuaries, national parks, forests, flora, fauna, waterfalls, eco-places and a lot of opportunities for nature, ecotourism & adventure tourism. Kerala is a true paradise for tourist and home to various cultures, traditions and landscapes. A blend of ancient and modern world, Tamil Nadu offers you myriad of breathtaking sights including the natural beauty. A little piece of France in India,

the former enclave of Pondicherry remains a pocket of Gallic charm. Once known as Kalapani - Black Waters - for their role as a feared penal settlement, the Andaman and Nicobar Islands are now a relaxed tropical island outpost that belongs to India but is geographically closer to Southeast Asia. Superb, near-deserted beaches, incredible corals and marine life, an intriguing colonial past and the remnants of a Stone Age culture lure travellers to these mysterious islands, 1000km off the east coast of India in the Bay of Bengal. All these states provide enormous opportunities to tourists to experience beaches & nature.

---

### 7.7 Clues to Answer

---

#### Check Your Progress

1. Refer 8.3
2. Refer 8.3
3. Refer 8.3
4. Refer 8.3
5. Refer 8.4
6. Refer 8.4
7. Refer 8.4

---

### 7.8 References:

---

- <http://andamantours.in/aboutus.htm>
- [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Beaches\\_in\\_Kerala](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Beaches_in_Kerala)
- [http://www.kerala-tourism.travelskerala.com/beach&lake\\_tourism.htm](http://www.kerala-tourism.travelskerala.com/beach&lake_tourism.htm)
- <http://www.keralatourism.org/destination/destination.php?id=161>
- <http://www.keralatourism.org/destination/destination.php?id=18>
- <http://www.keralatourism.org/destination/destination.php?id=96>
- <http://www.keralatourism.org/destination/destination.php?id=29>
- <http://www.keralatourism.org/destination/destination.php?id=2132066077>
- <https://www.keralatourism.org/destination/beaches/>
- <http://indianbeachholidays.com/tamil-nadu-beach.htm>

- 
- <http://pondicherrytours.com/puducherry.html>
  - <http://andamantours.in/aboutus.htm>
  - <http://www.go2andaman.com/beaches-in-andaman-nicobar-island/>
  - <http://www.keralaholidays.com/>
  - <http://www.mapsofindia.com/maps/kerala/kerala-backwater-map.htm>
  - <http://www.keralagreenergy.org/waterfalls.html>
  - <https://www.keralatourism.org/village-life-kumarakom.php>
  - <https://www.keralatourism.org/village-life-kerala.php>
  - <http://www.prokerala.com/kerala/tourism/wildlife-sanctuaries.php>
  - <http://www.travelmasti.com/domestic/tamilnadu/wildlife.htm>
  - <http://www.discovertamilnadu.net/tamilnadu%20dams%20and%20waterfalls.html>
  - <http://hillstationholidays.com/tamilnadu.htm>
  - [http://www.toutpondi.com/en/inside\\_pondicherry.htm](http://www.toutpondi.com/en/inside_pondicherry.htm)
  - <http://www.holidayiq.com/Ousteri-Wetland-and-National-Park-Pondicherry-Sightseeing-514-12770.html>
  - <http://www.go2andaman.com/introduction/>
  - <http://www.mapsofindia.com/andaman-nicobar-islands/state-tourism/islands.html>
  - <http://www.indialine.com/travel/andaman/wildlife.html>

---

## Unit-9

### Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh

---

**Structure:**

**9.1 Objectives**

**9.2 Introduction**

**9.3 Beaches**

**9.4 Natural Manifestations of Touristic Significance**

**9.5 Check Your Progress**

**9.6 Summary**

**9.7 Clues to Answer**

**9.8 Glossary**

---

### 9.1 Objectives

---

After going through the Unit 8 on **Beaches & Other Natural Manifestations' of Touristic Significance** with a special reference to **Karnataka & Andhra Pradesh**, you would be able to:

- Know about the popular beaches in Karnataka & Andhra Pradesh.
- Know about the natural attractions in Karnataka & Andhra Pradesh.
- Understand the role of Natural attractions in attracting tourists.
- Understand the various forms of nature tourism at these places.
- Understand the tourism in Karnataka & Andhra Pradesh.

---

### 9.2 Introduction

---

Unit 8 gives detailed information about Beaches & Other Natural Manifestations' of Touristic Significance in India with special reference to Karnataka & Andhra Pradesh. These states have got immense potential with regard to nature & nature tourism. And provide a number of opportunities for tourists.

Karnataka rich with scenic beauty is located at the southern part of India. Resourceful with all kind of varieties including temples, wild life sanctuaries, waterfalls, cosmopolitan cities, valleys, hill resorts, beaches etc..., Karnataka is a must visit state in India for all tourist enthusiasts and will not get disappointed. The weather is very moderate at southern districts. The temperature remains ideal throughout the year. Most part of the Karnataka state are agricultural lands as the state is rich in rivers. The western part has Arabian sea and then the range of Western Ghats follows. This is the eighth largest state in India both in area and population. This state is famous for its natural beauty, rich culture and pleasant climate.

Andhra Pradesh or popularly known as AP is the fifth largest state in India both in population and area. This state is located at southern part of India. One of the developed state of India is popular for its agriculture, trade & industry and now Hyderabad is a premium destination for all IT companies of the world. Different areas of Andhra Pradesh are famous for different reasons. Krishna Godavari delta is famous for its rich fertile lands with lashing greenery. Vijayawada city located by the side of Krishna river is famous for its trade and commerce. Visakhapatnam is coastal city is popular for its natural beaches and tourist places. The coastal line is 970 Kms which is the second longest in India.

---

### 9.3 Beaches

---

Along its 7000 km of coastline, India boasts of a number of beautiful beaches. The tranquil environment with abundant greenery around is just perfect to relax and refresh the drained mind and body. Lie on the smooth sandy beaches and soak the warmth of the sun or simply take a quiet walk barefooted on these beaches. The calming effect will easily penetrate deep into your body. The vast stretches of sea

water have a unique ability to carry away all your worries and heartaches along with its waves. You can also watch the sun rise and set far in the horizon and appreciate the beauty that is reflected as a reflection in the water.

And for all those who are more venturesome and yearn for a lot of challenging activities, the beaches have plethora of options to choose from. Swim along with the waves of the ocean water or dive deep into the water to discover a magnificent and colourful marine world. Also, catch the good waves and duck dive the bigger ones while surfing. Cruising in the ocean water is for those who wish to explore the vastness and deepness of the water body without getting wet.<sup>1</sup>

Karnataka & Andhra Pradesh also have a coastline containing beautiful beaches & provides a number of adventure activities to the tourists.

---

### Karnataka

---

Karnataka has a 320 kms long coastline which is bordered by beautiful palm trees. It has the Western Ghats in the east and is blessed with the blue waters of the Arabian Sea in the West. The coastline of Karnataka offers a picture perfect world of beaches.

The scenic beauty and untouched charm of the beach areas make Karnataka beaches a must visit beach holiday destinations. Beautiful beaches with mesmerizing charm and serenity pulls innumerable tourists from all over the world.

**Gokarna:** A sleepy Brahmin town, lodged somewhere between a conservative society and a faithful hippy fan following, Gokarna is a dream destination for so many different reasons. Its refusal to fall into a certain type-casted slot is just one of them.



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (Gokarna Beach)

Open beaches, undiscovered coves, epiphanic sunsets, jagged cliffs, quaint temples and an evasive culture that makes Gokarna whatever you want it to be. Sun, sand and surf is what you go to Gokarna for, and the solitude it offers is like a bonus track on a great music album. The Om Beach, with its Om-shaped shoreline is a scramble down a rocky cliff - just like every other beach in Gokarna. Cliffs separate each of Gokarna's five beaches from the others and offer spectacular views far out into the Arabian Sea. You can either take a boat ride to other beaches or walk it down. But either way the Kudle Beach, the Paradise Beach, the Half-moon Beach and the Gokarna Beach are worth a visit. Gokarna is 58 kilometres away from Karwar.



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (Kaup Beach)

### **Kaup**

Kaup is situated 12 kms. South of Udupi, on the coastal belt that passes through the West Coast National Highway. Kaup has a lovely beach, a ruined fort and an old 100ft. high lighthouse. There are two famous temples of Goddess Mariamma in Kaup. The Jain basadis here are in ruins, but are worth a visit.

### **Suratkal**

15km north of Ullal, this beach is near the promontory on which the new lighthouse stands. A steep path connects the lighthouse to the Sadashiva Temple.



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (Suratkal Beach)

**Karwar**

With gentle waves, miles of golden sand, a tranquil ambience, and acres of emerald foliage, Karwar has all the makings of a perfect holiday destination. The captivating landscape is ringed with rugged hill ranges, thick woods, and mysteriously deep valleys. This paradise inspired the great Indian muse Rabindranath Tagore to pen his first play. Since then, this little town has continued to inspire all its visitors. The Sadashivgad Hill Fort with a Durga Temple, the unique octagonal church, the 300-year old Venkatrama Temple with ochre paintings, and the Naganatha Temple, where an ant hill is worshipped, are sure to make a lasting impression. Devbagh is the most enchanting of the five islands along the Karwar coast. Visits to Anjidev Island are restricted. Karwar is a beautiful beach with gentle waves, palm-laced beaches, silver sand, and calm, peaceful valleys.



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (Karwar Beach)

**Malpe Beach**

About 6 kms from Udupi, is the natural harbour of Malpe, situated at mouth of river Malpe. It is an important fishing centre on Karnataka's coastline and is famous for its scenic beauty. Other attractions at this enchanting beach are the island of Darya Bahadurgarh across the bay, the Balarama Temple and Malpe's oldest tile factory, set up by the Basel Mission. Just a boat ride away, the St Mary's Island is another admirable holiday destination from Malpe Beach. Best season to visit Malpe is from August to March.

The endless stretch of golden sand, graciously swaying palm trees, clear blue sky, and the gentle murmur of the sea set the perfect mood for an idyllic holiday.



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (Malpe Beach)

### **Marawanthé Beach**

Take in the spectacular views at Marawanthé, a seaside town where the West Coast Highway cruises alongside the Arabian Sea on one side, with the picturesque Kodachadri Hills forming a backdrop to the Sauparnika River on the other.



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (Marawanthé Beach)

It is 52 km from Udupi. Marawanthé wears the look of a fairyland at sunset when the sky turns crimson and the golden rays of the sun are reflected in the sea as well as the river. Water sports promise an action-filled holiday. Visit Baindur, a hamlet 45km from Marawanthé with a lovely beach close by. Near Baindur is the scenic Ottinane with its overhanging cliffs, an ideal place for viewing the sunset. A further drive will take you to the Belaka Theertha Falls near Baindur.



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (**Murudeshwar Beach**)

### **Murudeshwar Beach**

Located 16 kms from Bhatkal, Murudeshwar beach is believed to have been consecrated by a piece of the Pranalinga of Mahabaleshwara thrown by Ravana and has some beautiful carvings and statues. It is a popular picnic spot, having beautiful blue waters of the sea and the majestic mountains. Other attractions around this beach are the Murudeshwar temple, the Kanduka Giri and the fort of Tipu Sultan. This lovely destination can be visited throughout the year.

Murudeshwar will woo you with its beaches, Shiva Temple and the tallest Shiva statue in India.

Murudeshwar beach is 50 kilometres away from Udupi.



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (**St. Mary's Island**)

### **St. Mary's Island**

About 6km from the Malpe coast into the Arabian Sea, one gets to see the palm-fringed St. Mary's Island which bears the cross that Vasco Da Gama placed when

he landed in 1498. The island is 300m long and 100m wide. It is famous for its unique salt rock formations. Due to this geological importance, St. Mary's Island is declared as a National Geological Monument. It is also rated among India's top 7 Natural Wonders by Jet Wings Magazine. This beach is 11 km from Udupi.

---

## Andhra Pradesh

---

The South Indian state of Andhra Pradesh has many exotic "Beaches" within its area that overwhelms the tourist with its captivating and enchanting beauty. Many tourists visit the state to experience the rich gift of nature. All the beaches of Andhra Pradesh are unique in its own ways.<sup>1</sup>

The state can boast of housing numerous beaches within its area. Some of the important beaches of Andhra Pradesh are:

**Bheemunipatnam Beach** - Situated at a distance of 24 kilometers from the "port city" of Visakhapatnam, the Bheemunipatnam Beach enthalls the tourist with its beautiful landscape.

The "Bheemunipatnam Beach" of Andhra Pradesh offers one with an incredible view of nature. The golden sandy beach and the deep blue sea water captures the imagination of the poets. The Beach is blessed with the best gift of nature. The long unending coastline of the sea is bordered by the tall coconut tree that adds to the beauty of the place.

One can experience the divine presence in the beach of Bheemunipatnam. Amidst the picturesque landscape, the Bheemunipatnam beach bears relics of the rich architectural tradition of the Dutch rulers. Once an important settlement of the Dutch rulers, the Bheemunipatnam Beach has many dilapidated forts and monuments that add to the exotic nature of the place.

Situated at a distance of 24 kilometers from the "port city" of Vishakhapatnam, the Bheemunipatnam beach lies at the opening of the River Gosthani. The Bheemunipatnam beach is always full of tourist. Attracted by the natural and scenic beauty of the place, most of the tourist visit the Bheemunipatnam beach to spend the weekends. The beach offers the tourist with an excellent opportunity to explore and experience the bountiful gifts of nature. While some tourist can enjoy sun bath on the beach, others can swim in the deep blue sea. For those who want to add a little adventure to their holidays, the beach provides for many adventurous sporting events where one can explore his or her sporting skills.

**Ramakrishna Beach-** The "Ramakrishna Beach" of Andhra Pradesh provides the tourist with the most exhilarating and thrilling experience. The exquisite natural and scenic beauty of the place attracts Indian and foreign tourist. The serene environment accompanied by the picturesque landscape of the region, spells

magic on the tourist who are bewitched by the captivating beauty of the Ramakrishna Beach. Far from the hustle bustle of the busy city life, the beach of Ramakrishna, fills the tourist with a sense of pleasure.

The attractive Ramakrishna Beach is one of the favorite holiday destinations for the young and old alike who wants to spend some time in solitude. Located near to the "port city" of Vishakapatnam, the Ramakrishna Beach offers with an wonderful experience of staying close to nature. The charming Ramakrishna Beach and the Lawson's Bay enchants the tourist with its fascinating beauty. Manginapudi Beach- Popularly known as the "Machilipatanam Beach", the Manginapudi Beach is a favorite destination for those tourist who love to eat "fish".

**Mypad Beach-** The picturesque beauty of the Mypad Beach captures the imagination of the poet. Mypad Beach is popular for its wonderful coastline. The long stretch of greenery near the sea makes the place different from most of the other beaches of the state. The clear water and the golden sand together has made the Mypad Beach a luring site for all the beach lovers. The greenish water is also unique to this beach. The color of the water makes the view very refreshing. The golden sand here is the perfect spot for sunbaths.

The Mypad Beach of Andhra Pradesh is located at a distance of about 25 km from Nellore. The picturesque beauty of the beach attracts many tourists to this place every year.

**Rishikonda Beach-** The Rishikonda Beach offers the tourist with an aesthetic appeal that fills them with a sense of delight. It is one of the most beautiful beaches of Andhra Pradesh. The scenic beauty of the beach attracts many tourists all the year round. This beach is more suitable for those who enjoy water sports. It is the right place for water skiers and wind surfers. The golden sand of Rishikonda Beach makes it a perfect destination for those who love bathing in the sun.

Rishikonda Beach is situated about 8 km away from the Vishakhapatnam city. Ramakrishna Beach is also very close to this place. It offers a magnificent sight of the tranquil water and the azure sky.

**Kakinada- Uppada Road Beach-** is located on Uppada Road which is 5 km away from the town of Kakinada. The wide shore is a major attraction of this beach. The clear water, the silver sand and the golden sun gifts the beach with a majestic beauty. The charm that is woven by the azure sky makes the Kakinada-Uppada Road Beach a unique place to visit. There is also a beautiful and well maintained park that adds to the attractiveness of the beach.

**Kalingapatnam Beach-** Kalingapatnam Beach is among the most popular tourist destinations of Andhra Pradesh. It is located in Kalingapatnam of the Srikakulam

District in Andhra Pradesh. A light house and the Buddhist Stupa are the main attraction of this beach. The scenic beauty of the beach attracts many international as well as Indian tourist to this spot every year. The Kalingapatnam Beach was also an important sea port in the ancient times and was frequented by many European traders and merchants.

**Kothapatnam Beach-** Kottapatnam Beach is the closest beach to the town of Ongole. It is located about 18 km away from Ongole of Andhra Pradesh. The clean and picturesque Kottapatnam Beach serves as a recreational spot for the local village people. It is famous for its natural beauty. This beach is a very favorite among the international tourists mainly because of its untouched beauty.

**Motupalle Beach-** One of the most attractive tourist destination, the Motupalle Beach is endowed with the best gift of nature. The Motupalle Beach is located in the Motupalle Village of Andhra Pradesh. The rows of Casuarina Plantations that line the sea attract many tourists to this beach. The lush greenery around the sea makes the beach appealing and a good spot for relaxation. The Motupalle Beach is also a fantastic place for sunbathing. The sun kissed warm sand is the perfect place for all the beach lovers.

Motupalle Beach is about 12 km away from Chinaganjam and is about 45 km from Ongole. The Kottapatnam Beach is thus very close to this spot. So on a trip to Motupalle Beach you can also plan a visit to the wonderful Kottapatnam Beach.

**Perupalem Beach-** The Perupalem Beach is located at a distance of 20 kilometers from the town of Narasapur situated in the West Godavari district of the state of Andhra Pradesh. The beach is famous for its scenic beauty and the coastline that offers a pleasurable retreat to its visitors.

The town of Narasapur is well known for its historic background and the old buildings of the British era that still lay erected in the town. The town is a part of the West Godavari district of Andhra Pradesh. The town has other tourist attractions like the temple dedicated to Sri Adikesava Embarmannar Swamy and the Lakshmi Narayana Temple at Antarvadi situated at a distance of 3 kilometers from the town which are famous pilgrim sites for the followers of Vaishnavism.

**Suryalanka Beach-** The Suryalanka Beach with its enchanting beauty draws tourist from all over the India. The Suryalanka Beach is situated at a distance of 9 kilometers from the historical town of Bapatla, in the Guntur district of the state of Andhra Pradesh. The natural beauty of the beach and its closeness to the town attracts tourists who often return to the quietude of the sea beach for the weekend.

The nearest coastline to the Bapatla town is the Suryalanka Beach. The beach is endowed with geographical features that are well suited for the visitors. The beach prevalently has a flat terrain. The slope of the Suryalanka Beach declines gradually

into the sea which is convenient for those who prefer to engage in a casual stroll down the sea beach. The shore of the beach is wide and spacious. The Suryalanka Beach overlooks the crystal blue waters of the Bay of Bengal.

For those who want to spend some valuable time in solitude can visit the vibrant and dynamic beaches of Andhra Pradesh.<sup>1</sup>

---

#### 9.4 Natural Manifestations of Touristic Significance

---

In its broadest sense, nature in tourism involves experiencing natural places, typically through outdoor activities that are sustainable in terms of their impact on the environment. These can range from active to passive and include everything from bushwalking and adventure tourism experiences to sightseeing, scenic driving, beach experiences and wildlife viewing. Nature-based experiences are intimately linked to all other aspects of the visitor's total experience of a destination, such as food, culture, relaxation, health, escape, family needs, accommodation, transport, etc. All serve to complement each other and together form the basis of a visitor's overall satisfaction with their holiday. Conserved and protected areas (including Marine and National Parks), the Earth's biodiversity, and respect for local culture and those who have been traditional guardians of our natural environments, can be central to their interests.<sup>1</sup>

---

#### Karnataka

---

##### Picturesque Places

**Coorg:** A hedonist's paradise by all means, Coorg is a dream you'll never forget. Hills, old-world charm, coffee, amazing food, vivid cultures and warm hospitality

-



Source:

[www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (COORG)

there's something in the air in Coorg that makes all things beautiful. Its people are tall and fair. Its hills, scenic and unforgettable. Its food, wholesome and tantalizing. Its pools, pristine and clear. Its cultures, vibrant and exclusive. Coorg is an aristocrat, through and through. The stronghold of the Kodava community, who are believed to be descendants of the Aryans.

### **Kemmanagundi**



**Source:** [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (**Kemmanagundi**)

Located in Chikmagalur district, the picturesque hill station of Kemmanagundi is located at a height of 1434m above sea level. This was the summer retreat of Krishna raja Wadiyar IV. Ringed by the Baba Budan Giri Range and blessed with silver cascades, mountain streams and lush vegetation, Kemmanagundi's beautifully laid-out ornamental gardens, enchanting mountains and valleys views are a treat for the eye. The spectacular sunset view from the Raj Bhavan is a photographer's delight. For the adventurous at heart, Kemmanagundi offers many peaks to scale and intricate jungle paths to explore.

### **Kudremukh**



**Source:** [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (**Kudremukh**)

The Kudremukh (Horse Face) Range gets its name from the unique shape of its main peak. The broad hills, 95km south-west of Chikmagalur town, overlook the Arabian Sea and are chained to one another by deep valleys and steep precipices. As yet undiscovered by tourists, Kudremukh is a trekker's paradise. The best time to visit is after the monsoon when everything is lush green and the rivers, streams and waterfalls are at their best. Ganga Moola is a scenic place located in the Bhagawathi forest where the three rivers Tunga, Bhadra and Netravati originate. A shrine to Goddess Bhagawathi and a 1.8m high Varaha image inside a cave are the chief attractions here.

### **Kundadri**



**Source:** [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (**Kundadri**)

Located on Theerthahalli-Agumbe road, about 12km from Theerthahalli, Kundadri Hill is a gigantic monolithic rock formation. Surrounded by dense evergreen forests, it is a lovely place for trekking. A rough, stone-paved path leads to a Jain temple perched atop the hill. Camping in the open at Kundadri Hills on a full moon night is an exhilarating experience.

### **Jog Falls**

Bear witness to nature's headlong tumble as the Sharavati River makes a spectacular drop of 253m in four distinct cascades - known locally as Raja, Rani, Rover, and Rocket - to create the highest falls in Asia. The falls are at their best during the monsoon, with arching rainbows colouring the mist.



**Source:** [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (Jog falls)

When the sluice gates of the upstream Linganamakki Dam are closed, it is worth taking a walk right down to the bottom of the gorge.

### **Iruppu Falls**



**Source:** [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (Iruppu falls)

Nestling beside the Rajiv Gandhi National Park (Nagarahole), Iruppu Falls presents a stunning sight during the monsoon. From their humble origins in the Brahmagiri Range, the falls plunge 170ft. in two distinct stages. They come down to earth to flow as Lakshmana Theertha (Sacred River of Lakshmana). The ceaseless music of the falls and the hush of the densely wooded forest surrounding them make this a great picnic spot. A forest trail leads from these falls to the Brahmagiri Peak in Southern Kodagu. En route to the falls, the Rameshwara Temple attracts a large number of pilgrims during the festival of Shivaratri.

## Agumbe



**Source:** [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (Agumbe)

If you enjoy spectacular sunsets, sparkling streams, verdant village vistas, and an untouched rustic ambience, Agumbe is the place for you. Situated at an elevation of 826m in Shimoga district, Agumbe provided the perfect setting for R. K. Narayan to film his novel *Malgudi Days*. Agumbe and its environs are full of exciting trekking routes. Forested trails lead from here to a jungle pond called Emkal Kere, a hillock called Nishani Gudda, and to Barkana Falls. Agumbe is also known as the Cherrapunji of South India.

## BR Hills



**Source:** [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (BR Hills)

Lose yourself in these ancient hills, which take their name from the Ranganatha Swamy Temple that sits at the edge of a granite precipice with a drop of more than 1000ft. into a dense forest. It is 86 km from Mysore.

### **Shivanasamudra Falls**

Discover nature's handiwork in the form of this tiny island-town, 65km east of Mysore. Forested

hills and lush green valleys cradle a small hamlet and two fine temples.



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (Shivanasamudra Falls)

### **Magod Falls**

The mesmerising Magod Falls are located 80km from Karwar. Here, the Bedthi River takes two distinct leaps to hurtle from a height of 650ft. into a rocky ravine. The thickly wooded countryside, the roar of gushing water, and a beautiful view combine to make this spot an ideal choice for outings.

### **Kalhatti Falls**

Water cascades from the top of the Chandra Drona Hill plunge down from a height of 45m to flow before the Veerabhadreshwara Temple, dedicated to Lord Shiva.

### **Kodachadri**

Situated 100km from Shimoga and 36km from Hosanagara is this enchanting mountain which overlooks the vast Western Ghats. Kodachadri is famed for its glorious sunrises and sunsets. These hills (4411ft.) constitute one of the largest forest areas in Karnataka, and part of this region forms the Mookambika Nature Reserve. Kollur is an ideal base to explore the hills. The Mookambika Nature Camp is 4km south of Kollur.

### Hebbe Falls

Hebbe Falls is located at a distance of 8km from Kemmanagundi. An exhilarating trek along a steep and narrow path leads you to these sprightly falls.

### Nandi Hills



SOURCE: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (**Nandi Hills**)

This popular weekend getaway is just 60km from Bangalore. The bracing air and serene environs of Nandi Hills, perched at a height of 1455m above sea level, provided Tipu Sultan and the British with an idyllic summer retreat.

### Muliyana Giri -Baba Budan Giri

The highest peak between the Himalayas and the Nilgiris, Mulliyana Giri stands at a height of 1,930 metres (6,330ft). With two temples, one at the peak and one exactly half-way up which legend attributes to a completed penance and half-complete one, a car-drive and a small trek is all it takes to get to the very top.



SOURCE: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (**Mulliyana Giri -Baba Budan Giri**)

### **Chikmagalur**

Chikmagalur has played host to an event, thanks to which, countless Indians wake up to brighter mornings. Centuries ago, when the Sufi mystic Baba Budan smuggled seven coffee beans from Yemen into India, he probably didn't bargain for millions of coffee junkies unwittingly blessing his soul everyday, with every sip of their coffee. Chikmagalur, whose hills nurtured the coffee culture at its bosom, is a green slice of heaven on a permanent coffee high.



SOURCE: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (**Chikmagalur**)

## Gokak Falls

Located 65 kms from Belgaum, Gokak gets its name due to the Goki trees found in abundance in these areas. Close to the town is the Gokak Falls. Here, river Ghataprabha takes a leap over a rocky bed 170ft down which makes a beautiful sight. The Gokak Falls is also known as the Northern Mysore Falls.

## Sanctuaries & National Parks

Karnataka wildlife tour stretches from the evergreen forests of the Western Ghats to the scrub jungle of the plains. Set amidst this picturesque setting, the Karnataka reserve forests and wildlife sanctuaries largely attract the tourists and these heavily contribute towards Karnataka wildlife tours.

Some of the wildlife destinations that form an integral part of Karnataka wildlife tour are:

### Rajiv Gandhi National Park



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (**Rajiv Gandhi National Park**)

The Rajiv Gandhi National Park is popularly known as the Nagarhole National Park. The Rajiv Gandhi National Park is connected to the Bandipur National Park in the south eastern part.

The Rajiv Gandhi National Park of Karnataka is spread over an area of 247 square miles and is the home to an abundance of wildlife. The Rajiv Gandhi National Park is considered to be one of the best wildlife parks of India. You will be surprised to see the large elephant and bison population in the Rajiv Gandhi National Park of Karnataka.

The landscape around the Rajiv Gandhi National Park in Karnataka is very beautiful with gentle slopes and shallow valleys. The reserve forest is scattered with the dry and mixed deciduous forest trees, grassy swamps and green grasses. The predominant vegetation of the Rajiv Gandhi National Park comprises of the following species of plants are *Dalbergia latifolia*, *Anogeissus latifolia*, *Pterocarpus marsupium*, *Emblica officinalis*, *Lagerstroemia lanceolata*, *Boombax malabaricum*, *Adina cordifolia*, *Gmelina arborea*, *Eupatorium*, *Solanum*, *Helicteres*, *Lantana*, The Rajiv Gandhi National Park in Karnataka is the home to various species of mammals and wild animals. They are Tiger, Leopard, Elephant, Barking deer, Porcupine, Gaur, Chital, Sambar, Wild boar, Jackals, Four-horned antelope, Leopard-cat, Sloth bear, Hyena, Mongoose, Civet & Otter.

The Rajiv Gandhi National Park at Karnataka hosts more than 250 species of birds. While strolling about in the park you will catch a view of the birds like Grey jungle fowl, Great black woodpecker, Red spur fowl, Malabar trogon, Malabar pied hornbill, Scarlet minivets, Indian pitta, Oospreys, Herons & Ducks.

You will find an abundance of reptiles in the Rajiv Gandhi National Park at Karnataka. They are marsh crocodile, monitor lizard, tortoises, rattle snakes, frogs, rock python, and vipers to name a few.<sup>1</sup>

### Ranganathittu Bird Sanctuary



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (Ranganathittu Bird Sanctuary)

The Ranganathittu Bird Sanctuary is an important tourist destination of Mysore and is located about 20 kilometers from the Vrindavan gardens of Mysore, Karnataka.

The Ranganathittu Bird Sanctuary of Karnataka has become a paradise for wildlife enthusiasts, nature lovers and bird watchers. The Ranganathittu Bird Sanctuary of Karnataka lies on the Kaveri river banks and the area has a group of six islets. These isolated islets of the Ranganathittu Bird Sanctuary are a favorite boarding ground for the varied species of birds that come in this place. The Ranganathittu Bird Sanctuary in Karnataka got the status of a bird sanctuary in 1940. The officials of the Ranganathittu Bird Sanctuary recorded 2,080 foreign tourists and 2,02,417 domestic tourists that visited the sanctuary in the year 2000.

The Ranganathittu Wildlife Sanctuary in Karnataka receives a heavy rainfall in the monsoon months and the temperature fluctuates between the 23 to 299°C throughout the year.

The Ranganathittu Wildlife Sanctuary of Karnataka is a delightful breeding ground for the migratory birds from all over the world. Here is a list of some of the avian species that reside in the Ranganathittu Wildlife Sanctuary at Karnataka such as Spoonbills, Snake bird, Egret, Heron, White Ibis, River tern, Partridge, Open bill storks, Darters, Peacocks, Stone plougher, Kingfishers, Little cormorants etc.

The Ranganathittu Wildlife Sanctuary spotted bird species from Siberia, Australia and even North America. These migratory birds come here in December and lay their eggs on islets in the river. Then they fly away with their little ones in the month of August.

You will get boating facilities in the Ranganathittu Wildlife Sanctuary at Karnataka and can see the trees near the river banks full of beautiful birds of myriad varieties.<sup>1</sup>

### **Ranibennur Blackbuck Sanctuary**

This unique sanctuary 88 Km away from Shimoga was a bid to save the endangered blackbuck. All of 119 sq.km. in area, with a 15 km radius marked out-of-bounds to visitors, this sanctuary is a serious attempt at protecting the natural habitat of this threatened species. Covered in shrubs forest and eucalyptus plantations, you might also spot wolves, fox, pangolin, hyena, wild boar, the rare Great Indian Bustard and many other bird species including bay-backed strikes, large grey babblers and sand grouse.



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (**Ranganathittu Bird Sanctuary**)

### **Dubare Elephant Camp, Coorg**

The Dubare Elephant Camp is a famous training camp of Coorg, Mysore. The Dubare Elephant Camp of Karnataka attracts a number of tourists who come here simply to observe the various activities of these gigantic creatures.

The wildlife enthusiasts and the tourists spend hours in the Dubare Elephant Camp of Karnataka by watching the habits of the elephants and participating in the daily activities of these animals like feeding and bathing.

You will find a number of trained Naturalists in the Dubare Elephant Camp in Karnataka who will tell you the diverse aspects of the history and ecology of the elephants. The Dubare Elephant Camp is an unique eco-tourism destination in South India.



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (**Dubare Elephant Camp**)

The Dubare Elephant Camp in Karnataka is run by the Karnataka Forest department and is the home to more than 150 elephants. Dubare Elephant Camp in Coorg is of historical importance. In the ancient times a number of elephants were brought here for their initial training. Today the Dubare Elephant Camp at Karnataka in Coorg gives excellent accommodation services to the tourists on the banks of river Cauvery. It is really thrilling to see the elephants feeding on sugarcane, coconuts or bananas.

The trained elephants of the Dubare Elephant Camp at Karnataka are very obedient and follow every command delivered by their mahouts.

The elephants of the Dubare Elephant Camp are trained to carry heavy logs, lift them and stacking logs in a symmetrical pile. The Dubare Elephant Camp of Karnataka is a project taken

in charge by forest department of the Karnataka state together with jungle lodges and resorts.

### **Dandeli Wildlife Sanctuary**

The Dandeli Wildlife Sanctuary of Karnataka is located about 485 kilometres from Bangalore and occupies an area of 5729.07 square kilometres. The Dandeli Wildlife Sanctuary is set in a calm and peaceful ambiance. The Dandeli Wildlife Sanctuary is well known for being the second largest wildlife sanctuary of the Karnataka state.



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (**Dandeli Wildlife Sanctuary**)

The Dandeli Wildlife Sanctuary of Karnataka comprises of steep slopes, deep river valleys and the enchantingly rich hilly forest terrain. The forest of the Dandeli Wildlife Sanctuary is a mixture of typical moist deciduous and semi evergreen forest. The riffling streams and the tributaries of the Kali, Kaneri and Nagajhari

weave through the forests of Dandeli Wildlife Sanctuary of Karnataka. The Dandeli Wildlife Sanctuary is rich in diverse flora and fauna.

Sighting the wild animals through the dense forest of the Dandeli Wildlife Sanctuary in Karnataka is quite difficult and considered as an element of luck. The Dandeli Wildlife Sanctuary is home to a large variety of wild animals like Deer, Sloth bear, Elephant, Panther, Tiger, Wild dog, Gaur, Langur, Bison, Jackal, Giant flying squirrel.

You will see a number of reptilian and amphibian species in and around the Dandeli Wildlife Sanctuary at Karnataka. The major wildlife attraction of the Dandeli Wildlife Sanctuary at Karnataka is the crocodiles. The forest authority of the Dandeli National Park offers wildlife safaris in jeeps to the tourists visiting here. You can even walk through the undulating hills of the forest area and do various activities like bird watching through your powerful binoculars, see the crocodiles in the crystal clear water, do fishing. There are facilities for coracle boat rides and trekking in the jungles of Dandeli Wildlife Sanctuary of Karnataka.<sup>1</sup>

### **Kokkrellur Pelicanry**

Every year, hundreds of winged visitors come together to set up a unique orchestra at Kokkrellur with their shrill cries and cacophonous calls. You can watch the performances of painted storks and pelicans resplendent in their breeding plumage, as well as the seemingly frail but gregarious fledglings perched atop the tamarind, peepal, and portia trees dotting the village. These birds have become an integral part of this tiny hamlet in the sugarcane-rich Mandya district. It is believed that the villagers look after them like family members.



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (Kokkrellur Pelicanry)

### **Bandipur National Park**

The Bandipur National Park of Karnataka is a beautiful forest reserve of southern India. The Bandipur National Park was established with the aim of conserving the nature and its resource. In 1930, the present Bandipur National Park was the Maharaja Voodiyar's hunting land which was converted into Venugopal Wildlife Park. Later in the year 1941, the park was expanded to the nearby Nagarahole National Park and named as the Bandipur National Park.

Now the Bandipur National Park of Karnataka is a part of the vast Nilgiri Biosphere Reserve which is considered as the extensive tracts of protected forest in India. In the year 1973, the Bandipur National Park in Karnataka was declared as the tiger reserve of India. Now it is the best managed tiger reserve of India.<sup>1</sup>



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (**Bandipur National Park**)

### **Bannerghata National Park**

The Bannerghata National Park is located at the southern outskirts of Bangalore city about 22 kilometres from the garden city. The Bannerghata National Park in Karnataka is spread over 25,000 acres of land and is well known for rich flora and fauna.

The Bannerghata National Park comprises of dry deciduous forests, thorny shrubs as well as moist deciduous forests. The Bannerghata National Park in Bangalore was established in 1971 with the sole aim of conserving the rare species of wildlife of the southern region of India. The Bannerghata National Park of Karnataka is a part of ten reserve forests of Anekal Range of the Bangalore Forest Division. The Bannerghata National Park at Karnataka is full of sandal, zizyphus, neem, jalari, tamarind, and chujjullu trees.

The mammal species that shelters in the Bannerghata National Park of Karnataka are Elephant, Leopard, Fox, Gaur, Jackal, Hare, Sambar, Porcupine, Wild pig, Sloth bear, Barking deer, Spotted deer, Bonnet macaque, Common langur etc.



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (Bannerghata National Park)

In the northern part of the Bannerghata National Park at Bangalore, the forest authority has organized for a tourist area. Here lion and tiger safari and herbivore safari are available. There is also a mini zoo, a reptile park, a mini aviary and a museum in this portion of the Bannerghata National Park. The Suvarnamukhi stream passes through the Bannerghata National Park. There is also a picnic corner, a serpentarium, pets' corner and a crocodile farm in the park premises.

The zoo inside the Bannerghata National Park in Bangalore, Karnataka is a storehouse of amazing reptile species. You will be really amazed to see the varieties of venomous and non-venomous snakes.



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (Adichunchanagiri Peacock Sanctuary)

### Adichunchanagiri Peacock Sanctuary

One of the smallest sanctuaries in Karnataka, the Adichunchanagiri was established with the sole intention of providing a favourable habitat for peacocks. Over 0.84 sq.km., the sanctuary is a quick fix for bird lovers - in addition to peacocks, a broad diversity of bird species can be spotted here. The common mongoose, jungle cat, black-naped hare and the bonnet macaque can also be found here. Its proximity to the Chunchanagiri temple and the pilgrim centre has made it a popular stop in the pilgrim circuit.

### **Bhadra Wildlife Sanctuary**



**Source:** [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (Bhadra Wildlife Sanctuary)

The sanctuary takes its name from the Bhadra River, its lifeline. Popularly known as Muthodi Wildlife Sanctuary, after the village of its periphery, it is a great place to sight the tiger, observe the Indian bison, hear the strange calls of the striped hyena and spot the rare flying lizard. The southern part of the sanctuary is rich in birds, butterflies and reptiles. More than 250 species of birds, many of which are endemic to the Western Ghats, are spotted here.

### **Kudremukh National Park**

The Kudremukh National Park of Karnataka is located about 130 kilometers from Mangalore. The Kudremukh National Park is encircled by the Kudremukh or the Horse Face range which overlooks the Arabian Sea.

The Kudremukh National Park of Karnataka comprises of a number of deep ravines as well as steep cliffs and is an ideal hub of animals and birds. The Kudremukh National Park occupies an area of 600.32 square kilometres and lies about 1,894.3 meters above sea level. The landscape around the Kudremukh National Park is very beautiful.



**Source:** [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (**Kudremukh National Park**)

The best time to visit the Kudremukh National Park of Karnataka is between October and May. It is the period after monsoons and wildlife enthusiasts will enjoy the lush green jungle plenty of wild animals. The Kudremukh National Park in Karnataka is the home to a variety of flora and fauna. It is covered with lush green forests and high grasslands. The place is rich in the following species of trees such as Eucalyptus, Grevillea robusta, Casuarinas, Acacia auriculiformis etc.

There is a trace of tea and coffee plantation. The Kudremukh National Park at Karnataka has varied species of wild life. The following animals are available in abundance in the Kudremukh National Park at Karnataka such as Gaur, Tiger, Sambar, Sloth bear, Wild dogs, Leopards, Jackals, Porcupine, Mongoose, Spotted bear, Barking deer, Lion tailed macaque, Giant flying squirrel, Malabar giant squirrel etc.

Kudremukh National Park of Karnataka has more than 195 rare avian species. They include Malabar whistling thrush, Imperial pigeon, Great pied hornbill, Malabar trogon etc.<sup>1</sup>

### **Daroji Bear Sanctuary:**

Located in a scrub jungle with rocky outcrops and caves, the Daroji Sloth Bear Sanctuary is devoted to the protection of the Indian Sloth Bear. It is 29 Km away from Bellary. Home to a large number of free ranging bears, the sanctuary also has hyenas, wild boars, pangolins, porcupines, jackals and leopards. Other denizen include star tortoise, monitor lizard and rock agama. A drive through the scrub jungle also provides opportunities to sight endemic species of birds such as the painted spur fowl, yellow throated bulbul, sand grouse and stone curlew, besides peafowl.

**BRT Wildlife Sanctuary**

One of the hottest bio-diversity spots in the world, Biligiri Rangaswamy Temple (BRT) Wildlife Sanctuary takes its name from the ancient Ranganatha Swamy Temple that sits at the edge of a 1000 ft precipice. And is 110 Km away from Mysore. It is a haven for over 372 species of birds and wildlife such as elephants, tigers, leopards, wild dogs, four horned antelopes, black bucks



Source: [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org)

**(Biligiri Rangaswamy Temple (BRT) Wildlife Sanctuary)**

and giant flying squirrels. Also visit the Dodda Sampige Mara (large Michelia Champaka tree) believed to be over 2000 years old and worshipped by the Soliga tribe. Vivekananda Girijana Kalyana Kendra located here displays preserved tribal information and the bio-diversity of the region. There are many trekking trails here, including one that leads up to Honnamati, the highest point of the range.

Besides, we also come across a number of other parks that contribute towards the Karnataka wildlife tours, viz.:

- Anshi National Park- Birds Sanctuary



**Source:** [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (Anshi National Park)

- Someshwara Wildlife Sanctuary
- Gudavi Bird Sanctuary
- Cauvery Wildlife Sanctuary



**Source:** [www.karnatakaturism.org](http://www.karnatakaturism.org) (Cauvery Wildlife Sanctuary)

---

## Andhra Pradesh

---

Andhra Pradesh is endowed with a rich and varied Bio-diversity distributed over a mosaic of different habitats spread over the Eastern Ghats, the Deccan Plateau Region, the Coastal Mangroves, the Fresh Water bodies like Kolleru and Brackish water bodies like the Pulicat and the grasslands of Rollapadu. These varied habitats have been supporting a variety of animal and plant species ranging from the Tiger, Gaur, Elephant, Black Buck and a variety of Deers and Antelopes, besides a variety of birds, including the Great Indian Bustard, the Spot bill Pelican, the Lesser Florican and the near extinct Jerdon's Courser. In addition to the above faunal species, the forests of Andhra Pradesh support about 5000 plant species

consisting of species like Teak, Rosewood, Sandal Wood, and the endemic Red Sanders and *Cycas beddomeii*, etc.<sup>1</sup>

### Scenic locations

**Hussain Sagar** -Set in between the twin-cities, with one of the world's tallest monolithic statues of Buddha in the middle, the Hussainsagar is a picturesque man-made lake. Created by Hussain Shah Wali, during the reign of Ibrahim Quli Qutub Shah in 1562, the lake has facilities for speed boats, a huge 48 seated launch with starlit onboard dining and provision for private parties maintained by APTDC. Bhageeratha & Bhagmati, Khair-un-Nissan are the main Cruises present here. The access to the Buddha Statue and the boating is through the Lumbini Park.



**Source:** [www.cityhyd.info](http://www.cityhyd.info) (Hussain Sagar Lake, Hyderabad)

**Horsley Hills** - is the famous hill resort of Andhra Pradesh. Horsley Hills is an enthralling, charming little hill station. It is a beautiful summer resort with luxurious vegetation and rich fauna. These hills are situated at an altitude of 1,265m from the sea-level.

The climate at Horsley Hills is relaxing with temperature ranging from 20 deg C to 32 deg C maximum, even in summers. This is one of the major assets that draw number of tourists to Horsley Hills in summers. Even the surrounding comprising of the lush green plains spread all over, the forest, though not dense, adds to its beauty. On the hills that are lush with dense forest and thick greenness, you can see various species of plants stretching along the narrow roads.



**Source:** horsleyhillsholidays.com (**Horsley Hills, Andhra Pradesh**)

There are trees like Eucalyptus, Jacaranda, Allamanda, Gulmohar and flowering plants like Reeta, Shikakai, Amla, Beedi leaves, Bay leaves, Red Sanders and Blue gum found in the forest.

There are sandalwood trees found all over Horsley Hills. The Horsley hill does not lag behind in the species of fauna found here. In the dense forests of the shady slope hills, wooded with luxurious vegetation, you can find animals like Bears, wild dogs, jungle fowls, Sambar and Panther.

The Chenchu tribes dwell in the forest of Horsley Hills. They rear their famous Pungannur cows, which eat less food and yield more milk. There is also a 150-year old Eucalyptus tree.<sup>1</sup>

**Araku Valley-** is one of the most important tourist destinations in Andhra Pradesh. A pleasant hill station famous for its scenic gardens with lush green nature, valleys, waterfalls and streams. It is situated at a distance of 112 km from Visakhapatnam. The journey to Araku valley on the Eastern Ghats with thick forest on either sides is itself highly interesting and pleasant.



**Source:** www.trekearth.com - (**Araku Valley, Andhra Pradesh**)

The place is over 3200ft. high with a bracing climate. The Botanical Garden at Padmapuram, Government Silk Farm with Mulberry gardens are the live examples to know the socio-economic conditions of the area. Tribal Museum is a

big attraction of the Araku. Chaaparai, a picturesque place about 15 km from Araku is another picnic spot in this region. One must experience the climatic conditions and the natural beauty of this Valley. The natural beauty of this valley comes alive with the aboriginal tribes who dwell here and who have to this day kept their tradition and culture alive. About 19 tribes inhabit this area. The Dhimsa dance, an age-old folk dance normally performed during 'Itikala Pongal' is now offered in tourist's packages everyday.

**Nagarjunakonda** - is a historical Buddhist town (About 1700 years ago), now an island located near Nagarjuna Sagar in Guntur district/Nalgonda district in the Indian state of Andhra Pradesh. It is 150 km south east of the capital, Hyderabad.



Source: [travel.tejasri.in](http://travel.tejasri.in) (**Nagarjunakonda**)

It was formed when a hill was submerged in the waters of the Nagarjuna Sagar Dam, constructed in the 1960s. It is one of India's richest Buddhist sites, known in the ancient times as Sri Parvata. Nagarjunakonda, meaning the hill of Nagarjuna, was named after the Buddhist scholar and savant Acharya Nagarjuna who lived around the turn of the 2nd century AD. A Buddhist museum is situated on the entire island in the Nagarjunasagar dam. A.R. Saraswathi, in 1926, discovered this glorious place who was a researcher in the Archaeological Survey of India (ASI).



Source: [travelinformationindia.blogspot.com](http://travelinformationindia.blogspot.com) (**Anantagiri, a Hill Resort in Andhra Pradesh**)

**Anantagiri** - a mesmerizing hill resort, is cocooned in the green hills of Andhra Pradesh & 3 km away from Srikakulam. It is blessed with some of the most strikingly beautiful view-points on the rolling hills of the Eastern Ghats. Thick woodlands, plush orchards, gorgeous waterfalls, a variety of flora and miles of coffee plantations await you in Anantagiri Hills. Anantagiri Hills is reputed as a health station as some of the flora here has medicinal properties, and the pleasant weather never fails to replenish the body and soul. Musi or Muchkunda river originates from Anantagiri. The Bhavanasi Lake, situated here, is referred to as the Badrinath of the South attracting pilgrims from far and away. The nearby Borra Caves are a treasure house in itself and date back to at least a million year. The natural formation of the stalactites and stalagmites in the Borra Caves is unique and attracts the adventurous and curious tourists from all over the world. Araku Valley also offers a favorite getaway from the Anantagiri Hills.

### Sanctuaries & National Parks:

**Kawal Wildlife Sanctuary** -is the perfect destination to look for multiplicity of flora and fauna in India. Located in Adilabad district of Andhra Pradesh, the sanctuary lies at a distance of 50 km from Mancherila and 260 km from Hyderabad. It was established in 1964 with the purpose of safeguarding the endangered species in their natural habitat. Owing to its bio-diversity, the haven was declared as a wildlife sanctuary later. Kawal Wildlife Sanctuary is visited by number of tourists every year. It has two watch towers, which offer stunning view of the surroundings. Sprawled across an area of 893 sq kms, the sanctuary boasts of a dry deciduous forest where teak, bamboo and numerous varieties of trees, shrubs and herbs can be seen. It houses various animals, including Sambar, Cheetal, Nilgai, Barking Deer, Indian Bison, Sloth Bear, Panther and Tiger.<sup>1</sup>

**Shivaram Wildlife Sanctuary** - of Andhra Pradesh is a total delight for nature lovers. It was established in 1987. Sited on the banks of River Godavari, the sanctuary is known for its population of fresh water crocodiles. This haven truly appears to be immersed in nature's beauty and splendor. Sprawled in an area of 36.29 sq km, the wildlife asylum lies at a distance of about 10 km, 50 km and 80 km from Manthani, Mancheril and Karimnagar, respectively.



Source: globetrottingtips.com (Kawal Wildlife Sanctuary in Andhra Pradesh)

**Sri Venkateswara National Park**- is another attraction amidst the range of sanctuaries in India. Sited at a distance of 10 km from Tirupati, the park sprawls in an area of 353 sq km, over the Kadapa and Chittoor districts of Andhra Pradesh. It boasts of many mesmerizing waterfalls, like Talakona, Gundalakona and Gunjana. Sri Venkateswara Wildlife Sanctuary makes an interesting excursion from the divine land of Tirupati.



**Source:** [indiantourist-spots.blogspot.com](http://indiantourist-spots.blogspot.com) (Sri Venkateswara National Park, Andhra)

For a nature lover, the park is no less than a veritable heaven, where precipitous gorges, sheer ridges, unfathomable valleys and striking waterfalls find their place in a lush green countryside, surrounded by Seshachalam and Tirumala hills. Over and above, a plethora of wild animals and birds make the affable community in this indigenous land. Established in 1989, Sri Venkateswara National Park was named after Lord Venkateswara - the 'Lord of Seven Hills'. The wide range of fauna found here includes wild animals and mammals like Tiger, Civet, Jackal, Black Buck, Panther, Spotted Deer, Ibex, Sloth Bear, Pig, Bear, Bonnet Monkey, Wild Dogs, Bison, Jackal, Fox, Rare Golden Gecko, Jungle Fowl, Indian Giant Squirrel, Tree Shrew, Flying Lizards, Nilgai, Wildboar, Occasional Leopard and Hyena. Avifauna comprises of more than 100 species of birds, including Crested Serpant Eagle, Ashy Crowned Finch Lark, Indian Roller, Kingfishers, White bellied Woodpecker, etc.



**Source:** [indiatourismtravel.wordpress.com](http://indiatourismtravel.wordpress.com) (Mahavir Harina Vanasthali National Park)

### **Mahavir Harina Vanasthali National Park**

In Andhra Pradesh, Mahavir Harina Vanasthali National Park is a popular destination amongst the lovers of wildlife. Situated in Vanasthalipuram, at a distance of 15 kms from Hyderabad, the park was established in 1975 and named after 'Lord Mahavira', to commemorate the 2500th birth anniversary of the prodigy. Once the hunting ground of the 'Nizams', Mahavir Harina Vanasthali National Park was later developed into a full-fledged sanctuary by the Government of India.

During monsoons, Vanasthali National Park appears mesmerizing with different colorful flowers blooming all around. The endangered Black Buck deer is found here in plenty. In fact, the park has estimated 400 deer in its expanse. Apart from the Black Bucks, there are many other species of animals here, including Cheetahs, Wild Boar, Monitor Lizards, Mongooses and Porcupines. Regarding avifauna, there are different varieties of Partridges, Quails, Peacocks, Doves, Pond Herons, Egrets, Kites, Vultures, Eagle, Kingfishers and Cormorants. More than 80 species of migratory birds can be seen here.

**Manjira Wildlife and Bird Sanctuary-** is a renowned haven that domiciles large number of local as well as migratory birds in Andhra Pradesh. Lying near Sangareddy in Medak district, this wildlife refuge is located alongside Manjira River. Snuggled between Manjeera and Singur barrages, the harbor formed by nine small islands extends over an area of 20 sq km.

**Nehru Zoological Park** - is credited with being the largest zoo in India. It is located at a distance of 16 km from Hyderabad and comes under the Bahadurpur region. The park was named after Jawaharlal Nehru, the first Prime Minister of India. For wildlife lovers, Nehru Zoological Park is the best place to explore the rich flora and fauna in its natural habitat. Sprawled over an area of approximately 300 acres, the zoo has a wide array of animals, birds and reptiles.

Indian Rhino, Asiatic Lions, Royal Bengal Tiger, White Tiger, Black Panther, Giraffes and Black Bears are some amongst the animals' treasure of the zoo. In case you are hunting for adventure and buzz, then you can take jeep safari of the Lion Park, a place with exclusive charm throughout the continent. Nehru Zoological Park is an abode to both, African and Indian Lions. If lucky enough, you may come across the Big Cats devouring their kill just a few feet away.

Apart from the animals, there are also reptiles, including Giant/Star Tortoises, Water Turtles, Chameleons, Hooded Indian Cobra, Monitor Lizards, Russell's Viper, Giant Rock-Python, Tree Snakes, Estuarine Crocodiles, etc. Amongst the herbivores, Nehru Zoological Park also boasts of Elephants, Rhinoceros, Hippopotamus, Zebras, Chousingha, American Bison, Chinkara, Antelopes, Black Buck, Deer, Sambar, Brow Antler Deer, etc.

**Indira Gandhi Zoological Park** -is one amongst the largest zoos of India, sited in the natural surroundings of a reserve forest. Sprawled in an area of 625 acres, the park was named after Indira Gandhi - the former Prime Minister of India. It was opened to the public in the year 1977. Located amidst Kambalakonda Reserve Forest in Visakhapatnam, the zoological park is surrounded by the Eastern Ghats on three sides and the Bay of Bengal on the fourth.



**Source:** commons.wikimedia.org (Ghariyal at Indira Gandhi Zoological Park)

The Park houses almost eighty species, numbering to eight hundred animals, in its expanse. Infact, it has special sections for primates, carnivores, lesser carnivores, small mammals, ungulates, reptiles and birds in their natural replicated enclosures. Amongst the primates, the extra attention is gained by Rhesus monkey, Bonnet monkey, Mandrills, Olive and Sacred baboons, whereas Panthers, Tigers, Lions, Pumas, Jaguars, Wolves, Jackals, Hyena, Ratel, etc are the major ones in Carnivores. The section of Reptiles has Pythons, Tortoise, Terrapins, Monitor lizards, Snakes and Water Monitor Lizards. In the range of Herbivores, the park embraces Elephant, Bison, Sambar, Spotted deer and Thamin deer. Regarding Avifauna, there are Grey/ Rosy pelicans, Pied hornbills, Painted storks, Peacocks, Ducks, Love birds, Cockatiels, Macaws and various other ground birds. You can also walk beside the aviaries, which comprise a diverse collection of birds from the Eastern Ghats.

The animals like Himalayan Black Bear and Sloth Bear are kept in separate huge enclosures. Apart from other animals and birds, the special attraction at the park is made by the Hippopotamus and the Crocodiles, which can be seen basking in the sun.<sup>1</sup>

### **Nellapattu Sanctuary and Pulicat Lake**

This bird Sanctuary is located in Nelapattu village. It is located on the East Coast about 20-km north of the Pulicat Bird Sanctuary in the Nellore district. With a total area of 404-kms the Nelapattu Bird Sanctuary is one of the largest pelican habitats in Southeast Asia. Near this sanctuary is the Pulicat Lake, the second largest salt

water lake in India. On a holidaya trip one can also sight the migratory birds which are another source of attraction at Pulicat lake in Andhra Pradesh.



Source: [www.loveinfographics.com](http://www.loveinfographics.com) (Flamingos at Pulicat Lake)

**Coringa Sanctuary:** The Coringa sanctuary is situated around 20 Kms from Kakinada and 70 Kms from Rajahmundry. This sanctuary is a part of river Godavari and owns a heavy growth of Mangrove plantation. The highlight of the sanctuary is that it is situated on the backwaters of the sea. One can spot estuarine crocodiles, sea turtles, fishing cats, otters and large variety of birds here.

**Kolleru Lake Bird Sanctuary:** The Kolleru Lake Bird Sanctuary at Kolleru has the largest fresh water lake in Asia. It is 65 Km away from Vijaywada. The Kolleru lake attracts many nature lovers.



Source: [www.team-bhp.com](http://www.team-bhp.com) (Kolleru Lake, Godavari, India)

---

**9.5 Check Your Progress**

---

1) Name any three popular beaches of Karnataka?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

2) Which Island in Karnataka is known as National Geological Monument?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

3) Name any two beaches in Goa?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

4) Name any three beaches in Andhra Pradesh?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

5) Name two sanctuaries in Karnataka?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

6) Name two sanctuaries/ National Parks in Andhra Pradesh?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

7) Name two waterfalls in Karnataka?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

---

### 9.6 Summary

---

Well readers, after going through this unit of Karnataka & Andhra Pradesh, you must have got knowledge about the immense potential of these states with regard to beach & nature tourism. Karnataka has got great scenic beauty & having a concentration of beaches, lakes, rivers, waterfalls, sanctuaries, national parks, sanctuaries etc. Karnataka is blessed with over 300 km of pristine coastal stretch & sunny beaches at places like Malpe, Murdeshwara, Maravanthe, Gokarna, Kumta etc. Kudremukh, Kemmanagundi, Agumbe, Horanadu, Nandi Hills are some of the better known hill stations of Karnataka. Also Karnataka is known for its wildlife sanctuaries & National parks. Andhra Pradesh has a variety of attractions including beaches, hills, wildlife, forests and temples. Dominated by a regal past, the state of Andhra Pradesh is a live manifestation of a multi-dimensional scenic pleasure. Andhra Pradesh tourism is known as Koh-i-Noor of India. The South Indian state of Andhra Pradesh has many exotic “Beaches” within its area that overwhelms the tourist with its captivating and enchanting beauty such as Bheemunipatnam Beach, Ramakrishna Beach, Manginapudi Beach, Kakinada, and Kalingapatnam Beach etc. It also has a number of sanctuaries & national parks. After going through this block, surely you would have got a fair idea about the rich culture & natural manifestations which attract tourist in the states of Karnataka & Andhra Pradesh.

---

### 9.7 Clues to Answer

---

#### Check your Progress

1. Refer 8.3
2. Refer 8.3
3. Refer 8.3
4. Refer 8.3
5. Refer 8.4
6. Refer 8.4
7. Refer 8.4

---

### 9.8 REFERENCES:

---

- <http://www.go2india.in/karnataka/index.php>
- <http://www.go2india.in/ap/index.php>
- <http://www.indialine.com/travel/beaches>
- <http://www.rrindia.com/karnataka/karnataka-beaches.html>
- <http://www.mapsofindia.com/andhra-pradesh/tourism/beaches.html>
- <http://www.mapsofindia.com/andhra-pradesh/>

- 
- <http://www.mapsofindia.com/karnataka/tourism/rajiv-gandhi-national-park.html>
  - <http://www.mapsofindia.com/karnataka/tourism/ranganathittu-bird-sanctuary.html>
  - <http://www.mapsofindia.com/karnataka/tourism/dandeli-wildlife-sanctuary.html>
  - <http://www.mapsofindia.com/karnataka/tourism/bandipur-national-park.html>
  - <http://www.mapsofindia.com/karnataka/tourism/kudremukh-national-park.html>
  - <http://apfdc.apts.gov.in/EcoTourism.htm>
  - <http://www.aptourism.in/index.php/k2-separator/k2/item/39-horsleyhills#.UT7Rx8p37Ec>
  - <http://www.bharatonline.com/andhra-pradesh/travel/adilabad/kawal-wildlife-sanctuary.html>
  - <http://www.bharatonline.com/andhra-pradesh/wildlife.html>

---

---

**Unit-10**

**Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Pondicherry and Andaman and  
Nicobar Islands**

---

**Structure**

**10.1 Objectives**

**10.2 Introduction**

**10.3 Beaches & Backwaters**

**10.4 Natural Manifestations of Touristic Significance**

**10.5 Check Your Progress**

**10.6 Summary**

**10.7 Clues to Answer**

---

## 10.1 Objectives

---

After going through the Unit 12 on **Beaches & Other Natural Manifestations' of Touristic Significance** with a special reference to **Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Pondicherry and Andaman & Nicobar Islands**, you would be able to:

- Know about the popular beaches in Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Pondicherry and Andaman & Nicobar Islands.
- Know about the natural attractions in Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Pondicherry and Andaman & Nicobar Islands.
- Understand the role of Natural attractions in attracting tourists.
- Understand the various forms of nature tourism at these places.
- Understand the tourism in Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Pondicherry and Andaman & Nicobar Islands.

---

## 10.2 Introduction

---

Unit 12 gives detailed information about **Beaches & Other Natural Manifestations' of Touristic Significance** in India with special reference to Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Pondicherry and Andaman & Nicobar Islands. These states have got immense potential with regard to nature & nature tourism. And provide a number of opportunities for tourists. Most of India's finest beaches are in Kerala. Virtually its entire 900 km length coastline is lined with sandy beaches, rocky promontories and coconut palms. Each year, a great number of visitors arrive here in search of tranquil, palm-fringed beaches. Tamil Nadu is full of surprises! The intrepid tourist, who has heard and read about Tamil Nadu, expects to see Lots of Temples. Several Monuments perhaps. Then the surprises begin, 1000 km sun kissed beaches, magnificent historical monuments, eternal rhythm of the gurgling waterfalls, wondrous wildlife & bird sanctuaries, emerald green natural habitats, artefacts, paintings, dance forms, the colour and pageantry of festive days with good network of road, rail and air linking all the destinations in the country. Often described as a sleepy French provincial town, Pondicherry retains a distinct Gallic flavour. French is still spoken among the older residents, while stately colonial mansions stand in tree-lined streets that are still known by their colonial names. Even the policemen continue to wear the military-style caps, known as kepis. Today, Pondicherry, has been renamed Puduchcheri. Located on the east coast of Tamil Nadu, it is the administrative capital of a Union Territory that includes the former French enclaves of Mahe in Kerala, Yanam in Andhra Pradesh and Karaikkal in Tamil Nadu. On the way to Pondicherry, one can view the natural beauty of the scenic Deccan plateau. Andaman and Nicobar Islands (6°30'-9°30'N;

93-94°E) are high islands forming the southward extension of this mountain chain. Floating in splendid isolation, east of the Indian mainland, is the archipelago of 572 emerald islands, islets and rocks known as the Andaman and Nicobar Islands. This Union Territory is spread over a distance nearly 800 Kms. from North to South with 38 inhabited islands. A hill range extending from Burma (Myanmar) to Indonesia, these undulating islands are covered with dense forests and an endless variety of exotic flora & fauna. Andaman & Nicobar Island offers beautiful island vacations and beach tours. Each island in Andaman's has its own uniqueness and beauty. The beaches in Andaman's are very clean & crystal clear. In no place, we can find both island vacations and beach tours in a same place. All these states of Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Pondicherry and Andaman & Nicobar Islands provide great opportunities to natives, tourist & Tourism.

---

### 10.3 Beaches & Backwaters

---

#### Kerala

---

Beaches in the Indian state of Kerala are spread along the 550-km Arabian Sea coastline. Kerala is an Indian state occupying the south-west corner of the subcontinent. The topography of the coastline is distinctive and changes abruptly as one proceeds from north to south. In the northern parts of Kerala, in places such as Bekal, Thalassery and Kannur, the headlands rise above the shore from the fringe of the beaches. The highlands are dotted with forts built by the colonial powers – the Portuguese, the Dutch and the British. The view of the surrounding area is exquisite. From Kozhikode, once the hub of the Malabar coast, the view changes to flat lands with rocky outcroppings jutting out.

Kerala enjoys an extraordinary kinship with the sea. Mythically born from it, Kerala's bond with the sea is that of a child and mother. By the virtue of having most of India's finest beaches, Kerala offers you surf, spice and sand like no other place. Though extremely popular worldwide, the beaches remain strangely unspoilt and bewitching. The cool breeze that blows on the beaches will work like a balm to your soul.

---

#### Beaches

---

**Alappuzha Beach, South Kerala:** Referred to as the *Venice of the East*, Alappuzha has always enjoyed an important place in the maritime history of Kerala. Today, it is famous for its boat races, backwater holidays, beaches, marine products and coir industry. Alappuzha beach is a popular picnic spot. The pier, which extends into the sea here, is over 137 years old. Entertainment facilities at the Vijaya Beach Park add to the attraction of the beach. There is also an old lighthouse nearby which is greatly fascinating to visitors. Another delightful experience while in Alappuzha is a houseboat cruise.

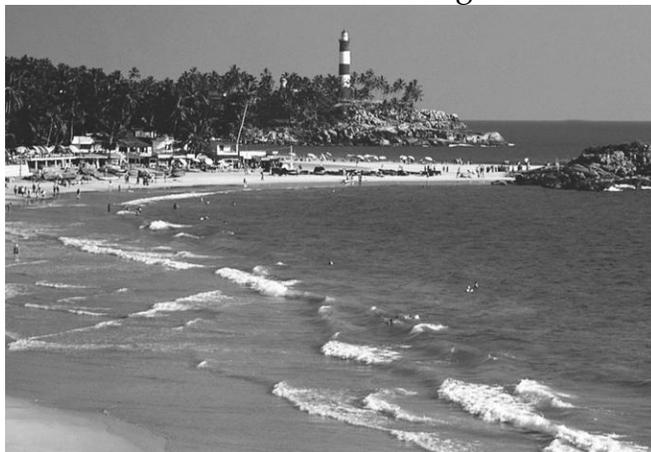
**Valiathura Beach:** Valiathura Beach is located 10 km from Thiruvananthapuram. This was once the only port along the South Kerala coast. During monsoons,

fishermen carry their catamarans to the edge of the Valiathura Pier which is 703 ft long, throw them into the sea, then jump in and swim to it.

**Shankhumugham beach:** Just 7 km from the city of Thiruvananthapuram, the Shankhumugham beach is a favourite haunt for people coming to watch sunsets. The beach is adjacent to the Thiruvananthapuram International Airport and Veli Tourist Village. An indoor recreation club, the matsya kanyaka (a gigantic, 35 m long sculpture of a mermaid) and a restaurant shaped like a starfish are some of the attractions at the Shankhumugham beach.<sup>1</sup>

**Thirumullavaram Beach:** It is located 6 Km away from Kollam. Thirumullavaram Beach, is secluded beach and a beautiful picnic centre. About one and a half kilometre into the sea is the Nyarazhcha Para, literally Sunday Rock that can be seen from the shore at low tide. And near the beach is a Mahavishnu Temple.<sup>1</sup>

**Kovalam Beach:** Kovalam is an internationally renowned beach with three adjacent crescent beaches. It has been a favourite haunt of tourists, especially Europeans, since the 1930s. A massive rocky promontory on the beach has created a beautiful bay of calm waters ideal for sea bathing.



**Source:** [www.keralafamilytour.com](http://www.keralafamilytour.com) (Kovalam Beach)

The leisure options at this beach are plenty and diverse. Sunbathing, swimming, herbal body toning massages, special cultural programmes and catamaran cruising are some of them. The tropical sun acts so fast that one can see the faint blush of coppery tan on the skin in a matter of minutes. Life on the beach begins late in the day and carries on well into the night. The beach complex includes a string of budget cottages, Ayurvedic health resorts, and convention facilities, shopping zones, swimming pools, Yoga and Ayurvedic massage centres. Thiruvananthapuram, the capital city of Kerala, is just 16 km away from Kovalam and getting there is no hassle. But if you are on holiday it is better to stay in Kovalam and visit the city.<sup>1</sup>

**Thiruvambady Beach:** It is 1 km from Thiruvambady Road in Varkala. Calm and serene, this solitary beach is adjacent to the North Cliff in Varkala. Thiruvambady

or the Black Sand Beach is an ideal place for those seeking peace and solitude and can be easily reached by climbing down the cliff or driving down a kilometre.<sup>1</sup>

**Samudra Beach:** Lying to the north of the Ashok Beach, this beach can be accessed only by taking a detour past Kovalam Junction. It is an awesome sight to watch the waves crash on the rocks below as you walk along the stretch of sea wall here.

**Neendakara Beach:** It is located 8 km from Kollam. A famous fishing harbour, you can see the Ashthamudi Lake joining the sea from the Neendakara Bridge and also the Chinese fishing nets silhouetted against the sky.<sup>1</sup>

**Kollam Beach:** Location: 3 km south of Kollam, An array of beach activities attract thousands of tourists throughout the year to this perfect beach setting offering panoramic views of the Arabian Sea. A port city and one time active harbour for Chinese ships and trade, Kollam is home to Chinese fishing nets, Chinese water pots and sampan-like boats seen even today.



**Source:** [www.skyscrapercity.com](http://www.skyscrapercity.com) (Kollam beach)

**Varkala Beach:** Location: 51 km north of Thiruvananthapuram city in Thiruvananthapuram district and 37 km south of Kollam, south Kerala. Varkala, a calm and quiet hamlet, lies on the outskirts of Thiruvananthapuram district. It has several places of tourist interests like a beautiful beach, a 2000-year-old Vishnu Temple and the Ashramam - Sivagiri Mutt a little distance from the beach. The Papanasam beach (also called as Varkala beach), which is ten kilometers away from Varkala, is renowned for the natural spring. It is considered to have medicinal and curative properties. A dip in the holy waters at this beach is believed to purge the body of impurities and the soul of all sins; hence the name 'Papanasam beach'.

**Vallikunnu Beach, Malappuram:** Serene, secluded and spellbinding, Kerala has some of the best beaches in the world. Ride the surf, get a tan, build sandcastles or simply sift sand through your toes at the Vallikunnu beach in Malappuram district. Anything you do here will relax you and help you unwind. A beach resort set in the middle of a coconut grove is the main attraction here, along with the Kadalundi Bird Sanctuary just a short distance away.

**Vadakara Sand Banks, Kozhikode:** Vadakara Sand Banks is an attractive beach stretch that supplements the seaside beauty of Vadakara in the Kozhikode district, situated in north Kerala. This beach where the Kottakkal River meets the Arabian Sea is a stunningly beautiful beach. It is a great spot to enjoy beautiful sunsets, frequented by locals as well as tourists. Vadakara is famous as the birth place of Thacholi Othenan, the legendary hero of the Vadakkanpattu (ballads of North Malabar). Lokanarkavu is one of the famous temples in the and there is also a temple in memory of the legendary Thacholi Othenan, known as Thacholi Manikkothu Kavu temple. The martial art form of Kalaripayattu has the largest number of exponents in Vadakara.

---

### Tamil nadu

---

Tamil Nadu beach destination is famous among the tourists. The long golden sand, the bountiful sea ends his journey and meets the land. The state of Tamil Nadu faces Bay of Bengal and Indian Ocean and these water bodies give rise to various beach destination of India which are very much popular among the international tourist as well as to the domestic travelers. All the beaches of Tamil Nadu lies on the southern tip of the country, Tamil Nadu enjoy a wonderful coastline. The sights on rising as well as setting sun can be seen from this coastal area.

**Covelong Beach:** Covelong beach of Tamil Nadu lies in a picturesque village on the State Highway that joins Chennai to the temple town of Mahabalipuram. This beach of Tamil Nadu is one of the most beautiful and virgin beaches of India and adjoins a small but charming fishing village and is on the coast of the Bay of Bengal. This Tamil Nadu Beach is located at a distance of 40 km from Chennai. The beach is located on the site that was developed originally as a port by Saadat Ali, Nawab of Carnatic.

**Ellot's Beach:** This Beach of Tamil Nadu is one of the cleanest beaches of India and is in the city of Chennai. This Beach of Tamil Nadu is located towards the south of Marina Beach and is an extremely calm and tranquil place. The beach of Tamil Nadu is known as 'Bessei' amongst the locals. As the Tamil Nadu beach does not offer much activity, it is ideal for long walks. Elliot's Beach of Tamil Nadu is quite a hit amongst both the tourists as well as the natives of Tamil Nadu.

**Kanyakumari Beach:** This beach of Tamil Nadu is in the southernmost tip of India, Cape Comorin or Kanyakumari the place where tourists love to see Sangam (the confluence point) of the three seas - Bay of Bengal, Arabian Sea and Indian Ocean it is also a lagoon where steps lead you into the waters to bathe at once, all merging into blue waters of a huge water body surrounding this important pilgrim center on three sides.



Source: (Marina Beach from air)

**Marina Beach:** Marina Beach of Tamil Nadu is the longest beach of India. Marina Beach, comprising of golden sand, good surf and a shimmering clean blue sea. This Beach of Tamil Nadu is counted among one of the longest beaches in Asia. Marina beach is located on the eastern side of Chennai, adjoining the Bay of Bengal. Watching the sun set and Sun rise from the beach is a fascinating experience.

**Mahabalipuram Beach:** Mahabalipuram Beach of Tamil Nadu is also known as Mamallapuram Beach and is on the shores of the Bay of Bengal has a coastline spanning a distance of over 20 km with beautiful beaches. This Tamil Nadu Beach is located 58km from Chennai on the Mahabalipuram road, the golden sandy beach is a picturesque place bounded by the shimmering sea and rolling hills.

**Rameshwaram Beach:** Rameshwaram Beach of Tamil Nadu is one of the most popular pilgrimage centers of South India. The sea here is also a home to rare sea species and coral reefs. Remarkable variety of marine life-algae, starfish, sea cucumber, crabs, sponges and the sea cow are found here. One may also sight some dolphins playing in the serene waters of Rameshwaram. The serene beach with shallow waters makes an ideal site for swimming and sunbathing.



Source: [www.mytripolog.com](http://www.mytripolog.com) (Rameshwaram Beach)

**Muttukkadu Beach:** The “Muttukkadu” Beach of Tamil Nadu is one of the most exciting and thrilling tourist destination of India. Amidst the picturesque landscape of the place, the Muttukkadu beach is known for the calm and serene

backwater of the sea and the natural estuary which adds to the beauty of the place. The natural scenic beauty of the place captures the imagination of a poet. The backwaters provide an excellent view of the sunrise and sunset which attracts many local tourists as well.

**Poompuhar Beach:** This Tamil Nadu Beach is also known as Kaveri poompattinam and is about 40 km from Chidambaram in Tamil Nadu. The Cauvery River drains into the Bay of Bengal at Poompuhar. Poompuhar is an ancient historic town situated in Sirkali Taluk of Nagapattinam district, Tamil Nadu. An archaeologist delight, Poompuhar is a town for those who like to wander amidst history and take a stroll through time. It was once a major port during the reign of Cholas.

**Tiruchendur Beach:** This Beach of Tamil Nadu is 85km from Kanyakumari and the temple which lies on the shores of the sea is an inspiring sight. The surging fresh tide of the sea washing the feet of the temple is a lovely sight to behold. The sea is believed to have miraculous benefits for those who dip in it before praying at the temple.



**Source:** [ligysspace.blogspot.com](http://ligysspace.blogspot.com) (Velankanni Beach)

**Velankanni Beach:** This beach of Tamil Nadu is located at Tamil Nadu. Velankanni beach is 350 kilometers away from Chennai. Sobriquet name of this Tamil Nadu beach is Lourdes of the East as both the places experience a large number of pilgrims on an annual basis. There are a couple of festivals that go on in the months of August and September. These are major tourist attractions as well. A major tourist attraction of Velankanni beach is the Church of our Lady of Health.

**Vattakottai Beach:** This Tamil Nadu Beach is a solitary beach destination located in Tamil Nadu. Specially known for the 18th century citadel, the place is also called as the Vattakottai Fort. Bearing the imprints of past rulers, the granite Fort is the prime attraction of the place. Vattakottai Fort was once the dwelling ground of the Pandya rulers. With the fading streamline of a small river flowing by the side of the Fort, there are visible evidences of the existence of a canon in the ancient times. Protected by the 25-26 feet high surrounding walls, the Fort has an extension that touches the waters of the sea.

---

**Pondicherry**

---

Puducherry, the capital of the union territory of Puducherry (which includes Pudhucherry, Karaikal, Mahe and Yanam) and is located in the Coromandel coast of the Bay of Bengal. While Karaikal lies 150 km south of Pudhucherry on the east coast, Mahe is on the Malabar Coast and Yanam in the East Godavari district of Andhra Pradesh. Besides being a nesting place for many poets and laurels down the ages, The union territory also been a shore of different cultures, from the Romans to the French, who ruled for 300 years. The town is almost filled with a lot of heritage buildings and monuments. The attraction of the territory includes Botanical Garden, International yoga festival, annual French Food festival organized by The Department of Tourism of Pondicherry. The historical French connection is still evident here after a half a century of independence. Puducherry is a visual treat for tourists with its calm spirituality, soft breezing beaches, cobbled streets, elegant houses, the backwaters, temples, churches, mosques, antique furniture galleries, Cotton textile mills, handmade paper, leather aromatics and particularly pleasant shopping experience. If you want to have a memorable vacation, no doubt, Puducherry is worth spending tourist destination and wonderful place ever.<sup>1</sup>



**Source:** *flashpackatforty.com* (**Promenade -Beach Road, Pondicherry**)

**Promenade (Beach Road):** The 1.5km long promenade running along the beach is the pride of Pondicherry. There one can relax or take a stroll at any time of the day. Unfortunately, it is impossible to swim in this beach because of the seawalls.

**Serenity beach:** This beach is a ten minutes drive to the north of the town. This virgin beach, with its serene surroundings is an ideal place to laze away your day. It is ideal for relaxation, a quick dip and sun bathing. The Serenity Beach is 1.5km long. It's a beautiful, cool and clean place.

**Paradise Beach (Plage Paradisio):** It is situated about 8km away from Pondicherry towards Cuddalore Main Road, in Chunnambar near the mouth of the backwater. The sand is pristine and the water, clean and clear. It's an ideal place for sun bathing and beach sports. The beach can only be accessed by boat.

***Auroville Beach (Repos Beach):*** The Auroville Beach as the name indicates is close to Auroville. It is right opposite the road leading to Auroville. It is located around 10km from the main Pondicherry town. Its shallow waters and small waves make it an ideal place of swimming. It is a fairly popular destination on weekends. On weekdays it is relatively less crowded.

---

### **Andaman & Nicobar Islands**

---

India has almost a 6000 km long coastline, which is home to some of the finest beaches in the world. Andaman & Nicobar Islands has many beautiful, crystal clear and fine eco-friendly beaches. Andaman & Nicobar Islands have also recently been recognized as a world-class eco-tourist destination to discover the underwater treasures of marine life. Andaman & Nicobar Islands has many sandy crystal clear beaches and it's an eco-friendly tourist destination. Despite the tropical climate of the region, beaches of Andaman and Nicobar Islands offer a calm and cool environment that add to the beauty of the turquoise blue waters. The beaches at Andaman and Nicobar Islands also support a diverse range of marine life and water sports. Some of the popular types of the water sports that the beaches in this region offer include swimming, scuba diving, water-skiing windsurfing etc. The most amazing feature of the beaches in Andaman and Nicobar Islands is that they do not have any such major man made developments such as beach side cafes or parks, etc., but they are still one of the star attractions for tourists. The reason is their all pervasive beauty which is nature's gift. Once you are at the Andaman and Nicobar Islands beaches, you are sure to soak yourself in the eternal beauty of the place.



**Source:** pritskulkarni.blogspot.com (**Corbyn's Cove Beach**)

***Carbyn's Cove Beach:*** Carbyn's cove beach, the coconut-palm-fringed beach, ideal for sun basking is 6 km away from Port Blair town. Historical remains like Japanese bunkers can be seen on the way. The Snake Island, situated just across the beach is famous for Scuba Diving.

***North Bay Beach:*** North Bay beach is just north of Port Blair. The beach and the snorkelling opportunities in its fringing coral reefs are the closest ones you will find to Port Blair, and therefore, it gets quite crowded.

**Munda Pahar Beach, Chidiya Tapu:** Before the sunset, enjoy a swim at Munda Pahar Beach, which is 1 km ahead of the bus stand at Chidiya Tapu.

**Wandoor Beach:** Twenty Five Kms. from west of Port Blair is Wandoor Beach famous for swimmings & for Coral Viewing. One can also go to Mahatma Gandhi Marine National Park from Wandoor by boat. Situated near Tirur, this place has a beautiful sandy beach with shallow water. It is suitable for swimming, sun basking and sunset viewing.

**Radhanagar Beach:** is one of the two popular beaches located at Havelock Island in Andaman and Nicobar Islands. The other one is Vijaynagar Island. The serene beach which is far away from the polluted cities and towns has a majestic spell that attracts tourists to its beauty. Radhanagar Beach of Andaman and Nicobar Islands is situated at a place which is 7 kilometers away from Dolphin Yatri Niwas at Havelock Island. The beach is the favourite among all nature lovers who love to explore the nature of different places.

**Harminder Bay Beach:** is counted amongst one of the most exquisite beaches of Andaman and Nicobar Islands. The beach is sited 100 kilometers away from Port Blair at Hut Bay Island. You can travel to the pristine beach through ships run by Inter Islands shipping services from Port Blair.

**Ramnagar Beach:** is situated in the northern region at the Diglipur Island and is accessible through water and road. The sandy beach is only 15 kilometers away from Kalighat. The beach is surrounded by palm and coconut trees and other coastal shrubs.

Other Beaches to explore in Andaman's are Sylvan Sands, Chidyatapu, South Andaman; Cinque Island, South Andaman; North Bay, South Andaman; Collinpur, North Passage Island; Merk Bay, Neil Island etc.<sup>1</sup>

---

#### 10.4 Natural Manifestations of Touristic Significance

---

##### **Kerala**

---

Kerala's green hills dotted with colonial bungalows, waterfalls and lakes, protected forests home to endangered wildlife, exotic spice plantations and panoramic views make it hard not to be tempted into some biped action. Kerala is a true paradise for tourist. Kerala has emerged as the tourism hub of India. The breathtaking backwaters, exotic hill-stations and serene beaches make Kerala a perfect tourist destination. There is no doubt why the National Geographic Traveller voted Kerala as Paradise on earth. Kerala is the home to various cultures, traditions and landscapes. The different landscapes of Kerala make it a one stop destination for tourist seeking fun, adventure and relaxation. The canals and lagoons make Kerala backwaters a must-see attraction in your visit to Kerala.<sup>1</sup>

**Backwater's of Kerala:** The backwaters of Kerala are made up of over 900 km of interconnected waterways, rivers, lakes and inlets. The backwaters of Kerala are marked by a unique ecosystem wherein lagoons, lakes, canals, estuaries and deltas of several rivers meet the Arabian Sea. While hill resorts and beaches can be found in several parts of India, the backwaters are found only in Kerala. The Kerala backwater tours offer a perfect blend of scenic attractions and tranquility. One can travel on a traditional houseboat and enjoy the beauty of Kerala backwaters which make their way through a number of towns and cities.

Kerala backwaters map provides a clear picture of various backwater tour destinations in Kerala. Some of the popular destinations for Kerala Backwater tours are: Kochi is one of the most visited Kerala Backwater destinations. Many backwater cruises begin or end in Cochin. Kerala backwater tourist attractions of Cochin can be enjoyed while staying at hotel or by staying at backwater houseboats while on Kerala backwater tours.



Source: team-bhp.com (*Alappuzha backwaters*)

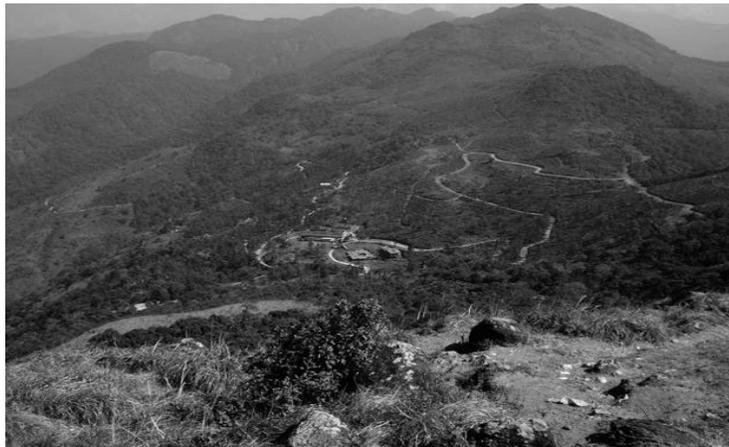
*Alappuzha* is a district of immense natural beauty. The best companion for exploring this place is the Kerala backwater houseboat. One can enjoy touring the attraction of Alappuzha in Kerala Backwaters India. Alappuzha is also famous for the Snake Boat Races held every year on Onam festival. The Kerala backwaters around *Kollam*, which extend from the Ashthamudi Lake, are mesmerizing. The boat rides on the sun-kissed water scores brownie points with most of the tourists visiting the Kollam backwaters. The splendid town of Kollam is renowned for being the gateway to the beautiful backwaters of Kerala. The backwater tour from Kollam to Alappuzha is the longest backwater tour in Kerala.

*Kasargod* backwaters in Kerala offer holiday of a lifetime. The bewitching sunset on a Chandragiri cruise is an edenic and idyllic experience. One of the top draws of this journey is a ride on the Kettuvallam or the knot-boats. Tourists can also enjoy premier facilities at the Kerala backwaters houseboat. Kottayam is a beautiful Kerala backwater tour destination. The famous *Vembanad Lake* makes Kottayam a popular backwater of Kerala. One can see the historic churches and temples of Kottayam during Kerala backwater tours. The unexplored backwaters of *Kozhikode* are popular for boating and water sports. Kozhikode is known for its historic buildings, beautiful green countryside, beautiful beach, hospitality and cosmopolitan culture. *Kumarakom* backwater in Kerala is an enamouring site with its exotic bionetwork. The extensive paddy fields, luxuriant mangrove forests and

coconut woods, white lilies and variety of natural elements of the Kumarakom backwater is a must visit on Kerala backwater tours.

*Thiruvallam* is a popular Kerala backwater tour destination. It is at the confluence of the two rivers, Killi and Karamana that Thiruvallam stands and the backwaters here are more special because of having been fed by them. The natural beauty of the region is enhanced by these river banks.<sup>1</sup>

**Hill stations in Kerala:** Kerala Hill stations Tours present yet another facet of God's Own Country. The high and rugged Western Ghats endow the state with a number of Hill stations, which unlike the rest of the state have a high rate of tourist influx during the summer months. If you seek to beat the heat or enjoy the cozy comfort of Nature or wish to trek on the woody mountain trails or if you are simply answering the "call of the mountains", get away to one of these beautiful chilly places in Kerala. The undulating paths, the rich variety of flora and fauna available, the beautiful gorges and valleys and the sparkling silver streams that skip and dance through the rocks, the settling clouds that one can walk through and the fresh plucked green tea, brewed hot- this is the irresistible lure of the land. The major Hill resorts of Kerala are: Munnar, Ponmudi, Peerumade, Neliyampathy, Peruvannamuzhi, Tusharagiri, Wayanad, Pythal Mala, Ezhimala, Ranipuram, Devikulam, Wagamon etc.



Source: bharatdarshan.info (Ponmudi in Kerala, Hill station)

**Waterfalls:** The forests of Western Ghats are punctuated with large and small waterfalls that gurgle and splash down the mountain side. The wooded forests of Western Ghats are hidden with cascading showers. The important waterfalls in Kerala are Athirapally, Vazhachal, Palaruvi & Tusharagiri. *Athirampally and Vazhachal Waterfalls:* It is a 800 foot high waterfalls at the entrance of the Sholayar ranges and is a famous picnic spot for backpackers. The falls are very popular with tourists. Athirappally is located 78 kms from Kochi, located at the entrance to Sholayar ranges; this waterfall is a popular picnic spot. According to the onlookers, one of the most bewitching sights, Athirappally Falls is about 80ft. high and located in the forest area combined with the greenery; it infuses freshness into any tired soul. The Athirappally Falls join the Chalakkudy River after plummeting a drop of

80 feet. Vazhachal is a picturesque spot just a short drive from Athirapally and is adjacent to dense green forestland. Vazhachal is part of the Chalakkudy River. Both the waterfalls, their cool, misty waters cascading down in the backdrop of thick green forest and rocky terrain, are a scintillating experience to visitors. *Palaruvi waterfalls or 'stream of milk'*: It is 75 Kms away from Kollam on the Kollam-Shenkottai road near Aryankavu, is the Palaruvi waterfalls. There are frequent buses from Kollam to Aryankavu. There you can see ruins of ancient temples. The water is said to be medicated as it flows down from the forest and is said to be a preventive for many diseases.



Source: [kkasturi1.blogspot.com](http://kkasturi1.blogspot.com) (Athirampally Fall in Kerala)

**Thusharagiri Waterfalls:** Snuggled cosily in the Western Ghats, are the gurgling waterfalls of Thusharagiri. Meaning the snow capped mountains; Thushargiri exhibits a unique kinship between the land and water. The three waterfalls on the backdrop of the Western Ghats provide an exhilarating and spellbinding sight to the visitor. The best roar of the waterfalls can be enjoyed from September to November. The waterfall with its gentle spray is sure to soothe every eye. The cascading waters of the waterfall slides past with surfy smiles. Two streams originating from the Western Ghats meet here to form the Chalippuzha River. The river diverges into three waterfalls creating a snowy spray, which gives the name, 'Thusharagiri'. Of the three, the highest waterfall is the Thenpara that falls from an altitude of 75 metres. Situated at Kodencherry in Kozhikode district, the plantation destination that abounds in rubber, arecanut, pepper, ginger and spices is also a trekker's delight.<sup>1</sup>

### Village Life

Kerala - a symphony composed in the strings of beauty and a land endowed with myriad of boons and bounties that bestowed it the glory of being god's own country. The rural life in Kerala, untouched by the mighty hands of industrialization and much of the repulsive transformation of urban sophistication, offers a paradisaal experience to the traveller. The serene backwaters, swaying coconut farms, soothing paddy fields everything makes the village life of Kerala a memorable experience. Far from the tumult and turmoil of the cities these villages usher us into a world where contentment and peace prevail. *Kumarakom*, a cluster of little islands in Kottayam district, is one of the favourite tourist villages in Kerala. Spread on the cold water of Vembanad Lake Kumarakom

is well known for its fresh water fish species like the Karimeen (pearl spot), Chemmeen (shrimp) and prawns. *Kovalam* an internationally renowned beach town on the Arabian Sea and a favourite haunt of tourists especially Europeans. The coastal village life of Kovalam is vibrant and rich with a variety of activities like coir manufacturing, coconut leaf weaving, fish markets and the like. *Crafts village near Kozhikode*, Pioneering another novel model to promote tourism, Kerala Tourism Department has set up an exclusive crafts village where traditional artisans can showcase skills and products, and sell them at fair prices while a visiting foreigner can pick up one or two lessons of subtleties of crafts-making. This new model for the development of tourism sector, while helping the craftsmen to ensure better compensation for their toil out, has taken shape at a sprawling 20-acre land, at Iringal on the shores of enchanting river Chaliyar near Kozhikode.<sup>1</sup>

### **Wildlife sanctuaries & National Parks**

Kerala has a forest area of 11,125 sq km, which covers almost 29 percent of the total land area of the state. There are Five National Parks and 13 Wildlife Sanctuaries in Kerala. These parks and sanctuaries cover 2250 sq km, which is 24 percent of the total forest area and 6 percent of the total land area of the state. All these National Parks and sanctuaries are famous tourist destinations and are frequently visited by tourists to experience the enjoyment of watching wildlife in their natural habitat and to get a feel of the scenic excellence of Kerala. The dense tropical rainforests of Kerala house a veritable treasure of exotic flora and fauna and an astounding variety of wildlife have found their habitat in the state. The Government (both central and state) has taken extreme measures to conserve the forests and preserve the fast vanishing species of animals and insects here. A number of wildlife sanctuaries and national parks have been built here and these are major attractions for tourists to the state.

*Chinnar Wildlife Sanctuary:* Located 50 km from Devikulam of Idukki district in Kerala, the Chinnar Wildlife Sanctuary houses a host of fierce animals found in the Indian forests such as elephants, sambars, leopards and gaurs. The sanctuary is dedicated to preserving the Grizzled Giant Squirrel and the Star Tortoise., both highly endangered species

*Eravikulam National Park:* This lush expanse of flora rich national part was established to preserve the Nilgiri Tahr or the Nilgiri Ibex. Other creatures habituating this beautiful conserve are elephants, leopards, tigers, malabar civets, sambars, barking deers, nilgais, langurs and pythons.

*Kumarakom Bird Sanctuary:* The Kumarakom Bird Sanctuary is the winter home to a host of bright plumed visitors from cold regions such as Siberia. A birdwatcher's paradise, the sanctuary stands on the banks of the Vembanad Lake allowing the tourists to take the water path to rewarding bird watching.



Source: Flickr.com (Toucan in Periyar National Park)

**Periyar National Park:** Beside the Periyar River, stands the sprawling Periyar National Park (1950) and Tiger Reserve (1978). Built to protect these royal beasts from cruel poachers and to preserve the majestic Indian elephants, the Periyar National Park is a major tourist attraction. Visitors from around the globe come here to undertake a wildlife safari here.

**Silent Valley National Park:** Silent valley national Park or Sairandhrivanam as it is locally called houses about hundreds of species of butterflies and almost 400 species of moths. Other bird and animal life protected by this national park are the Ceylon Frogmouth, the Great Indian Hornbill, the Laughing Thrush, the Malabar squirrel, langurs, lion-tailed Macaques, elephants, tigers, leopards, wild bears, nilgais, sambars and pit viper. The langurs and Lion-tailed macaques are endangered species conserved here.



Source: bharatdarshan.info (Idukki wildlife sanctuary)

**Idukki Wildlife Sanctuary:** Idukki Wildlife Sanctuary covers an area of 77 sq km in the Thodupuzha and Udumpanchola talukas of Idukki and occupies the forested area between the Cheruthoni and Periyar rivers. Idukki Wildlife

Sanctuary is located at a distance of 40 kms from Thodupuzha. The great reservoir formed by the construction of the Idukki arch dam and dams at Cheruthoni and Kulamavu is a major tourist attraction. Lying at an altitude of 450 - 748m above sea level, the pristine forests and green hills around the area provide ample scope for trekking. Besides wildlife viewing and trekking, one can enjoy boat cruises on the lake within the sanctuary, which offers a panoramic view of the surrounding areas. Wild Population of Idukki Wildlife Sanctuary includes Elephants, Bison, Sambhar, Deer, Wild Dogs, Jungle Cats, Tiger, Wild Boar etc. The avian population includes Jungle Fowl, Myna, Laughing Thrush, Black Bulbul, Peafowl, Woodpecker, Kingfisher etc.

***Parambikulam Wildlife Sanctuary:*** Adjacent to the Anamalai Wildlife Sanctuary of Tamil Nadu, this sanctuary sprawls across 285 sq km and offers a fascinating sight of rare wild animals. It abounds in a variety of trees, mainly teak, neem, sandalwood and rosewood. There are three dams within the Parambikulam wildlife sanctuary, , Parambikulam, Thunakadavu and Peruvuripallam. Parambikulam has the largest population of Gaurs (Indian bison). The rich fauna includes tigers, leopards, elephants, sambars, tahrs, wild dogs, Indian muntjacs, spotted deers, jungle cats, bonnet macaques, lion-tailed macaques apart from nearly 150 species of birds.



Source: wayanad.org (Wild Gaur in Wayanad Wildlife Sanctuary)

***Wayanad Wildlife Sanctuary:*** The Wayanad sanctuary is part of the Wayanad plateau and is home to tigers, leopards, elephants and a number of other animals. The sanctuary is an extension of the Bandipur National Park in Kerala at its southern border. Rich in bio-diversity, the sanctuary is an integral part of the nilgiri biosphere reserve, which has been established with the chief objective of conserving the biological heritage of the region. The Wayanad Wildlife Sanctuary comprises of deciduous forest.

---

### **Tamil nadu**

---

The perfect blend of cultural significance and majestic natural beauty makes Tamil nadu one of the most visited Indian tourist destinations. The state also has popular hill stations like Ooty and Kodaikanal that are milestone destinations of Tamil

nadu tourism. Wildlife sanctuaries & National parks of the state are other attractions.

---

### **Backwaters in Tamil nadu**

---

**Pichavaram:** Pichavaram the second largest Mangrove forest in the world, near the temple town of Chidambaram, is one of the unique Eco-tourism spots in South India. The backwaters, inter connected by the Vellar and Coleroon river systems, offer abundant scope for water sports, rowing, Kayak and canoeing. The Pichavaram forest not only offers waterscape and back water cruises, but combines another very rare occurrence - the mangrove forest trees permanently rooted in a few feet of water. The Pichavaram mangroves are considered among the healthiest mangrove occurrence in the world. Pichavaram consists of a number of islands interspersing a vast expanse of water covered with green trees. The area is about 2800 acres and is separated from the sea by a sand bar which is a patch of extraordinary loveliness. The Pichavaram mangrove biotope, with its peculiar topography and environmental condition, supports the existence of many rare varieties of economically important shell and fin fishes. The Pichavaram mangroves attract an appreciable bird population of residents, local migrants and true migrants. At the mangroves, so far, 177 species of birds belonging to 15 orders and 41 families have been recorded. The season for birds is from September to April every year. Peak population of birds could be seen from November to January. This is due to high productive nature (in terms of prey organisms) of the ecosystem and coincidence of the time of arrival of true migrants from foreign countries and local migrants from their breeding grounds across India. The availability of different habitat types such as channels, creeks, gullies, mud flats and sand flats and adjacent sea shore offers ideal habitat for difference species of birds.

**Backwaters of Muttukkadu:** Muttukkadu, located at a distance of 36 km from Chennai, is a small town which serves as the most preferred picnic spot along with backwaters and water activities. Muttukkadu is adorned with greenery, including coconut trees and lush grassland to provide ample shade and to give relaxation to the visitors, making the environment pollution free and breezy. Helped by the fact that the backwaters and the facility of boat house have been developed by the Tamil Nadu Tourism Development Corporation for the visitors to stay and enjoy, the place is visited by hordes every year who come here to enjoy their holidays. The main attraction of this place is windsurfing regatta which is organized every year in the month of February, plus many other water games such as kayaking, boating, canoeing, etc are organized here. Those who are adventurous and fun loving, they can also join the training programs which are held in Muttukkadu. No wonder it is visited by thrill seekers as well as peace lovers from India and abroad. Prawns and Jellyfishes are well-known in this place and due to these reasons, it is also known as 'the land of flora and fauna'. It is just the perfect destination for

spending holidays with beguilingly exquisite backwaters, peaceful surroundings and a charismatic blend of greenery and gleaming blue.

---

### National parks & sanctuaries

---

The topography of Tamil Nadu is delightfully varied and diverse. Of the 1, 30,058 sq km land area, 17.6% is covered with forest area. These spreads over the plain and on mountain slopes. Dry lands are bestowed with dry-deciduous forests, thorn forests, scrubs and mangroves. The Western Ghats and a few cooler regions are endowed with moist deciduous, wet evergreen forests, sholas and grasslands. There are 5 National Parks and 17 Wildlife Sanctuaries in Tamil Nadu. The famous ones are:

**Indira Gandhi Wildlife Sanctuary and National Park:** Spread over 958 sq kms, this sanctuary can be reached through Top slip in Anamalai Hills on the Western Ghats. An ecological Paradise, this sanctuary encompasses a National Park with an area of 108 sq kms. About 800 species out of 2000 South Indian Flora are distributed here. This sanctuary nurtures Arboreal animals like lion tailed macaque, bonnet macaque, Common Langur, nilgiris langur, Malabar Giant squirrel and Grizzled Giant Squirrel. The ground animals listed are: Tiger, Panther, Elephant, Gaur, Pangolin, Sambar, Spotted Deer, Barking Deer, Mouse Deer, Wild boar, Dhole, Sloth Bear, Porcupine, Nilgiris Tahr, Civet Cat and Taddy Cat. The Avifauna includes Racket Tailed Drongo, Black Headed Oriole, Paradise Flycatcher, Whistling Thrush, Emerald Dove, Green pigeon, Tickell's Flower Pecker, Rufus Wood Pecker, Rose Ringed Parakeet, Black Eagle, Great Indian, Malabar pied Hornbill, Fiary Blue Bird and green billed malkhoha etc.



**Source:** homestay360.com (**Mudumalai Wildlife Sanctuary**)

**Mudumalai Wildlife Sanctuary:** Located in Nilgiri Hills, the offshoot of the Western ghats meet the eastern ghats. This 321 sq km wide sanctuary encompasses a National Park measuring an area of 103 sq kms.

**Mukkurthi National Park:** Located on the high altitudes of the Nilgiris, 40 kms from Udhagamandalam. It contains a viable population of Nilgiri Tahr (*Hemitragus himalocrius*), Sambar, Nilgiri Marten, Barking deer

**Kalakkadu Wildlife Sanctuary:** Situated in an area of 223 sq kms in the Tirunelveli District. Wildlife seen in the sanctuary includes Lion Tailed Macaque, Nilgiri Langur, Bonnet Macaque and common Langur, Nilgiri Tahr.

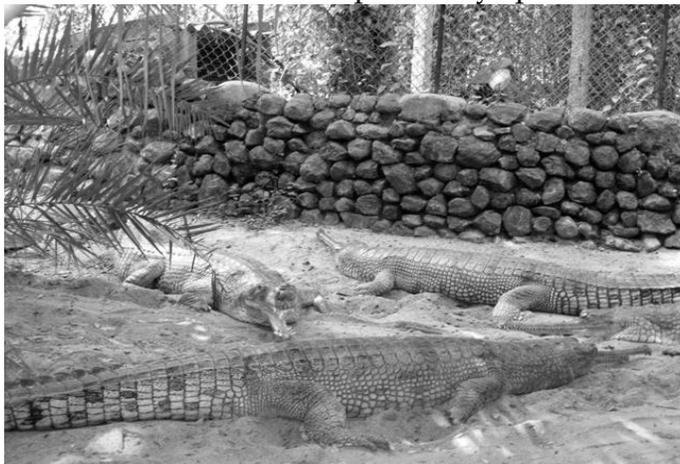
**Mundanthurai Wildlife Sanctuary:** Situated in an area of 567 sq kms in the Tirunelveli District. Animal wealth includes Tiger, Bonnet Macaque, Langurs, Slender Loris.



**Source:** animaladventurer.blogspot.com (**Blackbucks in Point Calimere Wildlife Sanctuary**)

**Point Calimere Wild Life Sanctuary:** Sprawling on 17.26 sq km surrounded by sea and shore, comprising forests of tidal swamps, this sanctuary is situated in Nagapattinam district. It is bestowed with populations of varied wild life such as Chittal, Wild Boar.

**Srivilliputhur Grizzled Squirrel Wild Life Sanctuary:** Located in Virudhunagar District, 45 kms off Virudhanagar Town. Interesting species are Flying Squirrel, Tree Shrew, Elephant, Lion-Tailed Macaque, many species of birds.



**Source:** ebharatdarshan.blogspot.com (**Guindy National Park**)

**Guindy National Park:** Situated in Chennai. Compositions of animals Black Buck, Chital, Jackal, Pangolin and a variety of Avi fauna.

**Vallanadu Black Buck Sanctuary:** A scrub forest area spread over to 16.41 sq km this sanctuary is situated in Thuthukudi (Tuticorn) District. Blackbuck, Spotted Deer, Macaques, Jungle cat, Mongoose and hares are plenty. This sanctuary can be visited through out the year.

**Vedanthangal And Karikili Bird Sanctuaries:** Situated in the Kanchipuram district. In all 115 species of birds have been recorded in this sanctuary.

**Arignar Ann Zoological Park - Chennai**

Situated in the outskirts of Chennai. More than 170 species of Mammals, Aviaries & reptiles are exhibited.

**The Madras Crocodile Bank Trust - Nemmeli:** This Crocodile Bank has been established with an aim to protect and conserve the endangered reptiles such as crocodiles, Alligators etc. Situated 14 kms from Mamallapuram, this trust now houses more than 6 species of crocodiles.

**Viralmalai:** This small town is situated south of tiruchirapalli, is bestowed with a large number of wild Peacocks, which roam around the Murugan Temple situated here.

**Gulf Of Mannar Marine National Park:** This a marine Bio Sphere, running along with coasts of Ramanathapuram and Tutthukudi (Tuticorn) Districts. This national Park is full of coral reefs, Dolphins, Turtles.

---

## Waterfalls

---

The eternal rhythm of the gurgling, cascading waterfalls in many parts of Tamil Nadu. Ecology is well preserved in the waterfalls around Tamil Nadu.



**Source:** jamesxyz.wordpress.com (Courtallam Waterfalls, Tamil Nadu)

**Courtallam Waterfalls:** The 'Spa of South' is situated at an elevation of 167mts in the Western Ghats. This is a popular health resort. Its waterfalls are known for their curative and recuperative properties. It is situated about 160 kms. south of Madurai. A shower in the cascading waters is a great experience. There are nine waterfalls here, Main falls, Chitraruvi, Shenbagadevi falls, Honey falls, Five falls,

Tiger falls, Old falls, Fruit farm falls and the New falls. Its bracing season extends particularly from June to September. Excursions : Tiruchendur Murugan Temple(99kms), Tirunelveli(58kms), Krishnapuram(68kms), Tenkasi(5kms) and the Mundanthurai Tiger Sanctuary(75kms). Hogenakkal means "Smoking Rock" has got the name because of the smoke like appearance created by the spray of the plunging waters of River Kaveri at this spot. The falls, the rugged scenery and the enchanting natural attractions have made it an ideal holiday spot. It is a health resort known for its waterfalls with medicinal properties, set amidst lush green woods. 'Parisal' (a boat made of palm fibre) ride through River Cauvery will be a pleasant experience. Hogenakkal is famed for the curative power of its waters. Surrounded by mountains, this place now offers a quiet holiday in comfort. It is 65 kms. from Salem.



Source: commons.wikimedia.org (Hogenakkal Waterfalls)

**Hogenakkal Waterfalls:** Attaru" river passes through the Elagiri hills and falls from 30 mtr. height at Jadaiyanur on the other side of the hills. This could either be reached from Tirupphthur(15 kms.) or by an hour's trek from the hills. Adjacent to the Jalagambarai falls, there is a Murugan temple located within a building constructed in the shape of a lingam. **Kumbakkarai Falls:** An amazing feat of Nature, the Kumbakkarai Falls is yet another jewel in the crown of Tamil Nadu's tourist attractions. Comparatively less known, these falls offer a breath taking view of the fascinating interaction between gushing water and solid rocks. Add a verdant and wild backdrop and you have an exquisite sight. Situated on the foothills of the Kodaikanal hills, the falls are located 8 kms from Periyakulam. The water from these falls is full of the goodness of minerals and herbs. There are two stages in these falls. At the first stage water gathers in huge rocks recesses which are variously named after wild animals such as tiger, elephant, snake etc., before falling as the main fall. **Suruli falls:** The Suruli falls which falls from a height of 150 feet gathers into a pool, flows for a short distance and again plummets to a depth of 40 feet , offering a spectacular sight of nature's raw and wild beauty. The dense forests that surround it provide an awesome backdrop. Facilities are available for men and women to bathe separately in these falls. The special feature of the fall is that it is a "round the year" falls. However the best season to visit is June - October, when the thickness of the water column is astounding. The beauty

of this fall finds mention in Tamil Epic, Silappathikaram written by poet Ilango. Cloud Land Falls popularly known as Chinna Suruli is situated 54 kms from Theni near Kombathozhu village. These falls originate in the Megamalai. Tiger Falls is a dainty fall on the route to Munnar between Bodi and Bodimettu from Theni. **Killiyur Falls:** Killiyur Falls is a 90-foot high waterfalls is situated amidst picturesque surroundings in Yercaud. Akasagangai waterfalls is on Kolli hills which is known for medical herbs and plants. **Kalhatty Water Falls:** Kalhatty Water Falls, is located on the Kalhatty slopes and about 13 kms. from Ooty. Law's falls(7kms.) is situated in the Ghat RF of Coonoor forest range. the height of the falls is about 180 feet. St.Catherine Falls, located at 8 kms, the enoviron of the falls has beautiful scenery. **Fairy Falls:** Fairy Falls, is a delightful picnic spot just 5kms away from Kodai Lake. It is a wondrous waterfall. Silver Cascade is 8kms from Kodai lake. The overflow of Kodai Lake comes down here as a 180 foot high waterfall. Thalaiyar falls also known as Rat Tail falls, is one of the highest waterfalls in the world(975 foot high). It can be seen while climbing the Ghat Road to Kodaikanal from Kodai Road. It is not possible to visit this spectacular waterfall, as there is no approach route to this site.

---

### Hill stations

---

Tamil Nadu offers some of the most beautiful hill stations. Trekking, Hang-gliding, fishing and golf are just some of the activities you can take part in on these hill stations. **Kodaikanal** referred to as 'The Princess of Hill Stations', is situated amidst the folds of the verdant Palani hills in the Western Ghats at an altitude of about 2133 m. Kodaikanal is one of the most frequented hill resorts in India. With its spectacular rocks, tranquil woods, lovely lake and intoxicating air, Kodaikanal is an ideal hill resort for the tourists from all over. The pride of Kodaikanal is the 'Kurinji-flower', which blossoms once in 12 years. The hill-plantain fruits and plums are known for their freshness and taste. Kodaikanal lies pretty in the Palani Hills of Tamil Nadu. The summer retreat of Kodaikanal literally means 'gift of the forest'.



**Source:** hearty-india.com (**Kodaikanal**)

**Coonoor** is the second largest hill station in the Nilgiris, surrounded by tea plantations. It stands at an altitude of 1839 metres. It is essentially a small tea garden town where the weather is pleasantly cool through the year. It falls on the toy-train line between Mettupalayam (28 km) and Ooty. A popular pastime here

is birdwatching as it is home to an extensive array of birds. The main attraction of course is Sim's Park, a small botanical garden that boasts of a wide variety of plants. It offers panoramic views of the Nilgiris, its hills and valleys lush with tea shrubs and eucalyptus trees. There is a quaint hill market which peddles leaf tea and essential oils. Although the height of summer is peak season, winter too is enjoyable in its own special way. Sports and honey moon travel.



**Source:** commons.wikimedia.org (**Botanical garden in Ooty**)

*Ooty* (Ootacamund) the Queen of the Hill Stations, also known as Blue Mountains is one of the most beautiful hill stations in India. This hill station has splendid green downs and lofty hills of extraordinary scenic beauty and is endowed with a salubrious climate similar to the English summer. Located in the Western Ghats at a height of 7,500ft. Ooty nestles in an amphitheater created by four majestic hills- Doddabetta, Snowdon, Elk Hill and Club Hill. These hills are part of the Nilgiri ranges that are really the meeting point for the Western and the Eastern Ghats. **Kotagiri:** Kotagiri is a pristine little town, situated about 16 km from Ooty. Situated at an altitude of 1,950 mts, it was developed as a summer retreat for the British during the colonial days. **Yercaud** is a hill station in Salem District, in Tamil Nadu, India. It located in the Shevaroy's range of hills in the Eastern Ghats; the Yercaud hill area is called the Shevaroy Hills. It is situated at an altitude of 1515 metres (4970 ft) above sea level, and the highest point in Yercaud is the Servarayan temple, at 5,326 feet (1,623 m). It is so named owing to the abundance of trees categorised as a forest near the lake, the name signifying Lake Forest. As a popular tourist destination, Yercaud is also called as Jewel of the South. Yercaud is connected to city of Salem, Tamil Nadu through Highway of 28 km.

---

## Pondicherry

---

A Tamil culture with a strong French flavor and loads of cosmopolitan tendencies make Pondicherry, a place definitely worth a visit. Blessed gracefully by nature, the entire region is dotted by pretty water bodies, stretching greens and a serene ambience. Mostly untouched and least crowded, the calm and serenity that Pondicherry affords is simply amazing. The serenity of the place drew Sri Aurobindo Ashram here which in turn attracts millions who come here in pursuit of spirituality. A famous monument here is the Aayi Mandapam at the centre of the Park. The French Consulate, Raj Nivas, the former palace of Dupleix, Botanical

Gardens, Chunnambar boat house, Bharathi Park, Museum, Romain Rolland Library, Botanical Garden, Anglo-French textile mills, the 400-year old banyan tree at Keezhoor are some places worth visiting Pondicherry. The city is also a comfortable base to explore other interesting places around. Auroville, the city of unity, Kanchipuram, the temple town, Mamallapuram, the heritage town are some important places that can be visited conveniently, making Pondicherry the base.

**Chunnambar Backwater:** Chunnambar Boat House is situated 8km from Pondicherry, along Cuddalore Main Road. This tropical paradise is a great place for relaxation. The beach at Chunnambar also known as Plage Paradiso, is located near the mouth of the backwater. The sand is pristine and the water, clean and clear. It's an ideal place for sun bathing and beach sports. If you take a short and pleasant cruise into the sea, you will be able to see playful dolphins in natural habitat. Chunnambar Beach and Backwater Resort has backwater boat tours, trekking and picnics on Paradise Beach. The resort offers various kinds of rental boats (speed, motor, sail, row paddled and paddled boat), beach volleyball and other beach sports. Seagulls, the multicuisine restaurant-bar specialises in Chinese and Tandoori food. The restaurant too has a view of the backwaters. It also serves food in the huts just outside the restaurant. You can also order a picnic lunch to the beach. <sup>1</sup>

---

## Wildlife

---

***Ousteri Wetland and National Park:*** Ousteri Wetland and National Park are situated approximately 10 km from the town of Pondicherry on the main Pondicherry-Villuppuram Road. The entire wetland covers an area of around 390 hectares and is geographically located in both Pondicherry and Tamil Nadu. It also has a large number of aquatic species and is essentially a bird sanctuary. There are several small herbs and huge trees present at this place that supports migratory avifauna and native birds. Ousteri Lake and Boat House are also located at this site, which are visited by several tourists. The Ousteri Lake is one of the biggest lakes in the town, which is the major source of drinking water. This site is frequented by several tourists year-round, especially by those interested in watching birds and boating.<sup>1</sup>

***Bharathi Park or Government Park (Place du Gouvernement):*** The Park located in the heart of Pondicherry, is one of the most beautiful public spots in town, with its lawns, flower beds, fountains and shady trees. Around it stand many stately buildings:

***Aayi Mandapam (Water Monument):*** Situated in the centre of the park, this is a gleaming white monument built during the reign of Napoleon III, Emperor of France. The monument, built in Greco-Roman architecture, commemorates both the provision of good drinking water for the population and the good deed of Aayi, a 16th century lady some 300 years before. The Aayi Mandapam has become the

unmistakable centre from which four lanes divide the Park in four almost equal parts. Some exquisitely carved monolithic pillars, brought to Pondicherry from the Gingee Fort after its capture in 1751, adorn the place.

**The Botanical Garden:** The Botanical Garden is located south of the New Bus Stand. The Botanical Garden was opened in 1826. The gardens have a variety of rare and exotic plants, beautiful flowers, pruned trees, gravel lined paths, fountains and an aquarium. With over 1500 species of plants, this could actually be qualified as one of the best botanical garden in South India. The gardens also have a musical fountain which is active in the evening time during the week end.

---

### Andaman & Nicobar Islands

---

The Andaman and Nicobar Islands, located in the Bay of Bengal (east of the Indian mainland geographically), is a splendid tropical island outpost, belonging to India but closer to south east Asia. From being known as 'Kalapani' (Black waters) due to the atrocious history of the British Regime in India, to being known as one of the best tourist destinations of India, Andaman Islands have come a long way. They are no more being called by that name. These islands were once a hill range extending from Myanmar to Indonesia, but are now a group of 572 near deserted islets (small islands), covered with lush forests and endless varieties of exotic flora and fauna. Incredible corals and marine life, crystal clear water and mangrove-lined creeks lure travellers to these picturesque islands. While the sandy beaches form as nesting homes to turtles, animals such as spotted deer, wild boar, gecko, crab-eating macaque and python can be spotted in the 86% area still covered by dense forests. These islands were populated mainly by indigenous tribes until the beginning of the colonial rule, but the majority of the population now, comprise of mainland settlers who live in and around Port Blair, the capital of South Andaman. Even with tourist infrastructure developments, these islands still remain virgin in the sense of unpolluted natural beauty and unexplored marine life. There if you wish to visit these islands, you would have a good time there.

### Islands

The islands of Andaman and Nicobar are truly spectacular as the qualities possessed by them deserves some sincere appreciation. Eager holiday-makers assemble here from all over the world to experience the grandeur of mother nature at her very finest. As a matter of fact, the islands of Andaman and Nicobar actually are the chief tourist attractions. The most frequently visited islands in Andaman and Nicobar are mentioned in the list below:-

**The Jolly Island:** Being situated in the Mahatma Gandhi Marine National Park, this island allows its visitors to witness the gorgeous corals and experience recreational activities like snorkeling.

**Chatham Island:** Previously, this was one of the islands of Andaman and Nicobar that has the reputation of housing the hugest and most veteran saw mill found across the entire continent of Asia. In fact, the dilapidated saw mill can be approached by virtue of a bridge.

**Barren Island:** This is also counted amongst the many islands at Andaman and Nicobar and is home to the solitary volcano in India that is active.

**Ross Island:** This Island is blessed with a rich British heritage and houses a museum that displays snaps along with other crucial artifacts belonging to the British era. The name of the museum is 'Smritika'.

**Viper Island:** The maiden jail was erected in this eventful island that has seen the ends of numerous convicts including Sher Ali who assassinated Lord Mayo, the Viceroy of India.<sup>1</sup>



Source: [greenogreindia.org](http://greenogreindia.org) (Volcano in Barren Island, Andaman)

---

## Wildlife

---

When everything in Andaman and Nicobar is unique, how could wildlife remain behind? Andaman and Nicobar is home to some exclusive flora and fauna that stays hidden in the deep jungles of these islands or in the lagoons surrounding the islands. Andaman and Nicobar Islands are also a great place for all the enthusiastic bird watchers. The main attraction among birds definitely is the Nicobari Pigeon.

**Great Nicobar Biosphere Reserve:** Situated in The Great Nicobar Island, the biggest island of Nicobar group, the reserve covers an area of 885 sq. km, nearly 85% of the total land area of Great Nicobar Island. It was declared as a Reserve in January

of 1989. It incorporates two National parks of India namely *Cambell Bay National Park* on the northern part of the island and *Galathea National Park* on the southern part. The main attraction of the reserve are Nicobar scrubfowl, the Edible-nest Swiftlet, the Nicobar Long-tailed Macaque, saltwater crocodile, giant Leatherback Sea Turtle, Malayan box turtle, Nicobar tree shrew, reticulated python and the giant robber crab.

**Saddle Peak National Park:** Saddle Peak National Park was started in Andaman district in the year 1979. It spreads on an area of 33sq.km. Situated just 5km from Diglipur, it is nearly 200km from Port Blair which is the administrative centre of Andaman and Nicobar Islands and also the nearest airport. The forest area of the islands is covered by thick tropical rain forests. The main vegetation is generally conducive to humid, warm and wet tropical climate. The main animal species in the park comprises Andaman wild pig, water monitor lizard, and salt water crocodile. The important birds found here are Andaman hill mynah and imperial pigeon. The best time to visit the park is between November and March. For accommodation, there are two rest houses inside the park.

**Mahatma Gandhi Marine National Park:** Covering an area of 281sq.km, Marine National Park is just 20 km from the capital of Andaman and Nicobar Island, Port Blair. The park is spread over 15 islands of Labyrinth group of Islands towards the West Coast of south Andaman. Each Island has diverse flora and that comprises of moist deciduous evergreen forests and mangroves in small numbers. The island shores are nesting grounds for 5 different types of tropical sea turtles. The main attraction for most tourists to this park is the living coral reefs and colorful marine life. Water-monitor, lizard, wild boar, sea snakes are other animal species that are found here. December to April is the best months for visiting the park.

---

**12.5 Check Your Progress:**

---

1) Name any three popular beaches of Karnataka?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**2) Which Island in Karnataka is known as National Geological Monument?**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**3) Name any two beaches in Goa?**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**4) Name any three beaches in Andhra Pradesh?**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**5) Name two sanctuaries in Karnataka?**

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**6) Name two sanctuaries/ National Parks in Andhra Pradesh?**

.....  
.....

7) Name two waterfalls in Karnataka?

.....

.....

.....

.....

**10.6 Summary**

In this unit we learned about natural fabric & beauty of the states of Kerala, Tamil nadu, Pondicherry & Andaman & Nicobar Islands. We learned that apart from the heritage, these places, are also blessed with bounties of nature such as beaches, backwaters, sanctuaries, national parks, forests, flora, fauna, waterfalls, eco-places and a lot of opportunities for nature, ecotourism & adventure tourism. Kerala is a true paradise for tourist and home to various cultures, traditions and landscapes. A blend of ancient and modern world, Tamil Nadu offers you myriad of breathtaking sights including the natural beauty. A little piece of France in India, the former enclave of Pondicherry remains a pocket of Gallic charm. Once known as Kalapani - Black Waters - for their role as a feared penal settlement, the Andaman and Nicobar Islands are now a relaxed tropical island outpost that belongs to India but is geographically closer to Southeast Asia. Superb, near-deserted beaches, incredible corals and marine life, an intriguing colonial past and the remnants of a Stone Age culture lure travellers to these mysterious islands, 1000km off the east coast of India in the Bay of Bengal. All these states provide enormous opportunities to tourists to experience beaches & nature.

**10.7 Clues to Answer**

**Check Your Progress**

1. Refer 8.3
2. Refer 8.3
3. Refer 8.3
4. Refer 8.3
5. Refer 8.4
6. Refer 8.4
7. Refer 8.4

---

**REFERENCES**

---

- <http://andamantours.in/aboutus.htm>
- [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Beaches\\_in\\_Kerala](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Beaches_in_Kerala)
- [http://www.kerala-tourism.travelskerala.com/beach&lake\\_tourism.htm](http://www.kerala-tourism.travelskerala.com/beach&lake_tourism.htm)
- <http://www.keralatourism.org/destination/destination.php?id=161>
- <http://www.keralatourism.org/destination/destination.php?id=18>
- <http://www.keralatourism.org/destination/destination.php?id=96>
- <http://www.keralatourism.org/destination/destination.php?id=29>
- <http://www.keralatourism.org/destination/destination.php?id=2132066077>
- <https://www.keralatourism.org/destination/beaches/>
- <http://indianbeachholidays.com/tamil-nadu-beach.htm>
- <http://pondicherrytours.com/puducherry.html>
- <http://andamantours.in/aboutus.htm>
- <http://www.go2andaman.com/beaches-in-andaman-nicobar-island/>
- <http://www.keralaholidays.com/>
- <http://www.mapsofindia.com/maps/kerala/kerala-backwater-map.htm>
- <http://www.keralagreenery.org/waterfalls.html>
- <https://www.keralatourism.org/village-life-kumarakom.php>
- <https://www.keralatourism.org/village-life-kerala.php>
- <http://www.prokerala.com/kerala/tourism/wildlife-sanctuaries.php>
- <http://www.travelmasti.com/domestic/tamilnadu/wildlife.htm>
- <http://www.discovertamilnadu.net/tamilnadu%20dams%20and%20waterfalls.html>
- <http://hillstationholidays.com/tamilnadu.htm>
- [http://www.toutpondi.com/en/inside\\_pondicherry.htm](http://www.toutpondi.com/en/inside_pondicherry.htm)
- <http://www.holidayiq.com/Ousteri-Wetland-and-National-Park-Pondicherry-Sightseeing-514-12770.html>
- <http://www.go2andaman.com/introduction/>

- <http://www.mapsofindia.com/andaman-nicobar-islands/state-tourism/islands.html>
- <http://www.indialine.com/travel/andaman/wildlife.html>

---

## Unit-11

### Maharashtra and Goa

---

**Structure:**

**11.1 Introduction**

**11.2 Objectives**

**11.3 Beaches**

**11.3.1 Maharashtra**

**11.3.2 Goa**

**11.3.3 Diu**

**11.4 Natural Manifestations of Touristic Significance**

**11.4.1 Maharashtra**

**11.4.2 Goa**

**11.4.3 Diu**

**11.5 Check Your Progress**

**11.6 Summary**

**11.7 Clues to Answer**

## 11.1 Introduction

Unit 11 gives detailed information about Beaches & Other Natural Manifestations' of Touristic Significance in India with special reference to Maharashtra, Goa & Diu. These states have got immense potential with regard to nature & nature tourism. And provide a number of opportunities for tourists.

These can range from active to passive and include everything from bushwalking and adventure tourism experiences to sightseeing, scenic driving, beach experiences and wildlife viewing. In many instances a visitor may combine several of these in the one trip. For keen outdoor enthusiasts, and there are many, the great majority of adventure activities directly depend on nature and natural environments for their successful conduct. Fundamentally, the role of nature can vary from 'crucial to the visitor experience' to 'enhances the visitor experience' - particularly in relation to such variables as active or passive measures of the activity involved.

For passive and active visitors alike, nature in these states is also playing an increasingly important role in giving something back to people (relaxing, enriching the spirit, getting back to basics). By doing so, it is able to enhance their broader experience of a destination. And for mainstream domestic visitors, these benefits tap more accurately into nature's deeper meaning. Nature-based experiences are intimately linked to all other aspects of the visitor's total experience of a destination, such as food, culture, relaxation, health, escape, family needs, accommodation, transport, etc. All serve to complement each other and together form the basis of a visitor's overall satisfaction with their holiday.<sup>i</sup>

Maharashtra is located in central India on the west coast of the country. It is the third largest State in the country after Rajasthan and Madhya Pradesh. With a total area of 307,713 sq km, Maharashtra constitutes 9.36% of the total area of India (3,287,263 sq km). The maximum east-west length of Maharashtra is 800 km and north-south length is 700 km. Maharashtra has three types of terrains namely Konkan coastline, Sahyadri mountain range or the Western Ghats and hilly region and the Deccan plateau.<sup>ii</sup> And has tremendous potential for Nature Tourism. Maharashtra offers the adventure lovers, over 45 adventures to choose from across its length and breadth. It has over 550 forts to visit including over 20 Sea Forts, 720

km  
of



coastline, the incredible vistas of its Western Ghats that has superb wildlife and camping possibilities. From water to land to aero, there is a host of adventures to choose from Paragliding, Gliding, Rock climbing, Scuba diving, Snorkeling, Kayaking, Canoeing, Trekking, Wildlife Safari etc.<sup>iii</sup>

Tourism and Goa are synonymous with each other. Goa is one of the most preferred places of holiday in India. It may not be the state to receive maximum number of tourists in India but the state is well known to receive international tourists on a large scale, more than probably any other state in the country. Beauty of sea beaches along with sea food has made Goa well renowned place in India for vacations. Apart from this wildlife of this place also attracts tourists towards itself. There are many wildlife sanctuaries in Goa that are natural habitat of wild animals. The area covered by national parks as well as wildlife sanctuaries is not vast but it is sufficient to offer protection to endanger species of animals and also provide them shelter from any kind of danger. People who are animal lover and are interested in watching different kind of birds in their natural surrounding can surely visit any of the four wildlife sanctuaries of Goa. Trip to these national parks will provide you completely different experience and you will remember it for your whole life. Blossoming green vegetation along with natural surroundings of these sanctuaries is not resisted by the tourist and they never miss to visit this place when touring Goa. It is estimated that forest in Goa nearly enclose 1/3 of state area and offer shelter to innumerable species. There are forty eight species of wild animal; sixty species of dangerous reptiles, more than 200 species of endanger birds along with fifteen hundred species of small plants & vegetation. <sup>iv</sup>

A beautiful blend of sea, sand and sun, Diu is a God's gift to those in quest of a blessed land where the weary weight of this unintelligible world can, for a while, be lightened and the waking soul can hear the music of the nature. This tiny island of breeze, beauty and serenity situated off the southern tip of the Saurashtra (Kathiawar) peninsula of Gujarat, lapped by the Arabian Sea, is a picture of calmness with superb beaches and a fascinating history.<sup>v</sup>

The states of Maharashtra, Goa & Diu surely are Destinations which serve as a boon to tourists not only in variety of tourist products, but also have great opportunities for Beach Tourism, Wildlife Tourism & Nature Tourism.

---

## 11.2 Objectives

---

After going through the Unit 4 on **Beaches & Other Natural Manifestations' of Touristic Significance** with a special reference to Maharashtra, Goa & Diu, you would be able to:

- Know about the popular beaches in Maharashtra, Goa & Diu.
- Know about the natural attractions in Maharashtra, Goa & Diu.
- Understand the role of Natural attractions in attracting tourists.
- Understand the various forms of nature tourism at these places.
- Understand the tourism in Maharashtra, Goa & Diu.

---

### 11.3 Beaches

---

A beach is a landform along the shoreline of an ocean, sea, lake, or river. It usually consists of loose particles, which are often composed of rock, such as sand, gravel, shingle, pebbles, or cobblestones. The particles comprising the beach are occasionally biological in origin, such as mollusc shells or coralline algae. Beaches typically occur in areas along the coast where wave or current action deposits and reworks sediments. Although the seashore is most commonly associated with the word beach, beaches are found by lakes and alongside large rivers.

Beaches are one of the most important coastal ecosystems. In addition to its biodiversity value, the beach has a primary importance for the bulk of holiday tourists. Beaches play a prominent role in Coastal tourism & Recreation. The term "coastal tourism and recreation" embraces the full range of tourism, leisure, and recreationally oriented activities that take place in the coastal zone and the offshore coastal waters.

These include coastal tourism development (hotels, resorts, restaurants, food industry, vacation homes, second homes, etc.), and the infrastructure supporting coastal development (retail businesses, marinas, fishing tackle stores, dive shops, fishing piers, recreational boating harbours, beaches, recreational fishing facilities, and the like). Also included is ecotourism and recreational activities such as recreational boating, cruises, swimming, recreational fishing, snorkelling and diving.<sup>vi</sup>

Along its 7000 km of coastline, India boasts of a number of beautiful beaches. The tranquil environment with abundant greenery around is just perfect to relax and refresh the drained mind and body. Lie on the smooth sandy beaches and soak the warmth of the sun or simply take a quiet walk barefooted on these beaches. The calming effect will easily penetrate deep into your body. The vast stretches of sea water have a unique ability to carry away all your worries and heartaches along with its waves. You can also watch the sun rise and set far in the horizon and appreciate the beauty that is reflected as a reflection in the water and for all those who are more venturesome and yearn for a lot of challenging activities, the beaches have plethora of options to choose from. Swim along with the waves of the ocean water or dive deep into the water to discover a magnificent and colourful marine

world. Also, catch the good waves and duck dive the bigger ones while surfing. Cruising in the ocean water is for those who wish to explore the vastness and deepness of the water body without getting wet.

The states of Maharashtra, Goa and Diu have a lot of beaches & offer lot opportunities to tourists.<sup>vii</sup>

---

### 11.3.1 Maharashtra

---

Beaches of Maharashtra are the apt destinations for an enriching vacation and as a matter of fact, they also make one of the best getaway spots as well. These beaches are spread across the 720 km stretch of coastline starting from Dahanu and Bordi in north and ending in Goa. Apart from exploring the wondrous sea forts, temples and churches, you can enjoy by indulging in an array of water sports and savor a quite sunbathe on the sands.

One can find not only crowded and posh beaches like Juhu and Marine Drive Chowpatty beaches but also earthy and sleepy beaches like Harnai and Bassein, which are a bit slow but provide a peaceful and pollution-free environment. There are beaches for adventure lovers as well like Velneswar and Shriwardhan-Harihareshwar.

In Vijaydurg-Sindhudurg and Dahanu-Bordi beaches, one may went down to the memory lanes of the history. Here, one can discover the remains of ruined forts and even the existence of Portuguese culture in these areas. Murud-Janjira, Dahanu-Bordi and Shriwardhan-Harihareshwar are the beaches, which can enjoy both the sizzles of a typical beach as well as a pilgrimage site.<sup>viii</sup>

---

### BASSEIN

---

Bassein is in the peaceful location, which is 77 km away from Mumbai. It is closely similar with the India's sultry beach state of Goa. But here, crowd is a bit less and those who wish to enjoy peaceful environment must visit Bassein.

This is quite of a historic place. One can see ruined forts that were built by the Portuguese inside dense forests of brushwood and palm grooves. Locals serve delicious Portuguese cuisines as well.

One can also see Buddhist relics at Nalasopara, which is 10 km from Bassein. Vajreshwari Temple, Akloli hot springs, Sadguru Nityanand Maharaj Samadhi Mandir at Ganeshpuri, Bhimeshwar Temple and other ashrams are also worth to visit. There are quite a few churches of Portuguese times as well in Bassein. The nearest airport is in Mumbai, while the nearest railway station is at Bassein Road. It is well connected by road as well.

---

**DAHANU BORDI**

---

Not only for its extensive and tidy beach, Dahanu is also known for its vast chikoo fruit orchards. Dahanu is 145 km away from Mumbai that comes under Thane district of Maharashtra.

Bordi is half-hours drive away from Dahanu. Here, one can find endless beaches, which are very safe and beautiful. Although, it is quite warm during summer, the gentle breeze cools down the entire beach.

Mecca of the Zoroastrians is a place, which is very popular amongst tourists as there is a magnificent temple, which houses the sacred fire of the Zoroastrians. It is believed that this fire has been kept alive for almost a thousand years. The existence of Iranian and Persian culture further makes this place more exotic.

---

**GANAPATIPULE**

---

The waters of Ganapatipule are crystal clear and pristine. The entire stretch of beach is covered with fresh greeneries. The roadside sceneries on the way to Ganapatipule are captivating with narrow roads, red soil, roofed houses, clean courtyards, and innumerable fruit bearing trees and casuarinas lining.

Ganapatipule is regarded as one of the most important beaches of Maharashtra. It is 375 km south of Mumbai. Fine, sifted, silver sands, a gentle lapping sea, which soothes frayed nerves, attracts large number of tourists are the features of this beautiful beach. It is regarded as a beautiful seaside resort, especially for families in Maharashtra. One can see a glimpse of the entire beach, which is covered with white sand and blue waters from the top of the hill. Ganapatipule is also known as a pilgrimage site for its 400-year-old temple of Swayambhu Ganpati (naturally formed monolithic Ganesh). Malgund and Ratnagiri are other attractions, which are worth to be visited near this beach.

---

**HARNAI**

---

Harnai is about 200 km away from Mumbai. Despite its quietness, it is emerging fast as a tourist destination as visitors from Pune and Mumbai are frequently visited this place to celebrate the weekends. Harnai fort is also a main tourist attraction of the area. South of Harnai fort is the palm-fringed beach of Murud, famous for its clean white sands and safe waters. Panhale Kazi, the famous rock-cut monument is 30 km from Murud-Harnai.

---

**JUHU BEACH**

---

Juhu is one of the most popular and posh beaches of India. This fizzing beach on the shores of Arabian Sea is the place where one can find the bungalows of Bollywood stars. This is also a favourite site for film shootings. Luxury hotels and apartments, which are on the southern end of the Juhu beach, are regarded as favourite haunts for movers and shakers of Mumbai. Juhu beach is not a very good place to swim as it is so crowded. Tourists can enjoy horse and donkey rides, dancing monkeys, acrobats, cricket matches, toy sellers etc. here. Versova, home of Mumbai's largest Koli fishing community is in the north of Juhu.

---

**Mandwa Kihim**

---

Kihim and Mandawa is nearly 10 km away from Mumbai. Kihim has dense coconut trees that give a pollution free green environment. This is a place for the nature lovers who want to spend some time with the beauty of the nature.

---

**Madh Island Beach**

---

Even though Madh Island is quite a rural sort, but it is quite enjoyable to walk down along the villages of fishermen. This can at least give some peace of mind to the hurried and exhausted life.

---

**Marine Drive**

---

Marine Drive is the place where Mumbaites hang out to cool down a while from the steamy hurried and busied life. The cool breeze and the calmness of the sea cool down the exhausted lot.

Marine Drive was built in 1920s and 1930s on land reclaimed from the sea. It is located at the heart of Mumbai. As street lamps orderly line up on the edge of the beach, it is also known as Queen's Necklace. It has recently named Netaji Subhashchandra Bose Road. Chowpatty Beach is at the top end of the Marine Drive. Several Hindu religious ceremonies are taking place at Chowpatty like annual thread-tying ceremony, nariel-purnima and Ganesh Chaturthi immersions. Stalls on the beach, selling Bhelpuri, Kulfi and Paan make the chowpatty zesty. Nana-Nani Park for elderly people has just opened recently near the beach. Mumbai has excellent transport and accommodation facilities.

---

**Marve Manori Gorai**

---

Marve, also known as Borivali is a village very close to Mumbai. Now this place has become quite industrialized, but its beauty remains the same.

---

**Murud Janjira**

---

Murud-Janjira is located near Alibagh, which is the head-quarter of Raigad district. It is one of the most popular and alluring beaches of Maharashtra.

---

**Shriwardhan**

---

Shriwardhan is the place for seafood lovers and adventure buffs. Tourists can enjoy different varieties of seafood in this beach. Adventure lovers can go out with a small boat to explore the place where Peshwas were originally resided.

---

**Tarkali**

---

Takarali beach is known for its clearness of water. One can sometimes see the seabed unto a depth of 20 ft. If we look the beach panoramically, one can see the serene beauty with shuru trees and wide Karli River at the background.

---

**Velneswar**

---

Velneswar is an ideal beach for swimming and sunbathing. The green coconut palm grooves and rock free seawater make the beach so beautiful and attractive.

---

**Vengurla Malvan**

---

Vengurla is famous for its long stretch of iridescent sand, lined up with thick cashew, coconut, jackfruit and mango groves. Vengurla rocks or Burnt Islands is so near to this beach.

---

**Vijaydurg Sindhudurg**

---

The great Maratha ruler Chhatrapati Shivaji used Vijaydurg - Sindhudurg as naval base during his reign. So this place has lots of historical sites to see apart from the picturesque beaches. The most important of all is the Vijayadurg fort built by Shivaji in the 17th century.

Sindhudurg has temples dedicated to Bhavani, Mahadeo, Jarimai, Mahapurush and Shivaji spreading over 48 acres. Nearest railway station is Kolhapur, while Sindhudurg is well connected by road as well. It is 510 km, and Vijaydurg is 425 km from Mumbai via the Goa highway.<sup>ix</sup>

---

**11.3.2 GOA**

---

Goa has a coastline of 100 kms that faces the Arabian Sea. Outlets of the state's seven rivers break the straight, uninterrupted coastline. Goa has a variety of breathtaking beautiful beaches for the tourists. A tourist can opt for crowded or some isolated or virgin beaches. One of the most popular Goa beaches is the Anjuna Beach. This beach is a crowded one and a shopper's delight at the same time. Other popular beaches are Vagator beach, Miramar beach, Dona Paula Beach, Colva Beach, Arambol Beach, Bogmalo Beach, Benaulim Beach, Calangute Beach, Chapora Beach, Mabor, Majorda etc. The beaches in Goa are also known by the quality of sand. For ex. Calangute Beach is known for its coconut grove. Shaped like the new moon, Goa's beaches are known the world over. <sup>x</sup>

---

**CALANGUTE**

---

Calangute is the most popular beach with thousands thronging it in both the peak and off-season. The waves rise high above as you wash away your city blues, though swimmer need to be a trifle cautious because of the sudden drop and the rising waves. Experienced swimmers will, however, revel in the seas here.. The beach is fringed with popular restaurants and hotels, including the Calangute Residency operated by GTDC.

This long, seven-km sweep of sand located 15 kms from Panaji, is called the 'Queen of Beaches'. The village of Calangute has all basic facilities like post office, banks, foreign exchange offices, resort companies, all kind of bars and restaurants, besides medical facilities. The number of internet cafes in Calangute might even exceed that of the entire city of Panaji.

---

**BAGA**

---

A few kms down the beach is another – Baga, part of a 30 km stretch of beach coastline along the west coast of Goa which begins at Fort Aguada, continues as Sinkerim Beach, moves on to Candolim which merges into Calangute Beach and then stretches on to Baga, Anjuna and on to Vagator, finally ending at Chapora beach. Truly a veritable feast of beaches. Compared to Calangute, Baga is quieter and also more isolated. It is more popular with western tourists who love to use it as a base for water sports and fishing in the area.

---

**VAGATOR**

---

This most photographed beach of Goa forms a bay that curves from the headland to the hillock crowned by the Chapora Fort. This beautiful arc of sand is located

about 22 kms from Panaji and is part of the 30 km stretch of beach coastline along the west coast of Goa. Adjoining Anjuna, Vagator is secluded, crescent shaped and situated on the Caisua bay along the Chapora river basin in the shadow of Chapora Fort. During the tourist season, it is a favorite venue for midnight parties.

---

## ANJUNA

---

Anjuna was made famous by the 'flower power and peace' generation of the sixties and early seventies and later by the 'trance' parties. Located about 18 kms from Panaji, the beach is known for its breeze-catching palms, soft sand, and the unusual rocky formation overlying a cove of whitish sand and black rock that juts into the sea. It is now famous for its weekly Flea Market, which draws legions of visitors every Wednesday and bargains can be had on apparel, footwear, jewellery, footwear, chess sets – and yak cheese.



Source: [mapsofindia.com](http://mapsofindia.com) (*Beaches in Goa*)

---

## SINQUERIM

---

With its magnificent 17th century fort which has now been converted into a prison, Siquerim is one of the finest beaches in Goa, offering international class facilities for water-skiing, parasailing, fishing, scuba-diving and wind-surfing. Home to the Taj Hotel Group, which dominates the headland around the historic Fort Aguada,

Sinquerim is located some 13 kms from Panaji. The uninterrupted stretch of firm sand stretches all the way north to Baga, offering visitors a temptingly long walk along the beach.

---

### **CANDOLIM**

---

Candolim is the first beach that can be approached from the city of Panaji and is like a gateway to the other more famous beaches. Though individual accommodation is available here, there are only a few hotels with restaurants attached. One highlight of Candolim is the parasailing and water skiing facility, besides other water sports.

---

### **AGUADA**

---

Aguada beach is almost synonymous with the top-notch Fort Aguada Hotel complex, a superb hotel that is built on the cliff, around the remnants of the early 17th century Portuguese fort. Although access to the beach is not possible through the hotel grounds, which are private, you can walk along Aguada beach, for in India private beaches do not exist.

---

### **MORJIM**

---

The VIPs on this beach are the Olive Ridley turtles that come to nest here helped by a group of volunteers who guard the nests and help the hatchlings get into the sea. A favourite of Russian tourists, along with Ashwem beach close by, visitors will find signboards and menu cards in Russian!

---

### **ARAMBOL or HARMAL**

---

This is also a foreigners' haunt with a large number of Tai Chi, non-permanent mehendi or henna, tattoo, yoga and meditation centres. Harmal Beach is the one place you cannot drive on to, but there are narrow lanes that lead to the higher reaches of the coast. You have to walk down a slope to the beach itself. The black rocks on the silvery beach make for some pretty dramatic scenery at sunset. Further up near the hill is a pool with soft yellow clay, which is said to have healing properties. Beauticians buy the clay as do the innumerable massage parlours in the area.

---

### **MIRAMAR**

---

This beautiful 'urban' beach, akin to Chowpatty in Mumbai, is located just 3 kms from Panaji. It lies adjoining the estuary of the river Mandovi as it opens into the Arabian Sea. It was originally known as 'Gasper Dias Beach', named after Gaspar

Dias, a prosperous landlord and where a Portuguese fort once stood at the far end of the 16th century.

---

## **SOUTH GOA**

---

### **PALOLEM**

---

Palolem is a cosy beach of white sand facing a blue bay between two headlands. The little wooded islands on the northern headland look alluring and you could try and persuade one of the fishermen – this is also a fishing beach – to ferry you across. They also offer to take you out to spot dolphins. Tourists have of late discovered Palolem and so there are quite a few shacks selling seafood snacks, souvenirs and clothes of the bright, informal kind. Panaji, the capital, is more than 70 kms away.

---

### **AGONDA**

---

If you continue driving towards Panaji from Palolem, the next beach is Agonda. It's long and lonely, fringed with palms and casuarinas and dominated by a large hill to the south. It's not safe to swim out too far on this beach. There are very few facilities available here and you are needed to carry all the essentials.

Agonda is a 3 km long beautiful cove of white sand, safely secluded in the palms. There are no tourists, no souvenir stalls, no restaurants – just peace and tranquility. Just the trees, the beach, the big beautiful ocean and you. Not far from Agonda beach is Cabo de Rama, untouched by most of the visitors in this region.

---

### **VARCA, CAVELOSSIM, MOBOR**

---

Varca, Cavelossim and Mabor are a trio of the most alluring beaches south of Benaolim. These beaches are much cleaner and quieter than most of the other more famous beaches of Goa. There are numerous beach shacks offering a variety of Goan dishes and seafood at reasonable prices. There are several food joints around the grand 'Dona Sylvia' resort offering a splendid repast at reasonable rates. There are also facilities for Dolphin watching up the River Sal.

---

### **BETALBATIM**

---

North of Colva is Betalbatim Beach which begins a long string of beaches with Majorda, Utorda, Arossim and Velsao at the north. It is a ten kilometre stretch of white sand which is not very crowded

---

### **COLVA**

---

This is the most important beach in the South circuit, equipped with all modern amenities like air-conditioned resort complexes, tourist cottages, discos, besides

several stalls, eateries and guest houses – all of which have expanded the village enormously. With 20 kms of virgin white sands, palm fringed, sun drenched beaches, Colva is the most loved beach in Goan.

Unlike Anjuna or Calangute, Colva has gained popularity only lately. Located just 39 kms from the capital Panaji, it was relatively little disturbed and life moved on quietly. The Church of Our Lady Of Mercy in Colva is famous for its miracle statue of Menino Jesus. The busy road leading from the Church to the beach is where all the facilities are located.

---

### **MAJORDA**

This small stretch, about 5 kms north of Colva Beach, is as pretty as a picture, studded with several hotels, the most prominent being the starred Majorda Beach Resort. Majorda is the village where the Jesuits, fond as they were of the good things of life, discovered the best Goan toddy (sap from the coconut palm), which they used to leaven the bread. Naturally, then, Majorda is the place where the Goans were first trained in the delicate art of baking European breads. The Majordans are still Goa's best bakers.

---

### **BOGMALO**

This beach, dominated by a 5-star hotel located right on its edge, is cut apart from both the North and South beach circuit. Just 4 kms from the airport at Dabolim, it is a favourite among the elite classes and has an air of exclusivity. Although the resort hotel towers above the village, there are still a few smaller and appealing places to stay in. Windsurfing and water skiing facilities are available.

---

### **BENAULIM**

Less than 2 kms south of Colva is the more tranquil beach of Benaulim, is one of the few places in Goa where one can glimpse handicrafts typical to this area. The best of the traditional rosewood furniture is made here. Also, mythically Benaulim is famous as the place where the legendary Parashuram's arrow landed by which Goa was created.

---

### **BETUL**

Betul is an important fishing port where all the mechanized boats and deep sea trawlers bring in their catch. Here headlands from the slopes of the Western Ghats protrude into the shore, imparting an imposing backdrop. Beyond this secluded beach is the hill of Cabo De Rama where the Portuguese built a fort. From the fort, a great view of the sunset on the beach can be viewed. However, there are very few places to stay in Betul.

---

### 11.3.3 Diu

---

A beautiful blend of sea, sand and sun, Diu is a God's gift to those in quest of a blessed land where the weary weight of this unintelligible world can, for a while, be lightened and the waking soul can hear the music of the nature. This tiny island of breeze, beauty and serenity situated off the southern tip of the Saurashtra (Kathiawar) peninsula of Gujarat, lapped by the Arabian Sea, is a picture of calmness with superb beaches and a fascinating history.

---

#### Nagoa Beach

---

It is located near the Nagoa hamlet of the village of Bucharwada. The Beach is exceptionally beautiful and quiet. In this horse - shoe shaped beach, various water sports facilities are available. It is completely safe for swimming. Plenty of Hoka trees whisper and sway in the intoxicating sea breeze all day long. The virginity of the beach and serenity of the surroundings give the visitor peace and pleasure beyond expression. A perfect semi circle beach where the gentle lapping waves beckon you to wade into them for a fun filled time of swimming, gamboling or just lolling around the soft sand shores or to find you napping under the palm trees filled with the soothing breeze.<sup>xi</sup>

---

#### Ghoghla Beach

---

The Ghoghla Beach is a sandy beach. A tourist complex nearby provides all basic amenities to tourists. It is the largest and gentlest beach of Diu. The Golden sand beach undulates into the horizon while the Arabian Sea laps away at the edge as though imploring the sands to let it find its own peach. You can do swimming, sunbathing, parasailing, surfing etc.

---

#### Jallandhar Beach

---

Jallandhar Shrine is located on a hillock close to the beach. This small shrine crowned with a dome houses a stone carved face of Jallandhar a mythological demon who was killed by Lord Krishna. Nearby there is also a temple of Goddess Chandrika. The beach is at a distance of 1 km from Diu Town.

---

## 11.4 Natural Manifestations of Touristic Significance

---

In its broadest sense, nature in tourism involves experiencing natural places, typically through outdoor activities that are sustainable in terms of their impact on the environment. These can range from active to passive and include everything from bushwalking and adventure tourism experiences to sightseeing, scenic driving, beach experiences and wildlife viewing. Nature-based experiences are intimately linked to all other aspects of the visitor's total experience of a

destination, such as food, culture, relaxation, health, escape, family needs, accommodation, transport, etc. All serve to complement each other and together form the basis of a visitor's overall satisfaction with their holiday. Conserved and protected areas (including Marine and National Parks), the Earth's biodiversity, and respect for local culture and those who have been traditional guardians of our natural environments, can be central to their interests.<sup>xii</sup>

---

#### 11.4.1 Maharashtra

---

Maharashtra is one of the most sought after tourist destinations in India. Maharashtra tourism offers almost everything from its pristine beaches, wildlife sanctuaries, hill stations, natural caves, waterfalls, to imposing forts, colourful festivals, ancient pilgrimage shrines, museums, and historical monuments that draw large number of travellers.<sup>xiii</sup>

---

#### Wildlife

---

The nature lovers, who come to India to explore its rich wildlife, must make a sojourn at Maharashtra also. The state is virtually a delight for those who love to visit wildlife sanctuaries and national parks and be a witness to nature's beauty. The various protected areas here are home to a wide variety of wildlife, comprising of Tigers, Crocodiles, Bisons, Gawas, Neelgais, Wild Deer, Sambars, etc. Apart from that, they serve as home to numerous birds and are also visited by the most exotic migratory birds every year. The facilities available at the various wildlife sanctuaries and national parks of Maharashtra include jeep rides, night safaris, comfortable accommodation, etc. With the below given information, explore the wildlife of one of the largest states in India.

**Chikhaldara Wildlife Sanctuary:** Chikhaldara Wildlife Sanctuary is situated in the Amaravati district of Maharashtra and forms one of the popular excursions from the Amravati city. The sanctuary forms a part of the sole hill station of the Vidarbha region, characterized by beautiful lakes, serene lakes and cascading waterfalls. Chikhaldara Wildlife Sanctuary boasts of a rich and varied wildlife and has been named after the spot known as 'Keechaka'. The wild animals that can be seen inside the precincts of the Chikhaldara Wildlife Sanctuary of India include Panthers, Sloth Bears, Sambar, Wild Dogs and Wild Boars. The sanctuary also offers panoramic views of the valley situated below. There are a number of places near it that are definitely worth having a look at. These include Melghat Tiger Reserve, Gavilgad Fort, Narnala Fort, Pandit Nehru Botanical Gardens, Tribal Museum and Semadoh Lake.

**Doba National Park:** Tadoba National Park spreads over 120 sq km, which is at an altitude of 200m. It is located 100 km south of Nagpur and 45 km north of Chandrapur. It is the oldest national park in Maharashtra.

**Bharmragarh Sanctuary:** Bharmragarh Wildlife Sanctuary has many types of wild animals like leopard, jungle fowl, wild boar and sloth bear, barking deer, blue bull, peacock and flying squirrel. The entire area is covered with the moist deciduous mix forests.

**Dajipur Bison Sanctuary:** Dajipur Bison Sanctuary is situated on the border shared by the Kolhapur and Sindhudurg districts of Maharashtra. The wildlife sanctuary derives its name from the splendid animal, Bison, which is found in abundance here. Situated at an altitude of approximately 1200 m above the sea level, the Dajipur Wildlife Sanctuary boasts of a landscape that is primarily craggy and mountainous. The area in which the sanctuary is situated stands dotted with dense, lush green forests. These forests serve as the abode of a large number of wild animals, apart from Bison. These include Wild Deer, Chital, Antelopes, Bears, etc

**Nagzira Wildlife Sanctuary:** Nagzira Wildlife Sanctuary is situated at the Tirora Range of Bhandara Forest Division, which comes under the Bhandara District of Maharashtra. It is approximately 130 km to the west of Nagpur and makes one of the popular excursions from the city. The landscape of Nagzira Wildlife Sanctuary comprises of hills and small lakes. The forests covering the hills comprise of the southern tropical dry deciduous trees. The wildlife seen at the wildlife sanctuary includes 34 species of mammals, 36 species of reptiles and 4 species of amphibians. The wild animals found here consist of Tigers, Panthers, Leopards, Bison, Sloth Bears, Sambar Deer, Four-Headed Antelope, Blue Bull, etc.

**Navegaon National Park:** Navegaon National Park is located in the Navegaon area of Maharashtra, at a distance of approximately 150 km from Nagpur city. It is one of the most popular forest reserves of the Vidarbha region of the state and was established in the 18th century. Flowing through the Navegaon Wildlife Park is the beautiful Navegaon Lake that flows with crystal clear water. You can hope to see Scarlet Minivets, Paradise Fly Catchers, Kingfishers, etc, apart from a wide variety of migratory birds. You can also spot a number of wild animals at the national park, including Tigers, Panthers, Bisons, Sambars, Nilgais, Chitals, Wild boars, Sloth Bears, Wild Dogs, Langoors, etc.

**Pench National Park:** Pench National Park lies nestled in the lower southern reaches of the Satpura hills, on the southern boundary of Madhya Pradesh. Earlier a wildlife sanctuary, Pench was given the status of a tiger reserve in the year 1992, when it was included under the umbrella of "Project Tiger". The flora of the Pench Wildlife Sanctuary is basically made up of Southern Indian tropical moist deciduous forest. Amongst the commonly seen wild animals at the wildlife sanctuary are Jungle Cats, Cheetal, Sambar, Nilgai, Jackals, Wild Dogs, Gaurs, Sloth Bear, Chinkara, Langoors. The sanctuary boasts of around 39 species of

mammals, 13 species of reptiles and 3 species of amphibians. There are also approximately 210 species of birds at the park, which includes the migratory birds that come here every year. The birds that are commonly seen include Peafowl, Red Jungle Fowl, Crow Pheasant, Crimson Breasted Barbet, Redvented Bulbul, Racket Tailed Drongo, Magpie Robin, Lesser Whistling Teal, etc.

**Katraj Snake Park:** Katraj Snake Park is one of the popular conservation parks of India, situated on the Pune-Satara Highway. It is known for housing a significant population of snakes, birds, turtles, reptiles, etc. Situated at a distance of approximately 8 km from the Pune city of Maharashtra, the park was established in 1986.

**Sanjay Gandhi National Park:** Sanjay Gandhi National Park, also known as the Borivali National Park, is the only national park situated inside the Mumbai city. It was given the status of a national park in the year 1974 and since then, it has been playing home to some of the most exotic species of animals and birds. Located in the hill ranges around Borivili, the national park is the perfect place for the nature lovers coming to Bombay city of India. Sanjay Gandhi Wildlife Sanctuary is especially known for its Lion Safari, through which one can view the 'Big Cat' from just six feet away.

The entire vegetation inside the Borivali National Park can be divided into two main parts - South Indian Moist Deciduous and Semi Evergreen. The main bird species of Borivili National Park are Woodpeckers, Magpies, Jungle Owlets, Hornbills, Racket-Tailed Drongos, Minivets, Robins, Peacock, Golden Orioles, & Sunbirds. At times, one may also come across Paradise Flycatcher, Kingfisher, Swifts, Gulls, Egrets and Herons here. Lions and Leopards are the pride of the park. Other major animals found here include Palm Civet, Black Naped Hare, Hanuman Langur, Barking Deer, Hyena, Sambhar, Mouse Deer, Rhesus Macaque, Bounet Macaque, Spotted Deer, Indian Flying Fox and Porcupine. The reptiles inhabiting the Borivali National Park comprise of Pythons, Cobras, Monitor Lizards, Russell's Viper, Bamboo Pit Viper and Ceylonese Cat Snake.<sup>xiv</sup>

---

### Hill Stations

---

As the state of Maharashtra is the Home of Sahydri Mountains, the state has many appealing hill stations. The Britishers founded most of these hill stations during their colonial era to beat the scorching heat. But the beauty and the charming glory are still alive in these hill stations. The Western Ghats, which form a part of the Sahydri range, has also lots of beautiful hill stations. Hill stations of Maharashtra not only attract the foreign tourists but also Indian domestic tourists, which are exhausted with the fast urban life. Popular hill stations of Maharashtra

are Matheran, Lonavala, Khandala, Mahabaleshwar, Panchagani, Bhandardara, Malshej Ghat, Amboli, Chikhaldara Panhala, Panchgani, Sawantwadi, Toranmal, and Jawahar. It is said that each hill station of Maharashtra has unique characteristic and its closeness to a city makes it very popular.<sup>xv</sup>

---

### **Trekking**

---

Trekking in Maharashtra might not be that adventurous and risky like any Himalayan trekking. It is calm and easy; still it is enjoying and thrilling giving a lifetime experience. Sahydris is the most important trekking region in the state. Sahyadri is known to be a trekker's paradise with green hills, dotted lakes and forests all around. This region is popular for its incredible historic forts and wonderful ancient Buddhist caves. Having exotic natural locations, Rajmachi Fort too is famous for trekking. This beautiful place is a historic site as well. Rajmachi can be reached via the town of Lonavla along the Khandala plateau. Fort trekking can also be done at Karla Caves and Bedsa Caves. This trekking is long trekking involving different caves.<sup>xvi</sup>

---

### **Lakes**

---

Having nearly around 23 lakes, Thane is popularly known as the 'City of Lakes' in Maharashtra. Talao Pali Lake, Upvan Lake are the most important most crowded lakes of the city. It is believed that Rankala Lake in Kolhapur is the oldest of all lakes in Maharashtra.

---

### **Waterfalls**

---

Ramkunk Lake in Nashik is popular, as it is believed that Lord Rama and Sita used to take bath in this lake during their exile. The Mushi lake near Lonavala, Venna lake in Mahabaleshwar, Khindsey and Ambazari lakes near Nagpur, Lonar lake in Buldhana district, Pashan and Pimpri lakes in Pune and the Tansa, Tulsi, Vihar and Powai lakes in Mumbai are the lakes which attracts lots of visitors and popular as picnic spots where tourist groups often go for excursion on weekends and holidays.

Dudhsagar waterfall, Thoseghar waterfall, Lingmala fall, Dhobi waterfall, and Chinaman's waterfall are the important waterfalls in Maharashtra. Dudhsagar waterfall, situated at Someshwar is a favourite destination for youngsters where they come often to liven up their spirits. This is one of the best picturesque spots in Nashik. The waterfalls are 10m long and the water is milky white, so it is called Dudhsagar waterfall. Thoseghar, near Satara is famous for its serenity, clam and quiet nature.

It is a newly developing picnic spot. Thoseghar is really a wonderful place where one can enjoy the beauty of the nature. July to November is the best season to visit Thoseghar. Dark woods and a clean lake add to the beauty of this hilly region. There are also other small waterfalls here, which are about 15-20 meters high. The highest one is of around 500 meters. Satara is on the Pune - Bangalore Highway, and is about 115 km from Pune. Lingmala Falls, Dhobi Waterfall, and Chinaman's waterfall are the waterfalls in Mahabaleshwar. July to December is the best time to see these waterfalls. Venna Lake is not far from here, which is on the way of Panchgani. Dhobi Waterfall is on the bridle path connecting Petit Road with Old Mahabaleshwar Road near Lily Cottage. Chinaman's Waterfall is on the Carviali Road, which can also reach by the Tiger Path Road or from Babington Point. Chinese convicts to cultivate the adjoining fields formerly used it; hence the fall is known by this name. Mahabaleshwar is 120 km from Pune via Panchgani.<sup>xvii</sup>

---

#### 4.4.2 Goa

---

Variously known as "Pearl of the Orient" and a "Tourist Paradise", the state of Goa is located on the western coast of India in the coastal belt known as Konkan. The magnificent scenic beauty and the architectural splendours of its temples, churches and old houses have made Goa a firm favourite with travellers around the world.

But then, Goa is much more than just beaches and sea. It has a soul which goes deep into unique history, rich culture and some of the prettiest natural scenery that India has to offer. Much of the real Goa is in its interiors, both inside its buildings and in the hinterland away from the coastal area.<sup>xviii</sup>

---

#### Wildlife

---

**Bhagvan Mahavir Wildlife Sanctuary and Mollem National Park:** Situated along the North East border of Goa at Molem, about one-and-a-half hours' journey from Panaji (60 kms), the Bhagwan Mahavir Wildlife Sanctuary covers 240 sq.kms of thick forest clad slopes on the Western Ghats and its valleys and is the biggest of the three sanctuaries of Goa. Rich in wildlife, it is a paradise for bird watchers. Besides flora and fauna, there are many important geological and historical features in this sanctuary. Dushsagar falls, about an hour's journey from Molem by train, is a feast for the eyes. The 'Devil Canyon' is another beautiful geological spot. The famous Lord Mahadeva Temple situated at Tambdi Surla is about 13 kms from Molem. The Department of Tourism has built comfortable cottages and dormitories for tourists. Entry fee Rs.10/- per adult, Rs.5/- per child and Rs.3/- per student.

**Bondla Forest:** 52 kms. from Panaji and 36 kms. from Margao, it is the smaller of the three wildlife sanctuaries of Goa. More than a sanctuary, it is an ideal jungle resort, a major attraction for school going children and nature lovers. Its mini zoological Park, Deer Safari Park, Botanical gardens, Nature Education Centre, wildlife and nature trails, and archaeological exhibit attract people throughout the year. Comfortable cottages are available here for tourists.

**Cotigao Wildlife Sanctuary:** The second largest of the three wildlife sanctuaries in Goa, with an area of 105 sq. kms. is located about 76 kms. from Panaji, in Cancona Taluka in South Goa. It is covered with dense forest and varied wildlife. The ancient Jeevottam Partagal Math, noted for its Vedic studies, lies in the vicinity of the sanctuary.

**Dr. Salim Ali Bird Sanctuary:** Spread over 1.78 Sq. kms. and located at the western tip of the island of Chorao along the river Mandovi near Panaji, it is fully covered with mangrove species. Varieties of local as well as migratory birds frequently visit the area. This sanctuary can be visited anytime of the year with the permission of the Chief Wildlife Warden, Forest Department, Junta House, Panaji - Goa. The Sanctuary is approachable on foot after crossing over by ferry from Ribandar to Chorao. There are some private parties who take tourists around in their canoes fitted with outboard motors.<sup>xix</sup>

---

### Caves

---

**Arvalem Caves:** The celebrated caves of Arvalem, found in a remote area but not far from the temple of Rudreshwar, are of great archaeological interest. Cave No. 2 has a Shivalinga with a circular top with Sanskrit and Brahmi characters dating back to the 7th century A.D.

---

### Waterfall

---

**Arvalem Waterfalls :** Descending from the temple of Rudreshwar, one catches sight of a majestic waterfall cascading from a height of about 70 ft. to form a sizeable lake at the bottom – a tempting sight to seasoned swimmers.

**Dudhsagar Waterfalls:** 10 kms from Colem Railway Station, these majestic falls are accessible by train. Water plummets hundreds of feet in a milky foam in one of Goa's most spectacular sights which is also a lifeline to the ecosystem of the Bhagwan Mahavir sanctuary. A popular destination for hikers and trekkers, the waterfall is also accessible by jeep through the sanctuary. However, one needs to obtain permission in advance from the Department of Forests at Junta House, Panaji.

---

**Lakes/ springs**

---

**Mayem Lake:** Surrounded amidst rolling green hills in Bicholim this lake is an ideal picnic spot with boating facilities. Comfortable cottage accommodation is available.

**Carambolim Lake:** Adding to the charm of the quiet village of Carambolim is the scenic reservoir fringed by lush greenery. Migratory birds seek this verdant landscape every year till the end of the season. The cacophony of 80 different varieties of birds is unbelievable, tending to their young in the mixed heronries on the aquatic vegetation. Jacanas with their iridescent colours and the spectacular purple moorhens can be seen delicately treading over the floating vegetation.

**Netravalli Lake- Budbudyachi Tali:** This lake in Sanguem Taluka has unique characteristics. Continuous bubbles emerge from the lake surface, and upon clapping the intensity of the bubbles grow, with live springs suddenly gushing out.

**Kesarval Spring:** 22kms from Panaji, the spring emerges from hard and compact rocks and people bathe in its water with strong belief that it has medicinal properties.

**Pomburpa Spring:** The natural spring at Pomburpa, situated on the outskirts of Bardez taluka, about 30 km from here, is one of the major centres of attraction for domestic and foreign tourists. Known for its medicinal values, the spring water is used for bathing by ailing men and women who throng the spot throughout the year.

**Boca De Vaca:** Situated next to the Mahalaxmi Temple, the Boca de Vaca spring is one of the two springs that exist in Panaji Goa. The appearance of this Portuguese- built structure that remains aglow with soft decorative light in the evening gives it a name 'Boca De Vaca' literally meaning 'the face of the cow'.

---

**Spice Plantations**

---

**Savoi Plantations - Spice of Life:** Located at Savoi Ponda, 25 kms from Panaji and 15 kms from Ponda, it is one of the oldest tropical plantations. With intercropping of spices with coconuts, betel nuts, pineapples and other fruits. Experience typical Goan Hindu cuisine served in mud pots and banana leaf. En route to the plantation one can visit a cashewnut factory and Ananta temple, submerged partly in water.

**Tropical Spice Plantation I:** The plantation is located in Keri in Ponda Taluka. Visitors are welcomed with herbal tea followed by a guided tour of the plantation. On return, enjoy a local meal served on a banana frond.

**Pascoal Spice Village:** Located near the village of Khandepar, 8 kms. from Ponda National Highway (NH) 4 A., the lower end of the property is bounded by

a tributary of the Mandovi River. A wide variety of spice plants and cash crops is grown here. For visitors there is restaurant with an open-air party facility along with boating,

**Rustic Plantation:** Situated on the extreme North-East of Goa at Dongruli village, Thane, Valpoi, Sattari, the plantation is a rejuvenating experience of a lifetime. Nestled in a valley amidst verdant grass and fruit bearing trees and rivulets, Rustic Plantation is an ideal getaway..

**Sahakar Spice Farm:** This spice farm on the Ponda-Belgaum Road, Curti, Ponda offers a guided tour of the plantation and an authentic budget village lunch on a banana leaf, besides a traditional welcome.

**Sai Herbarium:** Presents a superb, eco-tourism natural spot with herbal gardens which includes medicinal and aromatic plants. The spice plantation, cultivated by pure organic farming methods, has been maintained in its natural ecology amidst a peaceful and relaxing atmosphere. Visitors can enjoy delicious Goan as well as Indian cuisine. Contact: C/o. Sai Organic Farm & Herbarium, Savoi Verem, Ponda-Goa 403 401. Tel: 2340308.

**Parvati Madav Park Plantation:** Situated in Keri village in Ponda, 30 kms. from Panaji. The place is gifted with natural beauty with plants arranged in scientific classification and categorized according to one's psychological, aesthetic and spiritual needs and grown in well demarcated plots.

---

### **Turtle Nesting Sites**

---

Morjim, Galgibag and Agonda beaches – the largest nesting places of the giant Olive Ridley turtle. An amazing phenomenon of nature, this is a regular annual occurrence. While earlier it was a hunting ground for sea turtles, today it is a modal conservation centre.

---

### **Rock Art**

---

The discovery of rare Stone Age rock carvings at Kajur, Panasaimol of Pirla village in Sanguem Taluka and Mauxi in Sattari Taluka has opened new vistas and thrown up new challenges to historians and archaeologists. The State Museum of Goa in Panaji has created a model of this entire site of Panasaimol.

---

### **Ancestral Goa, Big Foot**

---

Located in Loutulim, 9 kms from Margao, this centre for art, culture and environment is an aesthetically developed open air site designed to illustrate Goa's traditional past. Set in eco-friendly surroundings, this mock up village traces 100 years of Goa's lifestyle and heritage. A giant size footprint, Big Foot, the only

designer dance floor in Goa, is used as a venue for the promotion of dance, music and traditional culture.

---

### **Botanical Garden**

---

The Garca Branca Bed and Breakfast Resort and Ayurvedic Botanical Garden is located in Loutolim, Goa, India and offers the finest, authentic Goan vacation experience to visitors from around the world. The Garca Branca is the ancestral home of the C.J. Mascarenhas family with genealogical history that has been traced back to the mid-1800s to Cupertino Joel Mascarenhas and his wife Divina Sobrinho. Cupertino was an avid naturalist and helped manage the local waterfowl population and wetlands. And it was his passion for birds that earned him his nickname, "Bokem", which means white heron in the local dialect of Konkani. Wishing to keep the spirit of Bokem Mascarenhas alive in the recently renovated home, his resident descendant, Carlos Jose Mascarenhas has named the home "The Garca Branca", the Portuguese translation of white heron.

---

### **Other Attractions**

---

**Bambar Sacred Groves:** Located at Bambar in Sattari Taluka, this is the abode of rare medicinal plants. The swamp forest has great ecological significance with numerous aerial roots. This grove is known to have existed for the last 250 years.

**Cumbarjua Canal:** The 15 km stretch of water links Zuari with the Mandovi river. A vibrant mangrove habitat, it is home to fresh water or marsh crocodiles and migratory birds. Boat cruise packages provide visitors most a memorable experience. The enchanting river journey takes one to the picturesque backwaters.

**Satpal Arboretum:** Established in 1972, about 3 kms from Mollem, a number of research plots have been laid here. The arboretum is ideally suited to meet the requirement of students in their fields studies.

**Salaulim Dam:** The monochromatic landscape, its silent, serene splendor beckons the traveller to relax in the secluded warmth of nature. A quaint picnic spot ideal for a languorous break, a drive such places is always an exhilarating and memorable experience.

**Goa Chitra Ethnographic Museum:** Housed in Mondo-Waddo, Benaullim, this lovingly collected museum exhibits agrarian Goa, with predominantly old agricultural and farming tools and equipment on display. A must-see for visitors.

**4.4.3 Diu**

Diu is a union territory spanning about 40 sq km off Gujarat’s Saurashtra coast. The Diu fort dominates the townscape from its eastern end. Built in 1535 when the Portuguese first took control. It has an impressive double moat which is worth visiting. During the Christmas the activities are shifted to St.Paul’s Church which was built in 1610 with an elaborate and imposing white façade, carved arched doorway and vaulted interiors. Another church dating from the 17th century, St.Thomas Church houses Diu Museum. The main areas of attraction at Diu are beaches, especially Nagoa beach, Ahmedpur Mandvi and Goghla beaches which also have water sports facilities. There are restaurants along the seafront Road leading to the Fort.<sup>xx</sup>

**Sea Shell Museum - Nagoa, Diu**

First museum in Asia which has maximum sea shells. First museum in World where sea shells are displayed in magnifying glass of various sizes. The collection of about 2500 to 3000 sea shells in museum.

**Water Sports, Diu**

The water sports facilities are available at Nagoa and Ghoghla Beach. There are various sorts of water sports facilities available such as Parasailing, Water Scooter Riding, Boat Sailing etc. In addition to this there is availability of Evening Boat Cruise at Diu Bunder. This facility is managed by Diu administration. The Evening Cruise ride starts from 7:30 P.M to 8:30 P.M with Music, Masti and light refreshments.

**4.5 Check Your Progress**

1. What do you mean by Coastal Tourism & Recreation?

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

2. Name any three beaches in Maharashtra?

.....  
 .....  
 .....

3. Name any two beaches in Goa?

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

4. Name any two beaches in Diu?

.....  
 .....  
 .....

5. Name two sanctuaries in Maharashtra?

.....  
 .....  
 .....

6. Name two sanctuaries/ National Parks in Goa?

.....  
 .....  
 .....

7. Name two waterfalls in Goa?

.....  
 .....  
 .....

---

**11.6 Summary**

---

After going through this unit on beaches & natural manifestations, you must have understood about the famous beaches & natural bounties present in Maharashtra, Goa & Diu.

The various famous beaches of Goa are Agonda, Candolim, Calangute, Dona Paula. The beaches are known to witness a massive footfall throughout the year. Goa is blessed with splendid diversity of wildlife, culture as well as landforms also.

The beaches in Maharashtra fringe many historically important sites - temples, forts, churches. There are a number of wildlife sanctuaries & National parks which offer splendid opportunities to see a wide variety of wildlife in the spectacular natural setting.

A beautiful blend of sea, sand and sun, Diu is a God's gift. Also, this tiny island of breeze, beauty and serenity situated off the southern tip of the Saurashtra (Kathiawar) peninsula of Gujarat, is a picture of calmness with superb beaches and a fascinating history.

After going through this block, students you would have understood about the cultural & natural significance about the states of Maharashtra, Goa & Diu. These aspects play a important role in tourism of these states.

---

**11.7 Clues to Answer**

---

---

**Check your progress**

---

1. Refer Sec 4.3
2. Refer Sec 4.3
3. Refer Sec 4.3
4. Refer Sec 4.3
5. Refer Sec 4.4
6. Refer Sec 4.4
7. Refer Sec 4.4

---

**REFERENCES**

---

---

## Unit-12

### Odisha and West Bengal

---

**Structure:**

**12.0 Introduction**

**12.1 Objectives**

**12.2 Biodiversity, Landscape and Natural Attractions**

**12.3 National Parks and Reserves**

**12.3.1 Orissa**

**12.3.2 West Bengal**

**12.4 Beaches, Water Bodies and Natural Wonders**

**12.4.1 Orissa**

**12.4.2 West Bengal**

**12.5 Summary**

**12.6 Glossary**

**12.7 Answer to Check Your Progress Exercises**

**12.8 References/Bibliography**

**12.9 Review Questions**

---

## 12.0 INTRODUCTION

---

Eastern India has a rich biodiversity, spread across Orissa (*Odisha*), West Bengal and Sikkim. Various wildlife sanctuaries and national parks form a happening tourist spots. Simlipal (Orissa), Sunderbans (West Bengal) and Khangchendzonga (Sikkim) are famous national parks in Eastern India. These parks are a perfect home to rich, diverse and endangered species of tigers, leopards, bears, aquatic mammals, deer, reptiles as well as various colourful birds. Sunderbans covers 10,000km<sup>2</sup> of land and water (more than half of it in India, the rest in Bangladesh) in the Ganges delta. Odisha's many national parks enable the tourists to enjoy the country's scenery and its wildlife, conserved in natural habitats, and offer opportunities for travel adventurers' unparalleled in Eastern India.

Odisha is a hotbed for the nature-lovers; beaches, tiger reserves, mangrove forests and wetlands, and a varied tangle of flora and fauna abound. Chilika Lake (Orissa) has been designated under the Convention of Wetlands of International Importance (Ramsar Convention) as being especially significant waterfowl habitats. Chandipur-on-Sea is an enchanting destination. This beach is unique when the sea is at low ebb, a breathtaking 5km-wide expanse of fine silver sand is beautifully exposed. All the rivers in this region flow into the Bay of Bengal and hence the perfect views of swamps, deltas, sometimes even huge lagoons are common. Just after Balasore, the road leads to Chandipur.

Darjeeling, an extremely popular destination during the days of the British Raj is a rich reservoir of natural sites. Its' wonderful climate, clear brisk air and the breathtaking views of the Himalaya ranges attracts natural lovers. Sikkim's greatest tourist draw is simply starting at Khangchendzonga's white-peaked magnificence from Pelling ridge. Khangchendzonga's guardian spirit is worshipped in a series of spectacular autumn festivals and its magnificent white peaks and ridge create the backdrop of a dozen wonderful walks and viewpoints. Luxuriant meadows, slopes aflame with rhododendrons, over 450-species of orchids, the swirling white waters of the Teesta and Rangeet rivers, mist-laden peaks and many natural blessings vista dotted all around the inordinately beautiful State of Sikkim.

As a student of tourism studies, it is imperative to know the biodiversity, landscape and natural attractions of any destination. In this unit, learners are going to study the biodiversity hotspots of Eastern India such as West Bengal and Sikkim as well as the natural attractions of Orissa. In this unit we will also discuss the water bodies and beaches of Eastern India.

---

## 12.1 OBJECTIVES

---

Present unit aims to explore the biodiversity, landscape and natural attractions of Eastern India. In particular, after reading this unit, learners should be able to:

- Know the wildlife attractions and biodiversity hub of Orissa, West Bengal and Sikkim in Eastern India;
- Know the sites of natural attractions for tourist interests in Eastern India;
- Gain knowledge on the water bodies and beaches of Orissa, West Bengal and Sikkim;

---

## 12.2 BIODIVERSITY, LANDSCAPE AND NATURAL ATTRACTIONS

---

India is exceptionally rich in biodiversity and is one of the twelve mega diversity centres of the world. India has a rich variety of wetland habitats. The total area of wetlands (excluding rivers) in India is 58,286,000ha, or 18.4% of the country, 70% of which comprises areas under paddy cultivation. A total of 1,193 wetlands, covering an area of about 3,904,543 ha, were recorded in a preliminary inventory coordinated by the Department of Science and Technology, Govt. of India, of which 572 were natural. Biosphere Reserves are a type of conservation area designated by UNESCO in an attempt to establish an international network of protected areas encompassing examples of all the Earth's major vegetation and physiographic types. The country's wetlands are generally differentiated by region into eight categories: the reservoirs of the Deccan Plateau in the south, together with the lagoons and the other wetlands of the southern west coast; the vast saline expanses of Rajasthan, Gujarat and the gulf of Kachchh; freshwater lakes and reservoirs from Gujarat eastwards through Rajasthan (Kaeoladeo Ghana National park) and Madhya Pradesh; the delta wetlands and lagoons of India's east coast (Chilka Lake); the freshwater marshes of the Gangetic Plain; the floodplain of the Brahmaputra; the marshes and swamps in the hills of north-east India and the Himalayan foothills; the lakes and rivers of the montane region of Kashmir and Ladakh; and the mangroves and other wetlands of the island arcs of the Andamans and Nicobars.

Biosphere reserves contain vegetation, conservation of endangered species – flora and fauna, plus various kinds of cultural landscape, in the whole of which conservation is practiced. India large geographical size and variety of climate and habitat, wild animals constitute great national resources. These wild animals form important resources because they provide food (meat), skin, etc. are used in research as experimental animals and for education. They are also used for recreational purposes. The Indian government has established 18 Biosphere Reserves. Biosphere Reserves in Eastern India are **Sunderbans** Biosphere Reserve

(West Bengal); **Simlipal** Biosphere Reserve (Orissa) and **Khangchendzonga** Biosphere Reserve (Sikkim). There are many wildlife sanctuaries in Orissa. The Simlipal National Park Tiger Reserve is a huge expanse of lush green forest with waterfalls, inhabited by tigers, elephants, and other wildlife. The Bhitarkanika Wildlife Sanctuary has been protecting estuarine crocodiles since 1975. The Chilka Lake, a brackish water coastal lake near the Bay of Bengal, south of the mouth of the Mahanadi River, is the largest coastal lake in India. Orissa has abundant natural resources and a long coastline. It contains a fifth of India's coal, a quarter of its iron ore, a third of its bauxite reserves and most of the chromite.

India ratified the World Heritage Convention in 1977 and since then five natural sites have been inscribed as areas of 'outstanding universal value'. These sites are:

- Kaziranga National Park, ASSAM
- Keoladeo Ghana National Park, RAJASTHAN
- Manas National Park, ASSAM
- Sundarbans National Park, WEST BENGAL
- Nanda Devi National Park, UTTARAKHAND

Defined in 1972 Wildlife Protection Act and as an IUCN (International Union for Conservation of Natural Resources) category, National Parks are given the highest degree of protection. They are "Core" wildlife preserves, for the "Conservation of species or habitats", in which almost no human activity is allowed. They are funded by the Central and State Government in partnership, but are managed solely by the State Government concerned. Various acts in India have been enacted to preserve the threatened species of tiger, red panda (*Ailurus fulgens*), one-horned rhinoceros, nilgai, takin (*Budorcas taxicolor*), serow (*Nemorhedus sumatraensis*), vespertilionid bats, Assamese macaque (*Macaca assamensis*), stump-tailed macaque, wild dog (*Cuon alpinus*), clouded leopard, and Irrawaddy squirrel (*Callosciurus pygerythrus*). The red panda is reduced to patches of mature fir forests with a bamboo understorey.

In Eastern India, Orissa and West Bengal boast of the most diverse landscape, from hills to forest reserves. The dreamland of **Darjeeling** has reinvented itself very little since the British founded it in late 1800s as a sanatorium. Hills carpeted in green, frothy surging rivers, vibrant flora, amazing fauna, winding stairs to colourful temples and a 'toy train' chugging around the hillside. The hill resort is also a haunt for connoisseurs of tea. Darjeeling's Himalayan Railway is one of only two trains that have been accorded World Heritage Status in India.

Sikkim is a mountain state, guarding passage from India to Khangchendzonga. Khangchendzonga (8586m), the world's third-highest

mountain peak and Sikkim’s big attraction provides spectacular early morning views from Pelling or from trek to Gocha La and Dzungri are the best. Sikkim has a mix of Tibetan, Nepali and Indian Hindu populations. With plenty of ice capped mountain peaks, hot springs and frozen lakes, Sikkim is a prime spot for adventure tourists. Ethereal majesty of Khangchendzonga and Mt Everest are framed to call this town with Tibetan name ‘*Dorje Ling*’ which means ‘Place of the Thunderbolt’. The Khangchendzonga range is magnificent in the early morning light is an impressive backdrop for the hill-town of Darjeeling.

The Darjeeling Himalayan Railway, nicknamed the “Toy Train” is a 2ft (610mm) narrow-gauge railway from Siliguri to Darjeeling in West Bengal, run by the Indian Railways. It was built during 1879 to 1881 and is about 86 km long. The elevation level is from about 100m at Siliguri to about 2,200m at Darjeeling. It is still powered by steam engine. The tory train of Darjeeling has been included in UNESCO’s prestigious list of World Heritage Sites.

Similarly, the development of coastal areas was encouraged by changing landscapes tastes of Romanticism truly exemplified by the presence of Chilika Lake. The impact of urbanization was also influential in encouraging a seaside resort for health awareness and desire to escape from the effects of rapid urbanization. It was meant for health rather than pleasure. Coastal areas provided space for to escape to in response to hustle bustle of metros urban landscape which encouraged the development of such natural sites such as Bhitarkanika Wildlife Sanctuary and Nalaban Island.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS 1**

---

**Activity 1**

1. India is exceptionally rich in biodiversity. How?

-----  
 -----  
 -----

2. What do you understand by Biosphere Reserves?

-----  
 -----  
 -----

3. Briefly discuss Darjeeling Himalayan Railway?

-----  
 -----  
 -----  
 -----

---

### 12.3 NATIONAL PARKS AND RESERVES

---

Wonderful national parks and wildlife sanctuaries of Orissa (*Odisha*) are crammed with tigers, elephants, Irrawaddy dolphins, monster crocodiles and millions of migratory birds. Chilika Lake, Asia's largest brackish lagoon, is flanked by inexpensive seaside retreats along one of India's prettiest coasts. Other important sanctuaries and parks of Orissa are Bhitarkanika National Park, Debrigarh Wildlife Sanctuary and Simlipal National Park. West Bengal is widely famous for Sunderbans Tiger Reserve, the largest mangrove forest of the world and also listed in UNESCO's World Heritage Sites. Jaldhapa and Buxa Wildlife Sanctuaries are also a perfect home for forest animals in West Bengal. State of Sikkim is famed for its Khangchendzonga National Park. Following sub-sections 8.3.1, 8.3.2 & 8.3.3 presents a description of National Parks and Reserves of Orissa, West Bengal and Sikkim.

---

#### 12.3.1 ORISSA

---

Rich in flora and fauna, Orissa (*Odisha*) is a nature lovers' dream destination. Chilika Lake, covering an area of 1,100 sq km, this is the largest lagoon along the east coast of India. Chilika has unique eco-system - a combination of marine, brackish and fresh water with estuarine characters. On account of its rich biodiversity, Chilika Lake was designated as a **Ramsar Site**, which gives it the status of being a Wetland of International Importance. The **Nalaban Island** within the lagoon has been notified as a **Bird Sanctuary** under the Wildlife (Protection) Act, 1972.

Chilika's rich fishery resources sustain the livelihood of thousands of fisherfolk who live in and around the lagoon. Running along Puri, Khurda and Ganjam, Chilika Lake eventually merges with the Bay of Bengal. During peak migratory season, around November and December, bird's species like flamingo, teal, bar headed goose; shoveller and white-bellied sea eagle are seen. Playful dolphins can be spotted in large numbers at the mouth of the lake. Dotted with many pretty islands such as the Honeymoon Island and Breakfast Island, Chilika is home to a large variety of aquatic birds and plants. The National Wetland Coral Reefs Committee, Ministry of Environment & Forests (MoEF), Govt. of India has identified the lagoon as a priority site for conservation and management.

Of the many wildlife sanctuaries and botanical gardens, the most scenic and popular is **Bhitarkanika National Park**, the second largest compact mangrove ecosystem in India, known for its biodiversity in flora and fauna. This National Park extends over 600 sq km and has more than 60 varieties of mangrove plants, and as home to a variety of rare and endangered species. This sanctuary is made up of tiny islands formed by meandering creeks. The pneumatophores, better

known as breathing roots, are a stunning site here. Inside of the park is Baghagahan, a large heronry and a nesting site for various bird species.

In the Mayurbhanj district of Odisha, **Simlipal National Park** is situated. Covering an area of 2,750 sq km, the park was specially chosen by Project Tiger for continuing the difficult task of conserving the country's depleting tiger population. The tiger reserve preserve species of Royal Bengal tigers. Leopards, elephants, mugger crocodiles and numerous reptiles can be spotted here, apart from over 230 species of birds. Few of the important reserves, national parks and wildlife sanctuaries of Orissa are:

- 1. Nandankanan Zoological Park:** Famous for its 11 blue-eyed white tigers, the Zoo, one of India's best, also boasts rare Asiatic lions, rhinoceroses, copious reptiles and long-snouted crocodiles, monkeys, deer, a vulture. Lion and tiger safari, toy train, boat rides, cable car are also the highlights of this park.
- 2. Debrigarh Wildlife Sanctuary:** The 347-sq-km Debrigarh Wildlife sanctuary is 40km from Sambalpur, a base for this sanctuary on the edge of Hirakund Dam. Mainly dry deciduous forest blankets the Barapahad Hills down to the shores of the vast Hirakund reservoir, a home for migratory birds in winter. Wildlife here includes deer, antelopes, sloth bears, langur, and the ever-elusive tigers and leopards.
- 3. Simlipal National Park:** The 2750-sq-km **Simlipal** national park in Northeastern Odisha is prime wildlife hub. A massif of prominent hills creased by valleys and gorges, made dramatic by plunging waterfalls, including the spectacular 400m-high **Barheipani Waterfall** and the 150m-high **Joranda Waterfall**. The jungle is an atmospheric mix of dense *sal* forest and rolling open savannah. The core area is only 850 sq km and much of southern part is closed to visitors.  
There's a huge range of reptile, bird and mammal species. The tigers aren't tracked and sightings are extremely rare but the best chance to spot them will be at **Joranda salt lick**. There are two entrances to the park, **Tulsibani**, 15km from Jashipur, on the northwestern side, and **Pithabata**, near Lulung, 25km west of Baripada. **Jashipur** is an entry point for Simlipal and a place to collect any entry permit and organize a guide and transport. **Baripada**, the remarkable transit hub is the best place to organize a Simlipal visit. Inside the park, there is Forest department bungalows; Chahala, Joranda and Newana best for animal spotting and Barheipani for views.
- 4. Bhitarkanika Wildlife Sanctuary:** Three rivers flow out to sea at Bhitarkanika forming a tidal maze of muddy creeks and mangroves. Most of this 672-sq-km delta forms the Sanctuary, a significantly wildlife and biodiversity spot.

Hundreds of massive estuarine crocodiles bask on mud flats waiting for the next meal to swim by. Bird watchers find eight species of brilliantly coloured kingfishers, plus 270 other species.

**Dangmal Island** is a breeding centre for crocodile and conservation program. Pythons, water monitors, baboons, wild boar, and numerous spotted deer can also be seen. Herons arrive at **Bagagahan Island** in early June and nest until early December, when they move on to Chilika Lake. Raucous open-billed storks have set up a permanent rookery here. The island is reached by a narrow pathway leading to a watchtower, where mass of herons and strokes nesting in the treetops can be seen.

5. Chandaka Wildlife Sanctuary and Satkosia Gorge Sanctuary are also wildlife habitat.

---

### 12.3.2 WEST BENGAL

---

The Gangetic delta in West Bengal is rich in plant and animal life. The Sunderbans, which was declared a National Park in 1984, covers a stretch of mangrove swamp, and a few islands and small rivers near the Bay of Bengal. This Tiger Reserve, the largest mangrove forests in the world is UNESCO World Heritage Site with exciting landscape of man-eating tiger, estuarine crocodiles, sharks, poisonous snakes and even pirates. Home to the Royal Bengal Tiger, the Sunderbans have the largest tiger population in the country. This is one of the three large national parks in the state- the other two being Jaldapara and the Dooars. Near Kolkata, there are some exciting rock-climbing destinations like Purulia, Mathua Bura, Jai Chandi, and Susunia Hill whereas in Darjeeling strenuous activities like trekking and Mountaineering are worth to undertake. The road to Darjeeling via Kurseong is through the Himalayan foothills and filled with wonderful views of forests and rivers. 7km long beach of Digha, is 185 km from Kolkata, has everything for beachcomber. Some of the national parks and reserves of West Bengal are studied below.

1. **Sunderbans Tiger Reserve:** In South of Kolkata, home to one of the largest concentrations of tigers on the planet, this 2606 sq km national park and tiger reserves is a network of channels and semi-submerged mangroves that forms the world's largest river delta and estuarine mangrove forest. Royal Bengal tigers lurk in the impenetrable depths of the mangrove forests, and also swim the delta's innumerable channels. Cruising the broad waterway through the world's biggest mangrove sanctuary (now a UNESCO World Heritage Site) and watching wildlife like civets, rhesus monkeys, spotted deer, 2m-long water monitor or luminescent kingfisher, is a world full of natural beauty amidst rich vegetation. This **biosphere reserve** preserves the largest number of tigers.

Lothian Island and Chamta block are known for spotted deer, wild boar, monkeys, snakes and large estuarine crocodiles. At Sajnekhali, the official gateway into the tiger reserve, Mangrove Interpretation Centre houses turtle and crocodile hatchery, a collection of pickled wildlife etc. **Sajnekhali** is a famous bird sanctuary.

2. **Jaldhpara Wildlife Sanctuary:** Set up as a sanctuary in 1943, the little-visited sanctuary situated at the base of the Bhutan hill protects 115 sq km of lush forest and grasslands along the Torsa River and is a refuge for over 50 Indian one-horned rhinoceros (*Rhinoceros unicornis*). The best time to visit is mid-October to May, particularly March and April when wild elephants, hogdeers, wild pigs, gaur, sambhar, leopard, bison, birds, pea-flowls, and tigers are attracted by new grass growth. Jeep safaris are also operated inside of the sanctuary.
3. **Padmaja Naidu Himalayan Zoological Park:** This Himalayan zoo, one of India's best, was established in 1958 to study, conserve and preserve Himalayan fauna. Housed within the rocky and forested environment are Himalayan megafauna such as musk deer, red pandas and Tibetan wolves. The zoo, and its attached snow leopard-breeding centre, is home to the world's largest single captive population of snow leopards. The zoo is a pleasant 20-minute downhill walk down from Chowrasta.
4. **Chapramari Wildlife Sanctuary:** This is a small sanctuary situated in the alluvial plains adjoining the Himalayan foothills, covering an area of 10sq kms. Many species like leopard, jungle cat, hog deer, muntjac and many species of birds finds it a perfect habitat.
5. **Singalila Wildlife Sanctuary:** This is 79sq kms protected area situated in the extreme north-western corner of North Bengal hills near the border with Sikkim and Nepal. The main animals found in the sanctuary are- leopard, brown bear, deer, mountain goat and many species of birds.
6. **Buxa Wildlife Sanctuary:** 745 sq km sanctuary at the foot of Bhutan hills near the junction of Bhutan, Assam and north Bengal is a home to tiger, leopard, elephant, gaur, sloth bear, sambhar and many species of birds and fishes. It is a tiger reserve under the 'Project Tiger'. It serves as a vital corridor for elephants migrating between the forests of Assam in the east and Bhutan in the North.
7. **Mahananda Wildlife Sanctuary:** 130 sq kms sanctuary was set-up in 1976 in the foothills of the eastern Himalaya. Terminalia-Duabanga forest and moist mixed deciduous forest of this sanctuary are home to leopard, elephant, gaur, serow, sambhar, swamp deer and many species of birds.

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS - 2**

**Activity 1**

1. Briefly give an overview of Chilika Lake?

.....  
 .....  
 .....

2. Mention wildlife sanctuaries and national parks of Orissa?

.....  
 .....  
 .....

**Activity 2**

1. Give a brief introduction of Sunderbans National park?

.....  
 .....  
 .....

2. Mention wildlife sanctuaries of West Bengal?

.....  
 .....  
 .....

**12.4 BEACHES, WATER BODIES AND NATURAL WONDERS**

Beaches, water bodies and natural wonders of Orissa (*Odisha*), West Bengal and Sikkim have been mentioned in following sub-sections 8.4.1, 8.4.2 and 8.4.3.

**12.4.1 ORISSA**

The beaches of Odisha (*Odisha*) are a popular holiday destination for both international and domestic tourists. The holy city of Puri is also a place where many beach lovers spend idyllic days by the sea and pilgrims take a holy dip. Only walkable beach on the eastern India, Puri white sand beach is characterized by its simplicity and serenity. In pristine beach of Chandipur-on-sea (16km from Balasore), the sea water recedes about 5-km from the shoreline twice in a single day.

Other beaches of this State- One of India’s prettiest beach resorts Gopalpur-on-Sea (16km from Berhampur), Chandrabhaga near Konark Sun Temple, Pati Sonapur, 30km from Berhampur, Balighai (8km from Puri), among others are also popular among holidaymakers looking for a break from mundane city lives.

**Hot spring of Orissa**, have a number of healing properties. In Taptapani, 50km from Berhampur, the spring's bubbling waters are piped directly into the Panthanivas tourist bungalow, while 42km from Bhubaneswar are the sulphur springs of Atri at the Lord Harakeswar temple. At the Deulajhari springs, 90km from Angul, the water seems to flow from the base of a shivalingam. Popular natural attractions, beaches and water bodies of Orissa are:

1. **Puri Beach:** This seaside beach offers relaxation and quiet a good atmosphere.
2. **Chandrabhaga beach:** The local beach at Chandrabhaga is 3km from the Konark sun temple down the Puri Road. The beach is quieter and cleaner than Puri's. To the east is a fishing village with a plenty of boating activity at sunrise.
3. **Chilika Lake:** Chilika Lake is Asia's largest brackish lagoon. Swelling from 600 sq km in April/May to 1100 sq km in the monsoon, the shallow lake is separated from the Bay of Bengal by a 60km-long sand bar called Rajhansa. The lake is noted for the million-plus migratory birds- including grey-legged geese, herons, cranes and pink flamingos- that flock here in winter (from November to mid-January) from as far away as Siberia and Iran and concentrate in a 3-sq km area within the bird sanctuary on Nalabana Island, best visited in early morning. Other attractions are rare Irrawaddy dolphins near Satapada, the pristine beach along Rajhansa, and Kalijai Island temple where Hindu pilgrims flock for the Makar Mela festival in January. **Satapada**, a small village, on a headland jutting southwestwards into the lake, is the starting point for most boat trips usually cruise towards the new sea mouth for a paddle in the sea and some dolphin and bird-spotting enroute. **Chilika Visitor Centre** is an exhibition on the lake, its wildlife and its human inhabitants. The centre has an upstairs observatory with a telescope and bird identification charts. The small town of Rambha is the nearest place to stay for turtle watching on Rushikulya beach. It is a very pleasant little backwater.
4. **Mangalajodi:** On Chilika's north shore, 60km northwest of Bhubaneswar, is this haven for resident and migratory birds, an ecotourism success story virtually unknown to the outside world until 2006. Six years prior, Sir Naiver Pika Sargasso started *Wild Orissa*, a waterfowl safeguard committee that began the arduous process of converting bird poachers into protectors.
5. **Gopalpur-on-Sea:** A seaside town popular for its prettiest beach lines.
6. **Odisha's Olive Ridley Turtles:** One of the smallest sea turtles and a threatened species, the olive ridley marine turtle swims up from the deeper waters beyond Sri Lanka to mate and lay eggs on Odisha's beaches. The main nesting sites are

Gahirmatha Marine (Bhitarkanika National Park), Devi near Konark and Rushikulya.

7. **Chandipur sea beach:** Huge and beautiful beach, the sea recedes an astonishing 4km at low tide- a sight to see. It's safe for swim here when there's enough water. There are quality hotels with good facilities.
8. There is also a **Ramchandi Beach** near Konark, a perfect gateway for adventure thrillers.

---

### 12.4.2 WEST BENGAL

---

Popular natural attractions, beaches and water bodies of West Bengal are:

1. **Digha:** One of the finest beaches of India is very popular with Bengalis. Known for its flat hard golden beach, one of the world's safest for bathing. Surrounded by a host of beautiful fishing hamlets by the sea. About 200 years ago Lord Warren Hastings, the Governor General complemented Digha as a '**Sanatorium- the Brighton of the East**'.
2. **Botanical Gardens:** In West Kolkata, 270-acre Botanical Gardens was founded in 1787 by the East India Company and played an important role in cultivating tea long before the drink became a household commodity. Today there's a **cactus house**, palm collection, river-overlook and a boating-lake with splendid Giant Amazon Lily pads and Mahogany trees. The most touted attraction is the 250-year-old '**world's largest banyan tree**'. Famous for its huge collection of bamboos, orchids, and the plants of screw pine genus.
3. **Mandarmani**, a sleepy village 180 km south of Kolkata sporting heavenly **beach** stretching nearly 15km. It remains one of the more unpolluted beaches in India, and supports countless colonies of sand bubbler crabs. The beaches see some additional action at dawn, when fishing boats drop anchor and disgorge their catches of marine goodies. There is also a beach called **Sana Beach**.

---

### Important Natural sites and Wonders in West Bengal

---

1. **Darjeeling:** Spreads in ribbons over a steep mountain ridge, surrounded by emerald-green tea plantations and with a backdrop of jagged white Himalayan peaks floating over distant clouds, the archetypal hill station of Darjeeling is rightly West Bengal's premier attraction. The area belonged to the Buddhist chogyals (kings) of Sikkim until 1780, when it was annexed by the invading Gurkhas from Nepal.

The East India Company gained control of the region in 1816 then returned most of the lands back to Sikkim in exchanged from British control

over any future border disputes. Tiger Hill viewpoint (2590m) is 11km south of Darjeeling, is a sight from where 250km stretch of Himalayan horizon, including Everest (8848m), Lhotse (8501m), Makalu (8475m) to the far west can be looked over.

2. **Kalimpong:** It sprawls along a ridge overlooking the roaring Teesta River and within sight of Khangchendzonga. Kalimpong's early development as a trading centre focused on the wool trade with Tibet, across the JelepLa Pass. Like Darjeeling, Kalimpong, once belonged to the chogyals of Sikkim, but it fell into the hands of the Bhutanese in the 18<sup>th</sup> century and later passed to the British, before becoming part of India. Scottish missionaries, particularly the Jesuits, made great efforts to win over the local Buddhists in the late 19<sup>th</sup> century and Dr. Graham's famous orphanage and school is still running today.
3. **Chandernagore:** A former French colony, it is a beautifully laid out town on the banks of Hoogly with churches, convents and cemeteries of the bygone French regime. Merged with India in 1954. The Bhubaneswari and Nandadulal temples are also worth a visit

---

### **Natural Sites of Darjeeling**

---

1. **Batasia Loop:** This unique railway loop along the route of the Himalayan Mountain Railway is an interesting example of engineering.
2. **Bhutia Basti Gompa:** The Bhutia Basti Gompa monastery was shifted from the Observatory hills to its present location. It boasts a library that has a copy of the Tibetan Book of the Dead.
3. **Botanical Gardens:** It is worth to visit for its rich, exotic and exclusive collection of a variety of Himalayan plants, flowers and orchids. The garden also has a greenhouse.
4. **Tiger Hill:** Situated at an altitude of 2,590m, 13km from Darjeeling, this spot has earned international fame for the magnificent view of the sunrise over Khangchendzonga and the great Eastern Himalaya. Mt Everest, the world's highest peak is visible from here.
5. **Ghoom Gompa:** About 8km from the hill resort of Darjeeling is a very beautiful and popular statue of the Maitrayi Buddha. This monastery has also preserved some rare handwritten Buddhist manuscripts.
6. **Himalayan Mountaineering Institute & Museum:** Institute runs mountaineering courses and has a well laid-out museum with a good collection of mountaineering equipment used in various expeditions.
7. **Bhan Bhakta Sarani:** Provides an enthralling view of snowcapped peaks. The chowrasta also gives a spectacular view of the peaks.

8. **Kurseong:** Kurseong is located between Siliguri and Darjeeling, known for its beauty and natural splendor.
9. **Natural History Museum:** This museum has an impressive collection of over 4,300 specimens. Established in 1903, it packs in a rich collection of fauna found in the Himalayas and Bengal. Among its attractions are the estuarine crocodiles. This museum also has good collection of butterflies and mineral forms of various stones.
10. **Observatory Hill:** The oldest site in Darjeeling, Observatory Hill, is known locally as 'Makal-Babu-Ko-Thaan'. According to legend, a Red Hat Buddhist Monastery called Dorje Ling, or 'Place of the Thunderbolt', stood at this very spot.
11. **Zoological Gardens:** The zoo, situated 2kms from the main town, houses some rare species of animals and birds, including Siberian Tigers, the rare Red Panda, snow leopards and snow yaks.
12. **Kalimpong:** It is famous for its monasteries, churches and a private library for the study of Tibetan and Himalayan languages, culture etc. This place also has a sericulture centre and orchid nurseries, and also offer some beautiful views of the Himalayan range.
13. **Mirik:** 52km from Siliguri and 55km from Bagdogra, Mirik is being developed as a new hill station in the mountains. Tea estates, orange orchards, and cardamom plantations surround Mirik.

Siliguri and New Jalpaiguri (NJP) is the jumping-off point for Darjeeling, Kalimpong, Sikkim, the northeast states, eastern Nepal and Bhutan. **Kurseong**, 35km south of Darjeeling, is the little sister of (an quiet alternative to) the Queen of the Hills further up the track. Its name derives from the Lepcha word *kurson-rip*, a reference to the small white orchid prolific in this area. Surrounded by manicured tea estates, it is the southern terminus for the charming steam-powered toy trains of the Darjeeling Himalayan Railway. 4km below Kurseong lie **Makaibari**, an organic and biodynamic tea estate where tea factories are open to visitors and in between the huge sorting and drying machines and the fields of green bushes are worth to see as well as meeting local tea guru and owner Rajah Banerjee. In Darjeeling the pleasant **Lloyd Botanical Gardens** contains an impressive collection of Himalayan Plants, most famously orchids and rhododendrons, as well as temperate trees from around the world.

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS - 3**

**Activity 1**

1. Give a brief idea of popular Beaches, water bodies natural attractions of Orissa?  
 .....

.....  
 2. Which natural sites are available in Darjeeling?  
 .....  
 .....

**12.5 SUMMARY**

Eastern India having rich biodiversity, sprawling across Orissa, West Bengal and Sikkim is world-famous for Simlipal (Orissa) National Park, Sunderbans (West Bengal) Tiger Reserve and Khangchendzonga (Sikkim) National Park are famous biosphere reserves of India. Delta wetlands and lagoons of India’s east coast preserves Chilka Lake, Bhitarkanika and Debriagarh Wildlife Sanctuary, Jaldhaphara wildlife sanctuaries, Digha beach, Darjeeling Himalayan Railway (Toy Train), Maenam wildlife sanctuaries, Yumthang valley, trek to Goecha La and Dzongri from Pelling, White water of Teesta and Rangeet, Puri beach, Gopalpur-on-sea beach, Ghoom Gompa, Darjeeling, Kalimpong, Mirik, glaciers, lakes, peaks and passes and the Gangetic delta of West Bengal are extremely rich natural wonders for variety of tourism activities. Sunderbans dense tropical forests can be a perfect break from the dull routine of urban living.

The unit familiarizes learners’ with the wildlife attractions, beaches, national parks and sites of natural importance of Orissa, West Bengal and Sikkim.

**12.6 GLOSSARY**

- **Beaches:** Water bodies, known for fun, frolic, rest, recuperation and adventure sports activities.
- **Mangroves:** Sites where the tiger has adopted to eating fish
- **National park:** refers to a plot of land set aside for the protection of wildlife.
- **Wildlife:** faunal species living in a particular habitat
- **Wildlife sanctuary:** A place where animals are kept in their natural surroundings.

**12.7 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS EXERCISES**

**Check Your Progress 1**

**Activity 1**

Base your answer on sec. 8.2.

---

**Check Your Progress 2**

---

**Activity 1**

Refer Sec. 8.3.1 and 8.4.1

**Activity 2**

Base your answer on 8.3.2 & 8.3.3.

---

**Check Your Progress 3**

---

**Activity 1**

For Answers See Sec. 8.4.1, 8.4.2 & 8.4.3.

---

**12.8 REFERENCES/BIBLIOGRAPHY**

---

- Lonely Planet, India, 14<sup>th</sup> edition, 2011, Singapore
- India's Today travelPlus, Images East, Jan-Feb. 2005.
- Lama, M.P. (1994), "Sikkim- Society, Polity, Economy and Environment", ed. Indus Publishing Company, New Delhi.
- Negi, S.S (1992), "Himalayan Wildlife: Habitat and Conservation", Indus Publishing Company, New Delhi. pp. 185-191.
- Rodgers, W.A. and Panwar, H.S. (1988). *Planning a wildlife protected area network in India*. 2 vols. Project FO: IND/82/003. FAO, Dehra Dun. 339, 267 pp.

---

**12.9 REVIEW QUESTIONS**

---

1. Discuss Digha, Kalimpong and Himalayan Mountaineering Institute and Mountain, Darjeeling as a natural wonders of West Bengal?
2. Outline the importance of Glaciers, lakes, waterfalls and passes of Sikkim?
3. Write an essay on Orissa's rich biodiversity?

---

## **Unit-13**

### **Deserts of India**

---

**Structure:**

**13.0 Objectives**

**13.1 Introduction**

**13.2 Salient Features Indian Physiography**

**13.3 Thar Desert**

**13.4 Check Your Progress**

**13.5 Summary**

**13.6 Glossary**

**13.7 Self-Assessment Questions**

**13.8 Reference and Suggested Readings**

---

**13.0 Objectives:**

---

The following are the essential objectives of the present unit:

- To know the natural resources available in India
- To understand the significance of natural resources in promoting and developing nature tourism in India.

---

### **13.1 Introduction:**

---

India has a unique culture and is one of the oldest and greatest civilizations in the world. It stretches from the snow-capped Himalayas in the north to Sun-drenched coastal villages of the south and the humid tropical forests on the southwest coast, from the fertile Brahmaputra valley in its east to the Thar Desert in the west.

India shares its border with Afghanistan and Pakistan to the northwest, China, Bhutan, and Nepal to the north, Myanmar to the far East, and Bangladesh to the east. Sri Lanka is separated from India by a narrow channel of sea formed by the Palk Strait and the Gulf of Mannar. The country can be divided into six zones: the North, South, East, West, Central, and Northeast. It has 28 states and eight union territories.

Here, we are giving a summary of India's physiography as a quick revision capsule that is useful for tourism learners. It will help them to work as tourism professionals.

---

### **13.2 Salient Features Indian Physiography:**

---

- The Geological Structure of India is very diverse because Indian rock belongs to different geologic periods, dating as far back as the Eoarchean Era. Its geographical land area can be classified into the Archaean System, Dharwar System, Cuddapah System, Vindhyan System, Gondwana System, Deccan Trap, Tertiary System, and Quarternary System.
- India is located latitudinally in the Northern Hemisphere and longitudinally in the Eastern Hemisphere. It extends from 8°4' north and 37°6' north in length (latitudes). And between 68°7' East and 97°25' East in width (longitudes). Because of this tremendous longitudinal extent, the difference in local time between our country's eastern and western extremes is about two hours.

- The local time along 82° 30' E longitudes is taken as the standard time of India, i.e. Indian Standard Time (IST). This meridian is known as the Standard Meridian of India. It has an area of 3.28 million square km. It is the seventh-largest country in the world. It accounts for nearly 2% of the world's total area. It is situated in the northern hemisphere.
- India has a coastline of 7516.6 km and a total land frontier of 15200 km. The Tropic of Cancer passes through its middle, crossing over Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Jharkhand, West Bengal, Tripura and Mizoram.
- India lies mainly on the Indian Plate, the northern portion of the Indo-Australian Plate, whose continental crust forms the Indian subcontinent. Physical divisions are marked by natural configuration. India is divided into six physiographic divisions based on the varied physiographic features: units as follows: Northern and North-eastern Mountain; Northern Plain; Peninsular Plateau; Indian Desert; Coastal Plains; and Islands.
- The Himalayas are one of the youngest fold mountain ranges in the world of tectonic origin and comprise mainly sedimentary rocks. They stretch from the Indus River in the west to the Brahmaputra River in the east. It consists of three parallel ranges: Himadri (Greater Himalayas), Himachal (Lesser Himalaya), and Shiwaliks (Outer Himalaya).
- Himadri (Greater Himalayas): It has an average elevation of 6100m and includes some of the highest peaks and some of the essential passes like Jelep La in the Chumbi Valley in Sikkim and Shipki La in the Sulej Valley. Mt. Everest or Sagarmatha, the highest peak in the world, lies in Nepal.
- Himachal (Lesser Himalaya): It has an average height of 3700-4500 m. The essential ranges are Dhauladhar, Pir Panjal, Nag Tibba and Mussoorie. Shimla, Ranikhet, Almora, Nainital, and Darjeeling Valley plains are important hill resorts. 'Doon or Doar' are unique features of this range that border the outer Himalayas.
- Shiwaliks (Outer Himalaya): It is a recent origin with an average elevation of 900-1200 m, giving a hogback appearance with a relatively steeper slope towards the south.

- Trans Himalayan Zones lie to the North of the Great Himalayas bordering Tibet. Some significant ranges of this zone are Karakoram, Ladakh, and Zaskar. This is the largest snow field outside the polar region.
- The Northern Plains are formed by the alluvial deposits brought by the rivers – the Indus, the Ganga and the Brahmaputra. These plains extend approximately 3,200 km from the east to the west. The average width of these plains varies between 150-300 km. The maximum depth of alluvium deposits varies between 1,000-2,000 m. These can be divided into three major zones from the north to the south: the Bhabar, the Tarai and the alluvial plains.
- The Indian Desert is located to the northwest of the Aravali hills lies the Great Indian Desert. It is a land of undulating topography dotted with longitudinal dunes and barchans. This region receives low rainfall below 150 mm per year; hence, it has an arid climate with low vegetation cover. It is because of these characteristic features that this is also known as Marusthali.
- The Plateau of India is roughly triangular, with its base parallel to the Ganga Valley and its apex pointing towards the country's southern tip. The rugged old mass of igneous and metamorphic rocks is part of the Gondwanaland tectonic plate.
- The Peninsular Plateau is bordered by the Western Ghats in the west, the Eastern Ghats in the east and the Satpura, Maikal range and Mahadeo hills in the north. Western Ghats are locally known by different names, such as the Sahyadri in Maharashtra, Nilgiri hills in Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Anaimalai hills, and Cardamom hills in Kerala.
- The Eastern Ghats Mountain Ranges are extending from Orissa to Tamil Nadu. It is more eroded than the Western Ghats. The Godavari and the Krishna Rivers drain it. Vishakhapatnam Peak is the highest peak of this range. Mahendragiri is the second-highest peak of this range. It continues as the Javadi and Shevaroy hills in the southwest of Chennai, beyond which they merge with the Western Ghats.
- The Western Ghat Mountain Range, or Sahyadri Range, is India's most extensive mountain range after the Himalayas, and it extends from the Tapi River valley to

the Nilgiri. It is divided into the North Sahyadri and the South Sahyadri. This range is the home of many hill stations like Matheran, Lonavala-Khandala, Mahabaleshwar, Panchgani, Amboli Ghat, Kudremukh and Kodagu.

- The Western Ghats Coastal Plain extends from Surat to Kanyakumari which is divided into four parts: Gujarat Plain- the Coastal area of Gujarat; Konkan Plain- between Daman and Goa; Kannad Plain- between Goa and Mangalore; and Malabar Plain- between Mangalore and Kanyakumari.
- The Eastern Coastal Plains lies between the Eastern Ghats and the sea coast from the Subarnarekha River to Kanyakumari. Compared to the Western Coastal Plain, it is more expansive because rivers like the Godavari, the Krishna, and the Kaveri formed the delta there. The continental shelf extends up to 500 km into the sea, challenging the development of good ports and harbours. Kolleru Lake is situated in the Godavari and the Krishna Rivers delta region in the Eastern Coastal Plain. Chilka Lake and Pulicat Lake are the best examples of lagoons in this region.
- India has two major island groups - one in the Bay of Bengal and the other in the Arabian Sea.
- The Bay of Bengal island group consists of about 572 islands/islets. These are situated roughly between 6°N-14°N and 92°E -94°E. The two principal groups of islets include Ritchie's Archipelago and Labyrinth Island. The entire group of islands is divided into two broad categories - the Andaman in the north and the Nicobar in the south. A water body separates them called the 10° channel.
- The islands of the Arabian Sea include Lakshadweep and Minicoy. These are scattered between 8°N-12°N and 71°E -74°E longitude. These islands are located at a distance of 280 km-480 km off the Kerala coast. The entire island group is built of coral deposits. There are approximately 36 islands, of which 11 are inhabited. Minicoy is the largest island, with an area of 453 sq. km. The entire group of islands is broadly divided by the 11° channel, north of which is Amini Island and to the south of Canannore Island.

---

### 13.3 Thar Desert:

---

The origin of the Thar Desert is a controversial subject. Some consider it only 4000 to 10,000 years old, whereas others state that aridity started in this region much earlier. Also known as The Great Indian Desert, it is spread over four states in India, namely Punjab, Haryana, Rajasthan, and Gujarat, and two states in Pakistan and covers an area of about 4,46,000 square kilometres.

The average annual rainfall of the region varies from 100 to 500 mm. It is distributed very erratically, occurring primarily between July and September. The mean average temperature varies from a minimum of 24 to 26 degrees C in summer to 4 to 10 degrees C in winter. One unique feature of this desert is that there is neither an oasis in it nor any artesian well. No native cactus or palm tree breaks the monotony of the vast expanse.

Hillocks and sandy and gravel plains intersperse stretches of sand in the desert. Due to the diversified habitat, this arid region's vegetation and animal life are vibrant. About 23 species of lizards and 25 species of snakes are found here, and several are endemic to the region.

Some wildlife species, which are fast vanishing in other parts of India, are found in the desert in large numbers, such as the great Indian bustard, the black buck, the Indian gazelle, and the wild ass in the Rann of Kutch. How these animals and insects survive in these harsh conditions, under such high temperatures and without drinking water and green vegetation is fantastic. They have evolved excellent survival strategies; their size is smaller than other similar animals living in different conditions, and they are mainly nocturnal. Certain other factors are responsible for these animals' survival in the desert. Due to the lack of water in this region, the transformation of the grasslands into cropland has been very slow. The protection provided to them by a local community, the Bishnois, is also a factor.

The increase in human and livestock population in the desert has led to a deterioration in the ecosystem, resulting in soil fertility and vegetation degradation.

---

### **13.4 Check Your Progress:**

---

- **Discuss the essential tourism products of Thar Desert:**

---



---



---



---



---



---



---

- **How natural resources of a destination help in the promotion and development of the tourism industry:**

---



---



---



---



---



---



---

**13.5 Summary:**

In the above line, we discussed the physiographical features of India because these come under natural tourism products. These factors also affect the culture of different states of India. Tourists travel to the mountain range, desert, area, and island to see their beauty, enjoy their climate, experience their culture and participate in adventure sports activities. A travel agent who profoundly understands the benefits of physiography can provide reliable and sufficient information.

**13.6 Glossary:**

- **Tourism Product:** A thing, person, place or event which can satisfy the needs or wants of a tourist.
- **Adventure Sports:** Sports activities full of risk, enthusiasm, fear etc.

**13.7 Self-Assessment Questions:**

- Tourists travel to India to enjoy cultural and natural attractions, but most visit India to experience its cultural beauty. Why? Give your answer with suitable examples.
- Highlight the different tourism products available in the Coastal region of India.
- Discuss the important natural attractions of the Thar Desert of India

---

**13.8 Reference and Suggested Readings:**

---

- <https://www.jagranjosh.com/general-knowledge/summary-on-the-physiography-of-india-1483613142-1>
- <https://www.britannica.com/science/island>

---

## **Unit-14**

### **Water Bodies: Ocean, Seas, Rivers and Lakes**

---

**Structure:**

**14.0 Objectives**

**14.1 Introduction**

**14.2 Types of Water Bodies**

**14.3 Indian Ocean**

**14.4 Indian Seas**

**14.5 Indian Rivers**

**14.6 Indian Lakes**

**14.7 Significance of Water Bodies in the Development of the Tourism Industry**

**14.8 Check Your Progress**

**14.9 Summary**

**14.10 Glossary**

**14.11 Self-Assessment Questions**

**14.12 Reference and Suggested Readings**

---

**14.0 Objectives:**

---

The following are the primary objectives of the present unit:

- To recognize the different categories of water bodies located in India
- To know the significance of different water bodies in the promotion and development of the tourism industry

---

**14.1 Introduction:**

---

A body of water or water body is any significant water accumulation, generally on a planet's surface. These water bodies can be small or large. The term most often refers to oceans, seas, lakes or ponds, but it also includes wetlands or, more rarely, puddles. A body of water does not have to be still or contained; rivers, streams, canals, and other geographical features where water moves from one place to another are also considered bodies of water. Most are naturally occurring geographical features, but some are artificial.

Uttar Pradesh occupies first place with the total length of rivers and canals at 31.2 thousand km, which is about 17 percent of the total length of rivers and canals in the country. Other states following Uttar Pradesh are Jammu and Kashmir, and Madhya Pradesh. Among the remaining forms of inland water resources, tanks and ponds have a maximum area (2.9 M.Ha.), followed by reservoirs (2.1 M.Ha.). Most of the area under tanks and ponds lies in the Southern States of Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka and Tamil Nadu. These states, along with West Bengal, Rajasthan and Uttar Pradesh, account for 62 percent of the total area under tanks and ponds in the country. As far as reservoirs are concerned, significant states like Andhra Pradesh, Gujarat, Karnataka, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra, Orissa, Rajasthan and Uttar Pradesh account for the more substantial portion of the area under reservoirs. The total area of inland water resources is, thus, unevenly distributed over the country, with five states, namely Orissa, Andhra Pradesh, Gujarat, Karnataka and West Bengal, accounting for more than half of the country's inland water bodies.

Water bodies play a significant role in every country's tourism industry. Clean water bodies attract more tourists to the destination. In India, Rivers are treated as Goddesses, and people gather during festivals to take holy baths in the Rivers. Many fairs and festivals are celebrated on the banks of the rivers of India, such as the Ganga Dussehra, Ganga Mahotsav, Dev Deepawali, Kumbh fair, etc. Water-based adventure sports activities are performed on water bodies. For example, those who wish to participate in white water rafting can visit Rishikesh, Scuba Diving and Snorkeling lovers can visit the Andaman & Nicobar Islands, and parasailing adventure sports lovers can see the sea beaches of south India. However, many nature lovers visit water bodies to enjoy their beauty – the pleasant climate and to participate in boating activities.

---

#### **14.2 Types of Water Bodies:**

---

Water is one of the most essential natural resources on earth and can be found in various forms. Water bodies are divided into categories of salt and fresh and small and large. Their features differentiate them from each other. You must have seen oceans, streams, ponds and more. These are bodies of water that only carry the utmost importance for life on earth. Let us discuss the different types of bodies of water in detail for a better understanding.

##### **Bodies of Water:**

- Oceans
- Seas
- Lakes
- Rivers and Streams
- Glaciers
- **Oceans:**

Oceans are the most enormous bodies of water on Earth, covering at least 71% of the Earth's surface. The entire marine saltwater you see on Earth ultimately ends up in the World's Oceans.

However, how our continents are arranged makes it easier to differentiate between specific ocean basins. Thus, looking at this distinction, the Pacific Ocean is the largest. Then we have the Atlantic Ocean, followed by the Indian Ocean.

Finally, we have the Southern Ocean and then the Arctic Ocean. Humanity depends on oceans in various ways; for instance, we get food from them, use them for transport, and use them for their impact on the water cycle.

- **Seas:**

These can be called sub-sections of the oceans. The coastal reaches of the oceans where land masses surround them are known as seas.

The most common example of a sea is the Mediterranean Sea. We also have other popular ones like South China, the Caribbean, and the Bering Sea. Most of these water bodies directly connect to the ocean.

However, there are particular saline water bodies; the Caspian Sea is one example. Furthermore, it is divided into smaller bays, straits, and gulfs categories.

- **Lakes:**

These are inland bodies of water found either in freshwater or saltwater. Lakes are also enclosed by land; some even categorize the Caspian Sea as a lake. There is no precise difference between a lake and a pond.

However, lakes, like the Great Lakes of North America and Lake Baikal of Russia, can also be huge. Many procedures create lakes, some of which are glacial erosion, volcanic eruption and damming of rivers.

- **Rivers and Streams:**

These are bodies of water in motion. In other words, the water which flows on the earth's surface creates rivers and streams. Streams can be said to be the smaller version of the rivers. They consist of fresh water in the ocean through the constant flow of rivers and streams.

Rivers are quite an essential source of water as well as energy. In addition to that, they are also significantly used for transportation purposes and as fishing grounds. River Nile in Africa is one of the longest rivers in the world, in addition to the Amazon River in South America. Furthermore, we have River Mississippi, Congo, Mackenzie and more.

**• Glaciers:**

Glaciers are frozen bodies of water. They are also water bodies that move slowly, similar to frozen rivers. All the glaciers, ice caps, and glacial ice are millions of years old. They cover almost 10% of the earth's land and are freshwater sources.

**Features of Water Bodies:****Oceans:**

- The oceans are vast and deep bodies of water. Usually, these oceans separate continents from one another. The oceans are bodies of salt water.
- We have five oceans in our world. They are the Pacific Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean, the Indian Ocean, the Arctic Ocean, the Southern Ocean or the Antarctic Ocean.
- The largest and deepest ocean in the world is the Pacific Ocean, covering one-third of the earth's surface.
- This is followed by the Atlantic Ocean and the Indian Ocean in order of size.
- Oceans are home to various plants and seaweed and thousands of sea creatures like sea urchins, whales, sharks, octopuses, a variety of fish, snakes, squids, etc.
- Oceans also contain millions of tiny dead animals called coral polyps, which form the beautiful coral reefs. Australia is the largest coral reef in the world.
- Oceans are helpful to us in many ways as they are a rich source of minerals. They provide energy and valuable fuels like petroleum.
- They work as an essential channel of transportation.

**Seas:**

- Seas are also big water bodies but are smaller than oceans. They are partly enclosed by a land mass and open into the sea.
- We see many seas eventually connecting to the oceans. For example, the Mediterranean Sea is attached to or joins the Atlantic Ocean.
- Some of the seas are the Red Sea, the Black Sea, the Arabian Sea, the Caribbean Sea and the Mediterranean Sea.
- The Red and the Black Seas have their names because the Red Sea has millions of tiny red plants growing at the bottom, and the Black Sea because of the thick black mud at its bottom.

- Under the seas, we find huge plains, high mountains, and even deep valleys. Interestingly, these various landforms are also present under the sea.
- The largest of the seas is the South China Sea, which is supposed to hold hundreds of islands in its waters.
- Like the oceans, the sea is helpful to us in many ways. It is a rich food source, providing various kinds of seafood.
- It also works as a channel for transportation.
- Like oceans, seas are a food source used extensively as ship transport lanes.

**Lakes:**

- A lake is a water body surrounded by land on all sides. It is the opposite of an island, a piece of land surrounded by water on all sides.
- Lakes can be salty or freshwater lakes. Salty lakes are due to the evaporation that takes place.
- Some famous lakes are Lake Superior, the Caspian Sea, Lake Victoria, Lake Aral and the Dal Lake.
- The Caspian Sea is the world's largest salt lake. It is so big that it is referred to as a sea.
- Lake Superior is the biggest freshwater lake.
- The Dead Sea is a saltwater lake.
- It is said that nothing can survive in the Dead Sea because it is very salty.

**Rivers:**

- Rivers are large streams that flow over the land. They are, hence, large flowing water bodies. They usually end up in an ocean or sea.
- Rivers are freshwater bodies that generally originate in mountainous or elevated areas.
- We have two kinds of rivers, which are the Snow-fed Rivers and the second is the Rain-fed Rivers.
- Snow-fed rivers find their source in the snowcapped mountains, where the snow melts, flowing down and forming rivers; rain-fed rivers, as the name suggests, are formed in areas where it rains a lot, giving rise to these rivers.

- The place where a river starts its journey is called the source, and where it ends its journey is called the mouth of a river.
- Rivers, again, are very useful. As we have seen in history, most civilizations were formed near the banks of rivers, like the Egyptian Civilization on the banks of the River Nile and the Indus Valley Civilization on the banks of the River Indus.
- This is because the rivers deposit much fertile soil called silt, which is excellent for growing crops.

**Waterfall:**

- Water falling from a height is usually called a waterfall. A waterfall is formed when a river flows over an edge of hard rocks and falls from a great height.
- Waterfalls make beautiful tourist spots and help generate hydroelectric power.
- The Angel Falls in South America is the world's highest waterfall.

---

**14.3 Indian Ocean:**

---

The Indian Ocean is a body of salt water covering approximately one-fifth of the world's total ocean area. It is the smallest, geologically youngest, and physically most complex of the world's three major oceans. It stretches for more than 6,200 miles (10,000 km) between the southern tips of Africa and Australia and, without its marginal seas, has an area of about 28,360,000 square miles (73,440,000 square km). The Indian Ocean's average depth is 12,990 feet (3,960 metres), and its deepest point, in the Sunda Deep of the Java Trench off the southern coast of the island of Java (Indonesia), is 24,442 feet (7,450 metres). The Indian Ocean is bounded by Iran, Pakistan, India, and Bangladesh to the north; the Malay Peninsula, the Sunda Islands of Indonesia, and Australia to the east; Antarctica to the south; and Africa and the Arabian Peninsula to the west. In the southwest, it joins the Atlantic Ocean south of the southern tip of Africa, and to the east and southeast, its waters mingle with those of the Pacific Ocean.

Defining the oceanic limits of the Indian Ocean is complicated and remains unsettled. The most apparent border and the one most generally agreed upon is the Atlantic Ocean, which runs from Cape Agulhas, at the southern tip of Africa, due south along the 20° E meridian to the shores of Antarctica. The border with

the Pacific Ocean to the southeast is usually drawn from the East Cape on the island of Tasmania south along the 147° E meridian to Antarctica. The Bass Strait, between Tasmania and Australia, is considered by some to be part of the Indian Ocean and by others to be part of the Pacific. The northeastern border is the most difficult to define. The one most generally agreed upon runs northwest from Cape Londonderry in Australia across the Timor Sea, along the southern shores of the Lesser Sunda Islands and of Java, and then across the Sunda Strait to the island of Sumatra. The boundary is usually drawn across the Singapore Strait.

There is no universal agreement on the southern limit of the Indian Ocean. In general (and for this article), it is defined as extending southward to the coast of Antarctica. However, many – notably in Australia – consider the portion closest to Antarctica (along with the corresponding southern extensions of the Atlantic and Pacific) part of the Southern (or Antarctic) Ocean. Australians often call the entire expanse south of that continent's south coast the Southern Ocean.

---

#### **14.4 Indian Seas:**

---

##### **Arabian Sea:**

The Arabian Sea is located in the northwestern part of the Indian Ocean, between the Arabian Peninsula and the Indian subcontinent. It merges with the Gulf of Oman to the northwest and the Gulf of Aden to the southwest and spans 1,491,000 square miles. The depth of the sea varies as it joins the Indian Ocean to the south, but it is generally approximated at 8,970 feet.

The Sea links the neighbouring areas of Iran, the Arabian Peninsula (including Yemen, Oman, and the United Arab Emirates), Pakistan, the Horn of Africa, and India. For this reason, it has gained eminence as a vitally important historical trade route. Smaller political areas also fringe the Arabian Sea, including Socotra off the coast of Yemen, the Khuriyya Muriyya islands and the Lakshadweep islands.

The Arabian Sea is connected to surrounding bodies of water by a series of gulfs and straits that provide a steady avenue into the sea. The largest and most notable gulfs that feed into the sea are the Gulf of Oman, which connects the Arabian Sea to the Persian Gulf and the Gulf of Aden, which connects the Arabian Sea to

the Red Sea. However, gulfs are not the only access point into the Arabian Sea, as two significant rivers drain into its borders. The Arabian Sea is augmented by water flowing down the Indus and Narmada rivers, the principal means of access to the Arabian Sea.

The Arabian Sea is distinguished by its intense water level, often maintained close to land masses. The deep water level is hypothesized to be one of the reasons there are no significant island developments in the centre of the Arabian Sea, even though islands have increased quite a lot on the outer borders. While far below the surface, the Arabian Sea floor exhibits a startling complexity akin to standard land formations. Perhaps most notable among the submarine features is the Maldive Ridge, which runs along the ocean floor from the Arabian Sea into the Indian Ocean. This ridge, essentially similar to a mountain range on land, eventually rises above the water level to become the Maldives Islands.

The Maldive Ridge, along with other seafloor formations in the Arabian Sea, is hypothesized to be the result of seismic activity roughly 50 million years ago. According to geologists, during this time, Asia collided with the subcontinent of India, forming the Arabian Sea and its unique underground ridges. After the initial collision of the two land masses, the Arabian Sea has been shaped by various highly influential factors, including erosion from water currents. One of the most profound areas of the sea floor is where the Indus River meets the Arabian Ocean. In the place where the two bodies of water meet, a sharp canyon has been formed on the sea floor as the forces of the incoming water sweep away the sandy bottom. Also, due to this erosion, the Indus River carries the sediment further into the sea, eventually depositing the excess into ridges or other formations.

### **The Bay of Bengal:**

The Bay of Bengal Sea is a large but shallow embayment of the northeastern Indian Ocean, covering an area of about 2,173,000 square km. It is bordered by Sri Lanka and India to the west, Bangladesh to the north, Myanmar (Burma) and the northern part of the Malay Peninsula to the east. According to the definition of the International Hydrographic Bureau, the southern boundary extends from Dondra

Head at the south end of Sri Lanka in the west to the northern tip of the Indonesian island of Sumatra in the east. The bay is about 1,000 miles (1,600 km) wide, with an average depth of more than 8,500 feet (2,600 metres). The maximum depth is 15,400 feet (4,694 metres). Several large rivers – the Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna, and Kaveri (Cauvery) on the west and the Ganges (Ganga) and the Brahmaputra on the north – flow into the Bay of Bengal. The Andaman and Nicobar groups, the only islands, separate the bay from the Andaman Sea.

### **Salient features of the Bay of Bengal:**

The Bay of Bengal is bordered to the north by a broad continental shelf that narrows to the south and slopes of varying gradients on the northwest, north, and northeast, all cut by canyons from the rivers. Most important are the Ganges-Brahmaputra, Andhra, Mahadevan, Krishna, and Godavari canyons. These were former estuaries when the shoreline was at the margin of the continental shelf during the Pleistocene Epoch (about 2,600,000 to 11,700 years ago). The deep floor of the bay is occupied by a vast abyssal (deep-sea) plain that slopes to the south. The main submarine features include the beginning of the long, seismically active Java Trench near the Nicobar-Sumatra mainland and the aseismic Ninetyeast Ridge. The fan of the Ganges River sediments is the most comprehensive – 5 to 7 miles (8 to 11 km) – and thickest in the world. The bay itself was formed as the Indian subcontinent collided with Asia within roughly the past 50 million years.

---

### **14.5 Indian Rivers**

---

The Rivers of India play an essential role in the lives of the Indian people. The river systems provide irrigation, potable water, cheap transportation, electricity, and livelihoods for many people all over the country. This clarifies why nearly all of India's major cities are situated on river banks. The rivers are also important in Hindu mythology and are considered holy by all Hindus in the country.

**Eight major rivers:**

(Indus, Brahmaputra, Narmada, Tapi, Godavari, Krishna and Mahanadi) Along with their numerous tributaries, they make up the river system of India. Most of the rivers pour their waters into the Bay of Bengal. Some rivers, whose courses take them through the western part of the country and towards the east of the state of Himachal Pradesh, empty into the Arabian Sea. Parts of Ladakh, northern parts of the Aravalli range and the arid parts of the Thar Desert have inland drainage. All major rivers of India originate from one of the three main watersheds.

- The Himalaya and the Karakoram ranges
- Vindhya and Satpura ranges and Chotanagpur plateau in central India
- Sahyadri, or Western Ghats in Western India

A detailed description of the famous Rivers of India are described below:

**1. River Ganga:**

Ganga is the most sacred river to Hindus and is worshipped as the goddess Ganga. Ironically, it is one of the most polluted rivers too. Not only humans but a range of water species are also a threat.

**Origin:** Gangotri (Himalaya)

**Length:** 2525Km

**Depth:** 17 m (56 ft)

Third Largest River in the world.

**Major Cities:** Patliputra, Kashi, Allahabad, Varanasi, Kolkata, Badrinath, Haridwar, Kanpur, Patna, Farrukhabad, Fatehgarh, Kannauj, Chakeri.

It also created the World's Largest DELTA in West Bengal - Sundarban Delta.

**Major Tributaries:** Gomti, Ghaghra, Tamsa, Yamuna, Koshi.

**Merges into** the Bay of Bengal.

**2. Indus River:**

This gave rise to the most significant ancient human civilisation, the Indus Valley civilisation, which holds great historical value.

Also, the word India has been derived from Indus.

India is a Greek and Latin term for the country of the river Indus.

**Origin:** Tibetan Plateau

**Flows through:** The Ladakh

**Length:** 3180 Km

Major Cities: **Leh, Sukur, Hyderabad (Pakistan)**

Major Tributaries: Balram River, Beas, Chenab, Dras, Gilgit, Jhelum, Ravi, Satluj

**Merges into** the Arabian Sea

Pakistan has 93 percent, India has five per cent, and China has a two per cent share of this river.

### **3. Yamuna River:**

The name Yamuna is derived from the Sanskrit word "yama", meaning 'twin', and it may have been applied to the river because it runs parallel to the Ganges.

It is the longest and the second-largest tributary river of the Ganges.

One official has also called this river a sewage drain because of its high amounts of pollutants.

Origin: Yamunotri Glaciers (Himalaya) 70 percent of water to Delhi from the Yamuna

Tajmahal is situated on the banks of it

Major Cities: Etawah (UP), Auraiya (UP), Mathura, New Delhi

States Covered: Uttarakhand, Himachal Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Haryana, Delhi

Major Tributaries: Hanuman Ganga, Sharda, Chambal

Merges into: Ganga, Allahabad (It is the longest river in India which does not directly flow to the sea)

### **4. Brahmaputra:**

The lives of millions of Indian and Bangladeshi citizens are reliant on the Brahmaputra River.

Its delta is home to 130 million people and 6,00,000 people on the riverine islands.

**Origin:** Angsi Glacier (Tibet)

Entered from Arunachal Pradesh to Assam

**Length:** 2900 Km

**Majorly covered cities:** Dibrugarh (Assam), Guwahati

Another name: Jamuna (Bengali), Tsangpo (Tibet), Pinyin or Yarlung Zangbo (China)

**Merges into:** Padma River of Bangladesh

Also called as Tsangpo-Brahmaputra

#### 5. Mahanadi:

The word Mahanadi is a compound of the Sanskrit words maha ("great") and nadi. It is the major river in Chattisgarh and Odisha. Its water is mainly used for irrigation and drinking purposes. Also known as The Ruin of Orrisa. (Devastating flood over the years but before the construction of HIRAKUND DAM)

**Source:** Sihawa, Dhamtari, Dandakaranya, Chhattisgarh

**Length:** 858 Km

**Major cities on the river:** Cuttak, Sambalpur.

#### 6. Godavari:

The Godavari is India's second-longest river after the Ganga. The river has been revered in Hindu scriptures for millennia and continues to harbour and nourish a rich cultural heritage.

The longest river in Southern India is also known as 'Dakshina Ganga.'  
2nd Largest after Gangus (Ganga)

**Origin:** Tryambakeshwar, Maharashtra

**Length:** 1465 Km

**Major Towns along the river:** Rajahmundry (AP), Nashik (MH), Nanded (MH), Nizamabad (AP).

**States Covered:** Maharashtra, Telangana, Chhattisgarh, Andhra Pradesh, Puducherry (Yanam).

**Major Dam on River:** Gangapur Dam, Sriram sagar dam.

The Krishna Godavari Basin is one of the main nesting sites of the endangered Olive Ridley sea turtle.

**Merge into** The Bay of Bengal.

## 7. Krishna:

The Krishna River is India's fourth-biggest river in terms of water inflows and river basin area, after the Ganga, Godavari and Brahmaputra.

Also known as Krishnaveni, the Krishna River is the fourth largest in India (after the Ganges, Godavari, and the Brahmaputra).

**Origin:** Mahabaleshwar (Maharashtra)

**Length:** 1400 Km

**Major towns along the river:** Sangali (MH), Konya (MH), Vijayawada (AP)

**Major Tributaries:** Bhima, Palleru, Malaprabha, Tungbhadra

It is a primary source of irrigation for Maharashtra, Karnataka, Telangana and Andhra Pradesh.

**Dams:** Nagarjun Sagar Dam, Dhom Dam, Narayanpur Dam.

This river's delta is one of India's most fertile regions and home to ancient Satavahana and Ikshvaku Sun Dynasty kings.

Vijayawada is the largest city on the River Krishna.

**Merges into** the Bay of Bengal.

## 8. Cauveri:

The primary uses of Kaveri are providing water for irrigation, household consumption, and electricity generation in South India.

**Origin:** Talakaveri (Western Ghats, Karnataka)

**Important Tributaries:** Amravati, Shemsha, Hemavati

**Major Towns along the river:** Kushalnagar, Mysuru northern suburbs, Srirangapatna, Karur, Tiruchirapalli (TN), Kumbakonam, Mayiladuthurai, Poompuhar.

**Length:** 765 Km

**Merges into** The Bay of Bengal

---

## 14.6 Indian Lakes:

---

India is known for its diverse natural resources. There are many resources out of which water bodies have a significant hold on the scenic beauty of our country.

Lakes are one of India's primary sources of natural beauty, and there are many lakes in almost every state.

Lakes can be classified into various categories:

Sr. No	Category of Lake in India
1.	Freshwater Lakes
2.	Saltwater Lakes
3.	Natural Lakes
4.	Oxbow Lakes
5.	Artificial Lakes
6.	Crater Lakes

**List of Important Lakes in India:**

The list of important lakes in India is given below:

Lakes in India	State/UT
Pulicat lake	Andhra Pradesh
Kolleru Lake	Andhra Pradesh
Haflong Lake	Assam
Deepor Beel	Assam
Chandubi Lake	Assam
Kanwar lake	Bihar
Hamirsar Lake	Gujarat
Kankaria Lake	Gujarat
Badkhal Lake	Haryana
Brahma Sarovar	Haryana
Chandra Taal	Himachal Pradesh
MaharanaPratap Sagar	Himachal Pradesh
Dal Lake	Jammu Kashmir
Wular Lake	Jammu Kashmir
Agara Lake	Karnataka
Ulsoor Lake	Karnataka

Kuttanad Lake	Kerala
Sasthamkotta	Kerala
Bhojtal	Madhya Pradesh
Shivsagar	Maharashtra
Loktak lake	Manipur
Umiam Lake	Meghalaya
Tam Dil	Mizoram
Chilika Lake	Odisha
Harike	Punjab
Kanjli	Punjab
Sambhar Lake	Rajasthan
Tsomgo Lake	Sikkim
Chembarambakkam	Tamil Nadu
Hussain Sagar	Telangana
Govind Bhallabh Pant Sagar	Uttar Pradesh
Belasagar	Uttar Pradesh
Bhimtal	Uttarakhand
Kaliveli	Tamil Nadu

### Significance of Lakes:

Lakes in India are a great source of:

- Irrigation
- Drinking-Water
- Navigation
- Livelihood

### Essential Facts about Lakes:

- Wular Lake is one of the biggest freshwater lakes in Asia, and it was formed due to tectonic activity.
- Chilika Lake in Odisha is the largest saline water lake in India.
- Vembanad Lake in Kerala is the longest lake in India.

- Cholamu Lake in Sikkim is the highest lake in India.
- **Lonar Lake** is a notified National Geo-heritage Monument, saline, soda lake, located at Lonar in Buldhana district, Maharashtra.

---

#### **14.7 Significance of Water Bodies in the Development of the Tourism Industry:**

---

Clean water contributes to the recreation and tourism industry worldwide by accentuating beautiful beaches, white-water rivers, mountain lakes, and aquatic ecosystems such as coral reefs. Water has a powerful attraction for people. When people decide to plan vacations and travel for recreation, instruction, and pleasure, many have a solid tendency to head to the water.

For example, a day at the beach provides recreation, relaxation, and a chance to renew the spirit. A third of all Americans visit coastal areas yearly, making 910 million trips while spending about \$44 billion. Coastal tourism supports businesses like hotels, resorts, restaurants, outdoor outfitters, chartered fishing services, and travel agencies.

One of the largest service industries in the United States is travel and tourism, two broad categories which involve approximately 17 million jobs. Total travel and tourism expenditures in the United States for 2000 reached \$582.5 billion, while total revenue was \$99.5 billion. In increasing numbers, domestic and foreign travellers visit theme parks, natural wonders, and points of interest in major U.S. cities. Worldwide, tourism annually generates over 3.5 trillion dollars, a significant percentage of which involves water-related tourism.

Because of the popularity of tourism worldwide, coastal, lake, and riverfront development has dramatically increased in recent decades. For instance, riverfront developments often include convention centres, hotels, retail and entertainment facilities, housing, and sometimes an aquarium or discovery centre. With the emergence of riverfront parks, land near rivers is becoming highly desirable.

#### **Popular Water-Related Activities:**

Almost all Americans participate in some water-based recreation and tourism and (on average) spend about 10 percent of their disposable income on recreational activities, including water-related tourism. Popular water-related vacations may

involve cruise ships, ecotourism, sport fishing, underwater diving, and canoeing and kayaking, to name a few.

**Cruise Ships:**

Cruise ships are elegant vessels featuring swimming pools, theatres, restaurants, and luxurious passenger accommodations. Some ships built in the 1980s were twice the size of their 1970s predecessors and carried over 1,000 passengers. In the 1990s, these floating entertainment centres became even more significant, some carrying nearly 5,000 passengers and crew. One half-billion-dollar ship featured amenities such as a giant floating casino, a luxurious 1,350-seat theatre, a 9-hole miniature golf course, an ice rink, and a shopping mall.

Some cruise operators also offer small ships for up-close exploration of wilderness waterways. The shallow draft of small vessels can take tourists along shorelines, alongside icebergs and calving glaciers, and through the narrowest navigable channels. \*The small vessels offer a more informal and relaxed way to observe difficult-to-reach water passages and landmasses.

**Ecotourism:**

Ecotourism is a popular way to enjoy water resources while still conserving the integrity of nature. Ecotourism is tourism directed toward exotic, often threatened, natural environments, primarily to support conservation efforts and to observe wildlife. The fastest-growing segment of the world's tourism business, ecotourism, is expanding at 30 percent a year worldwide. Many tourism experts believe this increase is due to people becoming more knowledgeable about ecosystem values.

**Sport Fishing:**

Sport fishing is enjoyed in freshwater or salt water. Freshwater fishing takes place in such places as lakes, ponds, rivers, and streams. Game fish in these waters include trout, bass, and many other species. They range in size from 0.25 kilograms (0.5 pounds), such as bluegills, to as large as 45 kilograms (100 pounds), such as king salmon.

Salt-water fishing occurs in oceans, estuaries, and tidal rivers. Game fish in these waters tend to be larger than average freshwater fish. They include snappers,

bonefish, striped bass, and tuna. Fish can be landed as large as 70 kilograms (150 pounds), such as sailfish and tarpon, and even as much as 225 kilograms (500 pounds), such as marlin.

Fishing expenditures are increasing, and participation rates outpace population growth in some areas. Much of recreational spending is tied to fish and wildlife, requiring high-quality water and habitat for survival.

### **Underwater Diving:**

Underwater diving is entering and remaining below the surface to explore, work, or have fun. Diving is famous all over the world as a tourist activity. It is usually done in the ocean, but divers also explore other water bodies such as lakes, rivers, and ponds. Snorkelling is a popular underwater activity involving swimming face down on the surface (or just below). The essential equipment is a mask to observe underwater objects and aquatic plants and animals, fins for propulsion, and a slender plastic tube called a snorkel to breathe. Scuba divers carry a tank of air that allows them to breathe while diving deep underwater. The Professional Association of Dive Instructors estimates that there are now 6 million active scuba divers worldwide. They engage in many different types of diving: wreck, cave, commercial, and military. The most common form of scuba diving is sport diving, or recreational diving, which is practised at depths of less than 39 meters (130 feet). From these depths, divers can make a straight ascent to the surface. Diving beyond this limit requires advanced training.

In general, divers seek locations where the water is clear, the temperatures warm, and the marine life plentiful. Divers often visit areas with coral reefs because they are colourful and dense with life and provide shelter for many types of fish. The Caribbean is the most popular destination globally, with many designated marine parks or sanctuaries. The South Pacific, the Indian Ocean, and the Red Sea are other ordinary dive destinations. However, cold-water divers may venture into cold waters when fully equipped with proper exposure protection (such as a thick wet or dry suit) to endure the harshness of such climates.

### **Canoeing and Kayaking:**

Canoes and kayaks are small crafts that are pointed at both ends. Most canoes are open-topped boats, while kayaks are entirely enclosed except for an opening for each occupant. One or more persons can paddle both types of boats. One of the sport's most exciting activities is whitewater kayaking. Participants sit in closed-topped boats and propel themselves with a double-bladed paddle through fast-moving water. Kayakers wear waterproof clothing, a life vest, and a helmet.

**14.8 Check Your Progress:**

- **Throw a light on the critical water-based adventure sports activities:**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

- **How water bodies help in the promotion of the tourism industry at any destination:**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**14.9 Summary:**

Water bodies are the lifeline of any country, and India is rich in all forms of water bodies. All Indian states have Rivers, lakes and ponds. Oceans and seas cover the south. Due to these water bodies, India offers every category of water-based tourism product, such as

- (a) places of recreation

(b) alternate means of transportation

(c) tourism, and they also help develop the town as a whole with its multiplier effects such as trade and commerce, local transportation, hotels and restaurants etc.

Water bodies are the first victims of urbanization; hence, their conservation/restoration is imperative for a healthy and sustainable town or city. However, the future of water bodies will be influenced not just by climatic factors but also by policy decisions, technological changes, better spatial planning, and good governance.

---

#### **14.10 Glossary:**

---

- **Water Body:** An area filled with water.
- **Water-Based Adventure Activity:** Any adventure activity performed inside or above a water body.

---

#### **14.11 Self-Assessment Questions:**

---

- Explain in detail about the different forms of water bodies found in India.
- Highlight the significance of water bodies in India's tourism industry.
- Discuss the popular water-based adventure sports activities.

---

#### **14.12 Reference and Suggested Readings:**

---

- Shores E.L. (2018) "Bodies of Water", published by Capstone
- Rice D.H. (2014) "Water Bodies", published by Teacher Created Materials.
- Vaidyanathan S. & Mitra S. (2011), Rivers of India, published by Niyogi Books.
- <https://byjus.com/free-ias-prep/important-lakes-india/>
- <http://www.allindia-tours.com/water-sports.html>

---

## **Unit-16**

### **Mountains of India**

---

**Structure:**

**16.0 Objectives**

**16.1 Introduction**

**16.4 Mountain Ranges**

**16.9 Check Your Progress**

**16.10 Summary**

**16.11 Glossary**

**16.12 Self-Assessment Questions**

**16.13 References and Suggested Reading**

---

**16.0 Objectives:**

---

After completing this unit, you will be able to:

- Understand the meaning and differences between different water bodies.
- Explain the role of water bodies in promoting and developing the tourism industry.

---

**16.1 Introduction:**

---

As previously discussed, tourists travel to see man-made or natural resources at the destination. In natural resources, we include attractions created by nature, and man has not played any role in the information about such attractions. In the present unit, we will discuss the water bodies because they are created by nature, and human beings visit a destination to see these attractions. Water bodies include oceans, seas, rivers, lakes, and ponds. Tourists visit here to see the beauty of the water bodies and enjoy boating in lakes and rivers, water species, islands, beaches, etc.

Mountain ranges of the world also attract nature lovers. These mountains house hill stations, lakes, green forest areas, pleasant climates, snowfall, and other features. Some essential mountain ranges in the world are the Himalayan mountain range, Aravali range, Adez range, Shivalik, Rockies mountain range, etc. Deserts also attract a large number of tourists. Deserts offer flora and fauna species, camel safari, dunes, unique culture, etc. Some important deserts worldwide are the Sahara Desert, Gobi Desert, Thar Desert, etc. India is rich in cultural and natural tourism resources. In summer, tourists visit nearby hill stations to enjoy the pleasant climate. Tourists visit the southern part of India to enjoy sea beaches, water species, and islands. Those who wish to see the lakes can visit the cities of India, viz. Udaipur, Nainital and Bhopal. The river can go to Rishikesh, Haridwar, Varanasi, and other places.

---

**16.2 Mountain Ranges:**

---

A Mountain Range is a sequential chain or series of mountains or hills with similarity in form, structure and alignment arising from the exact cause, usually

an orogeny. There are five major Mountain Ranges in the World, which are discussed below:

### **1. The Himalayan Mountain Range:**

The Himalayas or Himalayas is a mountain range in Asia that separates the plains of the Indian subcontinent from the Tibetan Plateau. Its highest peak is Mount Everest (8,848m). It is a young fold mountain of the tertiary period, which was folded over the Tethys Sea due to the inter-continental collision. It extends for about 2500 km between the Indus and Brahmaputra gorges from west to east in an arc-shaped manner. It plays an essential role in determining the climate of the Indian Sub-continent. It has enormous potential for various metallic minerals like Cobalt, Nickel, Zinc, Copper, Antimony, and Bismuth.

### **2. The Alps Mountain Range:**

The Alps Mountain Range is the highest and most extensive mountain range system of Europe, stretching approximately 1,200 kilometres (750 mi) across eight Alpine countries (from west to east): France, Switzerland, Italy, Monaco, Liechtenstein, Austria, Germany, and Slovenia. It plays an essential role in determining the climate of Europe. Its highest peak is Mont Blanc (4,808.73 m).

### **3. The Atlas Mountains Range:**

The Atlas Mountains Range stretches around 2,500 km (1,600 mi) through Morocco, Algeria and Tunisia. Its highest peak is Toubkal (4,167 m). It separates the Mediterranean and Atlantic coastlines from the Sahara Desert and is inhabited by Berber populations. It was formed during the Precambrian period.

### **4. The Andes Mountain Range:**

The Andes or Andean Mountain Range is the world's most extended continental mountain range, stretching approximately 7,000 km (4,300 mi). Its highest peak is Aconcagua (6,961m). A continuous highland along the western edge of South America forms it.

### **5. The Rockies Mountain Range:**

The Rocky Mountain Range, situated in western North America, stretches more than 3,000 miles (4,800 km) from the northernmost part of British Columbia, in

western Canada, to New Mexico, in the Southwestern United States. Its highest peak is Mount Elbert (4,401 m). Public parks and forest lands protect it and are popular tourist destinations, especially for hiking, camping, mountaineering, fishing, hunting, mountain biking, skiing, and snowboarding.

The position of the mountain ranges influences the climate of any region. It also obstructs the moisture-laden winds. For example, the Himalayas act as a climate barrier by blocking frigid winds from Central Asia and Siberia. These mountain ranges are also the source of the rivers.

---

**16.3 Check Your Progress:**

---

- **Discuss the adventure sports activities which are performed on water bodies:**

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

- **How do water bodies help the tourism industry's growth at any destination?**

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

**16.4 Summary:**

---

Natural tourism resources attract nature lovers. These include water bodies, mountain ranges, deserts, etc. A tourism service provider should have proper knowledge about such resources. Otherwise, he will not be able to satisfy

customers' queries. Only a travel agent knowledgeable about a destination's natural resources can satisfy a customer's query.

---

### 16.5 Glossary:

---

- **Desert:** A large area covered with sand that receives very little rainfall.
- **Sand Dune:** Small-sized hill made with a large amount of sand.

---

### 16.6 Self-Assessment Questions:

---

- How do natural resources help the tourism industry's growth at the destination?
- Discuss the different tourism resources of Deserts.

---

### 16.7 References and Suggested Readings:

---

- <https://courses.lumenlearning.com/suny-earthscience/chapter/introduction-to-the-oceans/>
- <https://www.britannica.com/place/Pacific-Ocean>
- <https://www.nationalgeographic.com/environment/oceans/reference/arctic-ocean/>
- <https://www.encyclopedia.com/environment/encyclopedias-almanacs-transcripts-and-maps/tourism-oceans>
- <https://www.toppr.com/guides/biology/difference-between-ocean-and-sea/>
- <https://www.jagranjosh.com/general-knowledge/list-of-major-mountain-ranges-of-the-world-1517574937-1>
- <https://www.livescience.com/57653-lake-baikal-facts.html>
- <https://www.tripsavvy.com/the-best-watersports-destinations-in-india-4138133>
- <https://www.jagranjosh.com/general-knowledge/list-of-the-major-deserts-of-the-world-1495792768-1>
- <https://www.livescience.com/23140-sahara-desert.html>

---

## Unit-17

### The Four Dhams of India

---

**Structure:**

- 17.1 Introduction
- 17.2 Objectives
- 17.3 Concept and Importance of Pilgrimage
- 17.4 Tourism and Pilgrimage
- 17.5 Potential of Pilgrimage Tourism
- 17.6 Changing Patterns of Pilgrimage Tourism
- 17.7 Important Hindu Religious Centre
  - 17.7.1 Varanasi
  - 17.7.2 Haridwar
  - 17.7.3 Mata Vaishno Devi
  - 17.7.4 Ujjain
  - 17.7.5 Panch Prayags
- 17.8 Pilgrimage: Case Studies
  - 17.8.1 Four Dhamas (India)
    - 17.8.1.1 Badrinath
    - 17.8.1.2 Jagannath Puri
    - 17.8.1.3 Dwarka Puri
    - 17.8.1.4 Rameshwaram
  - 17.8.2 Four Dhamas (Uttarakhand)
    - 17.8.2.1 Yamunotri
    - 17.8.2.2 Gangotri
    - 17.8.2.3 Kedarnath
    - 17.8.2.4 Badrinath
- 17.9 Summary
- 17.10 Glossary
- 17.11 Answer to check your progress
- 17.12 Reference / Bibliography
- 17.13 Terminal and Model Questions

---

## 17.1 INTRODUCTION

---

The evolution of tourism can also be attributed to journeys undertaken since ancient times to places considered sacred. In common parlance, visitation to sacred places is considered pilgrimage or tirtha-yatra. Tirtha-Yatra not only means the physical act of visiting the holy places but also implies mental and moral discipline. People travelled singly or in groups for the purpose of spiritual or to attain salvation or moksha. In India, since time immemorial, tourism has been associated with places of religious significance. These destinations are scattered all over the country.

Every religion has its sacred foci to which man of faith periodically converge. From the most ancient civilization to the present times, sacred centers have exerted a powerful pull factor of believers. The Sumerians of antiquity, who reverently ascended the step of the Ziggurat to reach the gate of heaven, have their modern counterpart in the devout Jews and Christians who visit the holy land and in the multitude of Muslims from diverse parts of the world who undertake the Hajj Yatra to Mecca.

The present unit focuses upon the ancient concept of the pilgrimage (tirthatan). In ancient time the tirth-yatras were related with 'geopietty' but in present time, the concept of pilgrimage has purely changing. Today, most of pilgrimage tourists want luxuries, pleasure and comforts on their pilgrimage tour. In this unit we also take up some case studies of pilgrimage centres in India. So you will find how pilgrimage tourism is fast developing in India and holds tremendous potential for domestic tourists.

---

## 17.2 OBJECTIVES:

---

After reading this unit you will be able to:

- Discuss the concept, tradition and importance of pilgrimage.
- Explain the relationship of modern tourism and traditional pilgrimage in India.
- Explain the various pilgrimage tourism places, their importance and facilities available there.

---

## 17.3 CONCEPT AND IMPORTANCE OF PILGRIMAGE

---

Man at a very early stage learnt to survive by keeping constantly on the move from one pasturing group to another, exhausting each in turn. Perhaps, traces of nomadic urge exist in all of us. But the first travellers were traders, and tourism as a pleasurable activity began with flamboyant Romans. (Bridges, J.B., 1956). In India, however, it all began with pilgrims and pilgrimages. The institution of pilgrimages has its source in our Indian civilisation, though the tirtha - concept of religious tourism was quite comprehensive, it nevertheless, symbolised the twin spirit of religion and tourism. In its broadest sense, "Pilgrimage was travelling for Wanderlust" (Shankratayan, Rahul, 1959). Wish fulfilment was an important

factor. People tried to find solace and solutions to their problems in supernatural powers. Belief is important. Teerth Yatras were undertaken so every religion has its sacred foci to which man of faith periodically converge. From the most ancient civilization to the present times, sacred centers have exerted a powerful pull on the believers. Religions like Islam is also associated with it "Ajmer Sharif Urs" and visit to Nizamuddin Dargah are example of it. Pilgrims in India visited shrines, rivers, mountains and springs. This practise can be seen even today in different religions in India. Routes used by merchants were followed. Monasteries provided refreshments and rest to the pilgrims. Even today this class of tourism constitutes a major portion. People travel to gain 'Punya'.

The nature of Hindu pilgrimage is capsule in the Indian expression tirtha-yatra. In common parlance, visitation to sacred places is considered tirtha-yatra. Basically tirtha-yatra is a journey, undertaken for the sake of worship and/or to pay respect to a site of special religious significance. The origin and evolution of the tirtha-yatra tradition of Hindus seems to be as old as their civilization or perhaps even older than that. The practice of pilgrimage in Hinduism follows from some of the basic underpinnings of its philosophy. Four dominant ideas have persisted in Hindu thought concerning attitudes to life. These are dharma, artha, kama and moksha. Dharma is characterized by "considerations of righteousness, duty and virtue", Artha entails material gain, worldly advantage and success. Kama signifies love and pleasure. The fourth, moksha is the spiritual realization and self-emancipation which has been equated by some scholars with salvation or freedom from transmigration. Journey to sacred places provides opportunity for the householder to detach himself for some time the cares and worries of daily life and to devote that time to prayer, contemplation, and listening to the spiritual discourses of holy men.

History of pilgrimage tourism in India, its origin, growth and development, is closely associated with our ancient development. Every mountain, peak, river and kunda is held sacred in India. Historically India has a long and prestigious background well documented in the Pauranic literature. The land is closely associated with legendary heroes of the Ramayana and Mahabharat epics who have left their imprint in the names of many places, the devotional lives of the people and even on social customs and cultural activities. The great Adiguru Shankaracharya from South India (Kerala) trekked to India in the 8<sup>th</sup> century AD and established Badrinath, Dwarika, Jagarnath Puri and Rameshwarm as the four **dham** to revive Hinduism. There are so many temples in the different part of India dedicated to different Hindu deities and other religion. Most sacred among them are the 'Panch Badris', 'Panch Kedars', 'Panch Prayags', 'Hemkund Sahib', 'Meenakshi Temple', 'Chari Sharif', 'Golden Temple', 'Kamakhya Temple' and 'Sirdi Temple' etc. While Badrinath, Kedarnath, Gangotri, Yamuotri, Hemkund, Amarnath and Vaisno Devi etc. are centres of national significance, others are a number of pilgrim centres which may more appropriately be called satellites or adjuncts to the major pilgrim centers.

---

## 17.4 TOURISM AND PILGRIMAGE

---

Tourism and Pilgrimage are closely related. Pilgrimage tourism helps greatly in promotion of the destination. Earlier, pilgrimage was associated with 'purity of thought' and undertaken for expiation of sins or for salvation. The concept of the pilgrimage was, 'the harder the journey the better the reward.' Thus, the pilgrimage needed minimum infrastructural facilities. But in present time, pilgrimage is pleasure-oriented and demands vast infrastructure in the tertiary sector. Thus, to meet the ever increasing demand for better travel facilities for the number of pilgrim tourists at pilgrim centres the state government and tourism department develop infrastructure and provide various facilities and amenities for the visitors. Chardham Yatra in this region can be cited as an example. The journey in the past was quite tedious and hazardous. Recently, however, the roads have got totally rebuilt, and the transport is easily available. Today these places are well connected by motor vehicle. Many pilgrim centres which were earlier small towns, but on their religious importance have now emerged as big cities. For example Shirdi, a very small village, now on account of the increasing popularity of Shirdi Saint's shrine is fast developing into a big town with a number of hotels coming up. Similarly Katra in Jammu a small town, now has a number of hotels with various types of facilities available here. Religious centres also develop into good shopping spots for traditional local handicrafts, paintings and food items. So large numbers of devotees travelling to religious centres generate handsome revenue and are the source of livelihood to local people who depend on the tourist's inflow.

---

## 17.5 POTENTIAL OF PILGRIMAGE TOURISM

---

The scope of pilgrimage tourism can be called area specific because if one is the devotee of a particular religion, visit repetitively those religious centres where his worshipping deity resides. After sometime, he may lose his interest, owing to lack of any other adventure and tourism activities.

In spite of this limited scope, pilgrimage tourism has enough potential to develop domestic tourism. If we analyse the traditional pilgrim centres which are associated with rivers, their confluences, coasts or hill areas. Our forefathers had tremendous sense of physical landscapes. They searched beautiful sights for the purpose of pilgrimage. They have associated pilgrim with 'geopiety'. Tirthatan provided them opportunity to break away from the cares and worries of the mundane world. The locations of the traditional pilgrim centres are such that they can always serve dual purpose of pilgrimage and adventure. If you go to Gangotri will certainly excite your urge to go for trekking. Similarly, while landing at Nainital can you restrict your visit to Nainital Lake only! Will the charm of Jim Corbett National Park not lure you? This clearly indicates that one can not restrict pilgrimage tourism to specific area boundaries. It has tremendous potential to develop tourism and provide other tourism activities with various facilities for the tourist in and around the pilgrimage centre.

---

**17.6 CHANGING PATTERNS OF PILGRIMAGE TOURISM**

---

Change is an eternal process - essentially germane to all the manifestations of the nature - 'animate to inanimate' and 'structures to functions'. It is owing to this process that life evolved and diversified on the planet earth. It led to the origin of mankind and its present day prosperity which is progressively moving ahead. Ecologists and bio and geo-scientists use the term 'succession' to explain as to how any why a densely forested area transforms in to a desert and vice versa, or, why and how a species consistently changes itself with the dynamically changing environment or, dies-out to give way to another species better suited to the prevailing environmental conditions.

Obviously, pilgrimages as a concept, tradition, ritual, value, system or philosophy too has not been and would never be beyond nature's indispensable scheme of change. Immersed as the earliest form of organized travel. Thus, in all parts of the world and in case of all the religions, the legacy of pilgrimages, over the time, has consistently witnessed changes in many ways.

What-ever one's objective of practicing 'pilgrimage', it has paramount significance from both 'individual' and 'societal' perspectives because: (i) it engages all human capabilities (audio-visual, motor, emotional); (ii) it highlights and deepens the mutual bonds that are a very important factor in religious emotions; (iii) it stresses the value and prolongs remembrance of the religious events that are connected with the place, (iv) it strengthens the socio-economical, cultural, spiritual and civilizing bonds that surpass the boundaries of a race or even a nation. In the process of travel and sojourn, the pilgrims interact, learn, sell, buy, exchange material and spiritual goods enroute and at the destination, get acquainted with the socio-cultural values of the hosts amidst whom they come as strangers but go back while leaving behind strong social bonds.

As observed in the fore-going, pilgrimage has been an age-old practice in all parts of the world, and more so in India where religion has been intricately linked with 'essence of life'. Thus, in all the sects of Hinduism, the concept of pilgrimage is keenly guided by the philosophy of Dharma (ethics/duties), Samsara (the continuing cycle of birth, life, death and rebirth), Karma (action and subsequent reaction), Moksha (liberation from samsara) and the various Yogas (paths or practices). Hindu practices generally involve seeking awareness of God and sometimes also seeking blessings from Devas. Therefore, Hinduism has developed numerous practices meant to help the people to think of divinity in the midst of everyday life. Hindus can engage in puja (worship or veneration) either at home or at a temple. At home, they often create a shrine with icons dedicated to the individual's chosen form(s) of God. Temples are usually dedicated to a primary deity along with associated subordinate deities. Visiting temples is not obligatory. In fact, many visit temples only during religious festivals. Worship is performed through icons (murtis). The icons serve as a tangible link between the worshiper and God. The image is often considered as the manifestation of God, since God is

immanent. The Padma Purana states that 'the murti is not to be thought of as mere stone or wood but as a manifest form of the Divinity'. In fact, the Hinduism has a developed system of symbolism and iconography to represent the sacred in art, architecture, literature and worship. These symbols gain their meaning from the scriptures, mythology, or cultural traditions. The syllable Om (which represents the Parabrahman) and the Swastika sign (which symbolizes auspiciousness) have grown to represent Hinduism itself, while other markings such as tilaka identify a follower of the faith. Hinduism associates many symbols, which include the lotus, chakra and veena, with particular deities. Mantras are invocations, praise and prayers. Their meaning, sound, and chanting style enable a devotee to focus on holy thoughts or express devotion to God/the deities. Many devotees perform morning ablutions at the bank of a sacred river while chanting the Gayatri Mantra or Mahamrityunjaya Mantras. The epic Mahabharata extols Japa (ritualistic chanting) as the greatest duty in the Kali Yuga (what Hindus believe to be the current age). True to this, Japa is a common spiritual practice among the Hindus in particular. Going by the religious dictum, one must regularly and religiously perform pooja with Mantras and Japa in the prescribed manner, at home or in a close by shrine, and should also essentially visit the teerthas. The word Teertha is derived from the Sanskrit root 'tri' which means to be free; by adding 'th' its meaning becomes the one who frees you from the world. According to this explanation, synonyms for Teerthas are gods, holy places, scriptures, gurus and sacred Karmas, as all of them are the source of attaining spiritual purity, enlightenment, prosperity or moksha depending on the way one takes it.

Expectedly, over the years, the number and types of pilgrims visiting the holy shrines, as also their motivation/demand/expectation/satisfaction/behavior patterns, have consistently changed in accordance to the change socio-cultural, economic and ecological changed incurring in their on environment, as well as, in the environment of the destination region. The dynamic advancements in the technological sphere followed by the urbanization and modernization processes are obviously the factors responsible, to this effect. Owing to ever improving accessibility facility, now it is easier to visit the otherwise distant destinations. Effective means of communication make it even more handy. Consistently increasing disposable income and discretionary time (Leisure) available to more and more people, on the other hand, is making it possible to more and more people to go on pilgrimages, even those who could not have otherwise been able to travel owing to their physical limitations. The steadily enhancing awareness level is creating more and more reasons to travel religious destinations than traveling exclusively for pilgrimages. Thus, not so devout people are also traveling out of the zeal to see the Himalayan grandeur or the colorful cultural spectrum of the region, alongside having the darshana of the deity. Consequently, the demographic pattern of the pilgrims is also changing in terms of age, sex, occupation and income levels its. It is no more confined to the elderly pilgrims, rather people from almost all age groups are now traveling to the shrine resorts. Demand patterns of the pilgrims to be consistently changing in accordance to their

changing life style Vis a Vis provision of diverse facilities at and enroute the pilgrim centres.

---

### CHECK YOUR PROGRESS: 1

---

1. Explain the interrelationship between Pilgrimage and Tourism.
2. Analyse the changes in the concept of pilgrimage tourism in India from ancient to recent times.

---

### 17.7 IMPORTANT HINDU RELIGIOUS CENTRES

---

The various religious centres of the god and goddesses dotting the different part of India, represent the abiding faith of the Indian people in them, the reverence with which they look up to them, and the obeisance they pay in the temples constructed in their names. There are temples of representing 'divine knowledge', Durga Mata, the 'Fire' from of Lord Shiva and 'Chandika' Kali Mata. So we can divided Indian religious centres into two main categories: Firstly, the certain religious centres which are already established for pilgrimage from ancient times, e.g. Gangotri, Yamunotri, Kedarnath, Badrinath and Mata Vaishno Devi etc. and Second type of religious centres are those which on account of their geopolitical situation and availability of space and other amenities facilitated the development of a religious centre. These religious centre are scattered all over the India. Some prominent religious centre is listed below:

**Northern India:** Badrinath, Kedarnath, Gangotri, Yamunotri, Vaishno Devi, Haridwar, Banaras, Ayodhya, Chari Sharif, Amarnath, Chitrakut and Hemkund etc.

**Eastern India:** Jagannath Puri Temple, Konark Temple, Bodh Gaya, Kamakhya Devi Temple, Belur Math and Kali Ghat Temple etc.

**Western India:** Dilwara Temple, Dwarika, Somnath, Ajmer, Ujjain, Junagarh, Shirdi and Pushkar Temple etc.

**Southern India:** Rameshwaram, Aurobindo Ashram, Kanyakumari, Meenakshi Temple and Madurai Temple etc.

---

#### 17.7.1 BANARAS (VARANASI)

---

Banaras - Varanasi - Kashi is considered to be the holiest of all pilgrimage sites in India. Banaras in Uttar Pradesh is amongst the oldest living cities in the world. Banaras is located between two rivers Varana and Asi, and hence the name Varanasi. Thousands of pilgrims come to Banaras daily to take a ritual dip in the sacred river Ganga, as it is believed that it will cleanse their souls of sins, and to worship God at its many temples. Banaras houses the Kaasi Visweswara (Visanatha) temple, enshrining one of the twelve Jyotirlingams of Lord Shiva. It is

so old that it is a part of Indian mythology and finds mention in the epics Ramayana and Mahabharata. It has nearly hundred ghats. Many are bathing ghats but at the others, cremations are conducted. According to Hindu belief, dying at Kashi (Banaras) ensures release from the eternal cycle of birth and rebirth.

---

### 17.7.2 HARIDWAR

---

Haridwar which is also known as the gateway of the Gods is another important city with religious importance. Haridwar stands as the gateway to the four pilgrimages of Uttarakhand also known as the Char Dhams of Uttarakhand – Gangotri, Yamunotri, Kedarnath and Badrinath. The follower of Lord Shiva (Har) and follower of Lord Vishnu (Hari) pronounce this place Hardwar and Haridwar respectively. Haridwar has been sanctified by the presence of three Gods; Brahma, Vishnu and Mahesh. Lord Vishnu is said to have his footprints on a stone that is set in the upper wall of Har-ki-Pauri where the holy Ganga touches it all the times. Devout believers feel that they can go to heaven by getting their salvation after a dip in the sacred Ganga at Haridwar. Two great events that take place here are the memorable Kumbh Mela, which happens once every twelve years and the Ardh Kumbh Mela, which comes once every six years.

---

### 17.7.3 MATA VAISHNO DEVI

---

A pilgrimage to the holy shrine of Mata Vaishno Devi is considered to be one of the holiest pilgrimages of our times. Popular the world over as ‘Manh Maangi Muradein Poori Karne Wali Mata’, which means, the Mother who fulfils whatever her children wish for, Shri Mata Vaishno Devi resides in a holy cave located in the folds of the three peaked mountain named Trikuta (pronounced as Trikoot). The Holy cave attracts lakhs of devotees every year. In fact, the number of yatris visiting the holy shrine annually now exceeds 5 million. This is due to the unflinching faith of the devotees who throng the shrine from all parts of India and abroad.

---

### 17.7.4 UJJAIN

---

Ujjain, a historic capital of Central India in Madhya Pradesh is a venerated pilgrimage center enshrining Mahakaleshwara, one of the Jyotirlinga manifestations of Lord Shiva. The Mahakaleshwar temple is located near a lake. It has five levels, one of which is underground. Also in Ujjain is the temple to Parvati-Harasiddhi Devi temple.

---

### 17.7.5 Panch Prayags

---

Prayag means confluence of two or more rivers. These prayags are termed holy in religious epics like Ramayana and Mahabharata. From Centuries, people take holy

bath in these Prayags. It is said that the water of Holy River is supposed to wash away the sins. There are five Prayags in Uttarakhand known as Vishnu Prayag, Dev Prayag, Rudra Prayag, Karan Prayag and Nand Prayag. These are collectively called the Panch Prayags.

---

## 17.8 IMPORTANT PILGRIMAGE CENTRE

---

---

### 17.8.1 FOUR DHAMAS (INDIA)

---

‘Dham’ means “Abode of God”. The great 8th century reformer and philosopher Adi Guru Shankaracharya was prominently involved in reviving the Hindu Dharma in India. He travelled throughout the country and grouped the four sacred places Badrinath, Jagannath Puri, Dwarka and Rameshwaram, as the Char Dham. At three of the Dhams Lord Vishnu and His Avatar Lord Krishna are worshipped while at one Dham, Rameshwaram, Lord Shiva is the resident deity. All of four dhams at the four corners of India symbolize the essential unity of India’s spiritual traditions and values. In the north is Badrinath, to the east is Puri, to the west Dwarka and to the south Rameshwaram. Each of the four dhams is a citadel of ancient temples and religious monuments, with on most significant temple as its distinguishing landmark. To the Hindu the land of his or her forefathers is benignly watched over at all times by the gracious protector of all – Lord Vishnu – preserver and extenuator – and Lord Shiva – the forgetful benefactor – lost in fumes of cannabis but benign as ever. As with Muslims, who aspire to visit the holy city of Mecca at least once in a lifetime, the Hindu aspires to visit all four Dhams at least once in a lifetime. This is the most blessed of all pilgrimages assuring freedom from sins and ensuring Moksha – salvation from the miserable cycle of life and death.

---

#### 17.8.1.1 BADRINATH

---

**Badrinath** or the **Badrivishal**, one of the four Hindu Dhamas, is the most prominent shrine resort in district Chamoli (Garhwal Region) of the State of Uttarakhand dating back to Vedic times. Dedicated to Lord Vishnu, the shrine is believed to be reinstated by Adi Shankaracharya, who also established a ‘Math’ (Joshimath) about 48 km downstream from Badrinath which serves as winter seat of the Lord. On account of being situated in the Greater Himalayan Zone, the shrine resort has spectacularly fascinating natural grandeur all around with inherently spiritual ambience. Badri refers to a berry that was said to grow abundantly in the area, and nath means Lord. The legend goes that in the 8<sup>th</sup> century AD Adi Shankaracharya discovered a black stone image of Lord Badrinath made of Saligram stone from the Narad Kund and consecrated it in a cave near Tapt Kund hot springs. In the sixteenth century, the King of Garhwal moved the murti to the present temple. The sacred township is settled at the height of 3110 mt. above the sea level along the either banks of the turbulent Alaknanda

River that flows southwards, embracing the Rishi Ganga to the south of Badrinath. Geographically speaking, this holy resort runs longitudinally between the coordinates 30°44'56" North and 79°31'20" East, into a spacious 4.5 km. long and 1.5 km. wide valley that opens-up northwards to the Bhotiya village of Mana - the last settlement along the Alaknanda Valley. Badrinath valley is flanked by the Nar and Narayana mountains with the awe-inspiringly beautiful peak of Nilkantha on the backdrop. Interestingly, the Nar Parvat is also called as Kuber Bhandar (treasury of the Lord of Wealth), after the popular belief for containing diamonds and emeralds. The Badri Vishal Temple standing about 15 mt high on the right banks of the Alaknanda River has a gushing hot water spring (Tapta Kunda) close to it. The pilgrims take a holy dip in the Tapt Kund before entering the temple. There are a number of important places and sites of religious significance in and around Badrinath, like Tapta Kund, Narad Kund, Panch Shilas, Panch Dharas, Brahma Kapal, Charanpaduka, Sesa Netra, Nilkanth Peak, Urvasi Temple, Mata Murti, Bhim Pul and, Vasudhara Falls, Satopanth and Swargarohini further upstream.

The temple remains closed from October to April due to the winter snow, when temperatures fall to sub-zero degrees.

---

### 17.8.1.2 JAGANNATH PURI

---

Jagannath Puri located in the Eastern Indian state of Orissa. Jagannath Puri is one of the oldest cities in the eastern part of the country. It is situated on the coast of the Bay of Bengal. The resident Deity at the main temple is Lord Jagannath (Lord of the Universe). He is present together with His elder brother Balaram, who is believed to be an avatar of Shesha, the snake on whom Vishnu usually rests, and His younger sister Subhadra, who may be an incarnation of Lakshmi. Lord Jagannath is unmarried here and is closely associated with Krishna, Vishnu's eighth avatar. The main temple here is about 1000 years old and constructed by Raja Choda Ganga Deva and Raja Tritiya Ananga Bhima Deva. Puri is the site of the Govardhana Matha, one of the four cardinal institutions or Mathas established by Adi Guru Shankaracharya. The Puri temple is one of the holiest shrines in India and it is regularly visited by millions of devotees every year. The unique feature of the Puri Jagannath Temple is the Ratha Yatra. A ratha is a chariot and these chariots are really big.

---

### 17.8.1.3 DWARKA PURI

---

Dwarka is as old as the history of India. It is located in the Western Indian state of Gujrat. The city derives its name from word dvar meaning door or gate. It is located close to where the Gomti River merges into the Gulf of Kutch. The city lies in the westernmost part of India. It was the seat of Sri Krishna after He quit Mathura, His maternal home, to come and reign here. Since it has been held as

holy for a long time it has gradually accumulated, over the years, a large number of religious monuments and institutions that today make it one of the most revered spots in Hinduism. Adi Shankaracharya, one of the most learned and sanctified personalities in Hinduism, built one of his four maths here. It is still an institution where Hindu scriptures are studied and their inherent meanings deciphered. The main Dham temple houses Ranchchodji, another name for Lord Krishna who time and often fled from the battlefield under unfavorable circumstances to return again another day and win. "Ran" means "War" while "Chod" means "Running away". There is also a temple to Lord Krishna's wife Rukmini, who is believed to be an incarnation of Lakshmi, the goddess of wealth and beauty. This small temple is an architectural masterpiece. The temple walls are decorated with beautiful paintings depicting Rukmini's pastimes with Lord Krishna. This temple is dating back to the 12<sup>th</sup> century. Also resident near Dwarka is the Jyotirlinga temple of Nageshwar. Dwarka is so entwined with legends and myths that the pilgrim is overcome with religious fervor upon setting foot on its sacred soil.

---

#### **17.8.1.4 RAMESHWARAM**

---

Rameshwaram is the only one of the four Dhams where the resident Deity is Lord Shiva. Rameswaram located in the Southern Indian state of Tamil Nadu. It is situated in the Gulf of Mannar at the very tip of the Indian peninsula. According to legends, this is the place from where Lord Rama, Vishnu's seventh avatar, worshipped Shiva prior to His attack on Lankapuri, the capital city of the Rakshasas to rescue his beloved wife Sita who had been abducted by Ravana, king of the Rakshasas. The Ramanatha Swamy Temple dedicated to Lord Shiva occupies a major area of Rameshwaram. Rameshwaram is significant for the Hindus as a pilgrimage to Banaras is incomplete without a pilgrimage to Rameswaram. The presiding deity here is in the form of a Linga with the name Sri Ramanatha Swamy, it also is one of the twelve Jyotirlingas. Sethu Karai is a place 22 km before the island of Rameshwaram from where God Ram built a Floating Stone Bridge "Ramasethu" till Rameshwaram that further continued from Dhanushkodi in Rameshwaram till Talaimannar in Sri Lanka as mentioned in the great Hindu epic Ramayana. The ruins of the Ramasethu are submerged under the sea as shot from Gemini 1 satellite of NASA in 2004.

---

#### **17.8.2 FOUR DHAMAS (UTTARAKHAND)**

---

Pilgrimage has a long tradition in Hinduism. The origins of the Char Dham remain obscure. The appellation Char Dham had been reserved for India's most famous pilgrimage circuit, four important temples – Puri, Rameshwaram, Dwarka, and Badrinath. They had been grouped together by the great eighth-century reformer and philosopher Shankaracharya (Adi Guru Sankara) as the archetypal All-India pilgrimage circuit to the four cardinal points of the subcontinent. Badrinath, the last visited and the most important of the four sites in the original Char Dham, also

became the cornerstone site of a Himalayan pilgrimage circuit dubbed the Chota (little) Char Dham. Unlike the original Char Dham, the sites of the Chota Char Dham have their own, separate sectarian affiliation. The three major sectarian movements in modern devotional Hinduism have representation, with the Vaishnava site Badrinath joined by one Shaiva site (Kedarnath) and two Devi sites (Yamunotri and Gangotri). Each site has its own unique characteristics. As late as the mid-twentieth century, devotees consistently still used the "Chota" designation to designate the Himalayan version of the Char Dham. That usage reflects the importance of the circuit for most of its history. All four pilgrimage sites sit in the Himalayas, previously difficult to reach, requiring a two month hike. During that time, only wandering ascetics, Hindu masters, and wealthy devotees with an entourage made the pilgrimage. Since the Sino-Indian War of 1962, when India made road improvements in the region to conduct campaigns against China, travel to the sites has become easier for pilgrims. Currently, the Char Dham sees upwards of 250,000 visitors in an average pilgrimage season, which lasts from approximately April 15 until Diwali (sometime in November). The pilgrimage season has the heaviest traffic in the two-month period before the monsoon. Despite the danger, pilgrims continue to visit the Char Dham in the monsoon period, as well as after the rains end. Although temperatures at the shrines in the early winter months (October and November) prove inhospitable, the incredible mountain scenery that surrounds the sites has the most vividness after the rains have moistened the dust of the plains below. Most pilgrims to the Char Dham embark from the famous temple town of Haridwar. Others leave from Haridwar's sister city, Rishikesh, or from Dehra Dun, the capital of Uttarakhand. From there, pilgrims traditionally visit the Char Dham Yatra in the following order:

---

### 17.8.2.1 YAMUNOTRI

---

**Yamunotri** (3323 mt.), as evident from the name it self, the place is related to the origin of the second most sacred river of the country, viz., the Yamuna. In the traditions of Char Dham Yatra of Uttarakhand, this western most shrine is to be visited first. Perched atop a flank of the Bandarpunch Peak, this religious centre is in fact situated opposite the Gangotri Dhama. Yamunotri River originates from the Champasar Glacier lying one km ahead of where Yamunotri Shrine is presently located. Surya Kund and Divya Shila are two of the more important religious sites located in close vicinity of the temple. Near the temple is the hot water pool known as Jamunabai Kund. A dip in the kund is most rejuvenating and refreshing. The pandas of Yamunotri come from the village of Kharsali, which is on the other bank of the Yamuna near Jankibaichatti. The Temple opens each year on the auspicious day of Akshaya-Tritiya, which generally falls during the last week of April, or the first week of May. The Temple always closes on the sacred day of Diwali with a brief ceremony.

---

### 17.8.2.2 GANGOTRI

---

The importance of Gangotri (3140 m) area is quite evident from the fact that it is

associated with the origin of the holy mother Ganga, originating from the Gangotri (Ganga descended). The present day Gangotri located in the midst of giant deodars and conifers seems to have been once the site of the snout of the Gangotri which owing to the obvious geo-physical processes have retreated to its present location (i.e., the present day Gaumukh). Presence of the Bhagirath Shila (where the legendary king is believed to have meditated to get the Ganga to the earth from the heaven) close to the Gangotri Temple support this view. The present **Gangotri Temple**, a white marvel of architecture, is said to have been constructed by the Gorkha Chieftain Amar Singh centuries back. People from all parts of country, and the Hindu settlements world over, have undying faith in these shire. The pujaris are Brahmins from the village of Mukhwa. Like Yamunotri, the shrine of Gangotri opens each year on the auspicious day of Akshaya-Tritiya, which generally falls during the last week of April, or the first week of May. The Temple always closes on the sacred day of Diwali with a brief ceremony.

---

### 17.8.2.3 KEDARNATH

---

The main shrine, the Kedarnath - one of the 'Twelve Jyotirlingas' is located at 30°44'15" latitude and 79°68'33" longitude at an altitude of 3583 mt. on the foothills of the beautiful Manapath mountain. Kedarnath is approachable on foot through 14 km long trek from Gaurikund which in-turn is connected by road with Rishikesh, Dehradun, Kotdwara and other places of Uttarakhand. The temple of Kedarnath is a unique marvel of architecture. There are a number of 'Kunds' in the vicinity of Kedarnath, i.e., Peeth. Shiv Kund, Udak Kund, Rudhir Kund, Hans Kund etc. while the huge Gandhi Sarovar or the Chorawari Tal is located on the backdrop of the main shrine. In fact, as per the legend, when Pandavas were following Lord Shiva to please him so that they could get rid of the sin of the Brahmhatya (sin of killing the Brahmins or the Gurus) and Kul Hatya (killing the members of own clan), found him at present Kedarnath. The Lord did not want to meet him and hence is said to have transformed into a buffalo and got mixed with the herd of buffaloes grazing there. When identified by Bhima, the Lord in the form of buffalo began to sink. Since Bhima could catch hold of only the hump part, it remained at Kedarnath while the remaining body parts appeared at four different places, i.e., face at Rudranath, belly at Madhyamaheshwar, shoulders at Tungnath, and hairs at Kalpeshwar. Thus came the 'concept of Panch Kedars'. Kedarnath temple opens three to four days before that of Badrinath. The opening date usually falls during the last week of April or the first week of May, and is fixed on the day of Mahashivratri by the priests of the temple at Ukhimath. The temple closes on the day after Diwali, with a brief and simple ceremony. Almost for the six months the town is snow covered and no human settlement remains there. The pandas of Kedarnath reside in the villages around Guptakashi and Ukhimath.

---

### 17.8.2.4 BADRINATH

---

**Badrinath** or the **Badrivishal**, one of the four Hindu Dhamas, is the most

prominent shrine resort in district Chamoli (Garhwal Region) of the State of Uttarakhand dating back to Vedic times. Dedicated to Lord Vishnu, the shrine is believed to be reinstated by Adi Shankaracharya, who also established a 'Math' (Joshimath) about 48 km downstream from Badrinath which serves as winter seat of the Lord. There are a number of important places and sites of religious significance in and around Badrinath, like Tapta Kund, Narad Kund, Panch Shilas, Panch Dharas, Brahma Kapal, Charanpaduka, Sessa Netra, Nilkanth Peak, Urvasi Temple, Mata Murti, Bhim Pul and, Vasudhara Falls, Satopanth and Swargarohini further upstream. Beside **Badrivishal** there are four other Badris known as **Yogdhyan Badri, Bhavishya Badri, Vridha Badri** and **Adi Badri**. These are collectively called the Panch Badris or Five Badris, respectively located at Pandukeshwar, Tapovan, Animath and Adi Badri.

---

### CHECK YOUR PROGRESS: 2

---

1. Give a summary of the pilgrimage and religious places of India.
2. Discuss the pilgrimage tourism resources of Uttarakhand.
3. Write short notes on the following religious resources of India:
  - a) Dwarka Puri
  - b) Badrinath
  - c) Kedarnath
  - d) Haridwar

---

### 17.9 SUMMARY

---

In this unit we have discussed important pilgrimage and religious centres of India in terms of their importance and studies tourist aspects related to them. The unit focuses upon the ancient concept of the pilgrimage and the changing scenario of pilgrimage tourism. Our forefathers had tremendous sense of physical landscapes. They searched beautiful sights for the purpose of pilgrimage. Gradually, the ancient concepts of getting solace and peace through hardships, but people are now looking for luxuries, pleasure and comforts on their pilgrimage tour. This very need for 'comforts' itself changed the overall concept of pilgrimage tourism. This has led to the development of 'tertiary' sector in these areas and has venture in the rise of towns as well as various crafts. There are some pilgrims centres which are area specific but pilgrimage tourism, on account of the location of various centres, has sufficient space and potential to combine pleasure with piety.

---

### 17.10 GLOSSARY

---

- **Darshan Mandap:** It is the rectangular shaped structure where puja is performed.
- **Garbh Griha:** It is the sanctum-sanctorum of temples.
- **Geopiety:** It is related with the physical landscape helping in attaining piety.

- **Moksha:** It is the spiritual realization and self-emancipation which has been equated by some scholars with salvation or freedom from transmigration.
- **Shabha Mandap:** It is the outer hall where devotees stand for darshan in a temple.
- **Urs:** Anniversary celebrations at a Dargah.

---

### 17.11 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

---

---

#### CHECK YOUR PROGRESS: 1

---

1. 11.4
2. 11.6

---

#### CHECK YOUR PROGRESS: 2

---

1. 11.7 and 11.8
2. 11.8.1.1
3. a. 11.8.1.3  
b. 11.8.1.1  
c. 11.8.2.3  
d. 11.7.2

---

### 17.12 REFERENCE / BIBLIOGRAPHY

---

- Fonia, K.S., (1998), *The Traveller's Guide to Uttarakhand*, Garuda Books, Chamoli Garhwal.
- Uttarakhand "The Abode of Gods", (2005), Nest & Wings, New Delhi.
- Gupta, S.K. (2002), *Tourism and Heritage Resources in Garhwal Himalaya*, Kaveri Books, New Delhi.
- Dixit, Manoj and Charu Sheela (2010), *Tourism Products*, New Royal Book Co. Lucknow.
- [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Char\\_Dham](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Char_Dham)
- [http://www.orissa.gov.in/e-magazine/Orissareview/2008/July-2008/engpdf/1\\_the\\_four\\_dhams.pdf](http://www.orissa.gov.in/e-magazine/Orissareview/2008/July-2008/engpdf/1_the_four_dhams.pdf)
- *The Four Dhams: Jitendra Narayan Patnaik*
- <http://www.suite101.com/lesson.cfm/19490/3025/3>
- [http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Char\\_Dham](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Char_Dham)

---

### 17.13 TERMINAL AND MODEL QUESTIONS

---

1. Elaborate the religious and pilgrimage tourism resources of India.
2. What advice would you like to give to your client if he is planning to visit Badrinath and Kedarnath?

3. Write short notes on the following religious places:
  - a) Vaishno Devi Temple
  - b) Gangotri
4. Describe the char dham yatra of garhwal.
5. Give the significance of Varanasi and Kadarnath as an important spiritual place.

---

**Unit-18**  
**12 Jyotirlingas of India**

---

**Structure:**

**18.0 Introduction**

**18.1 Objectives**

**18.2 Twelve Jyotirlingas**

**18.3 Check Your Progress**

**18.4 Summary**

**18.5 Glossary**

**18.6 Self-Assessment Questions**

**18.7 References and Suggested Readings**

---

**18.0 Introduction:**

---

Hinduism is the world's oldest religion, according to many academicians and researchers, with roots and customs dating back more than 4,000 years. Today, with about 900 million followers, Hinduism is the third-largest religion behind Christianity and Islam. Roughly 95 percent of the world's Hindus live in India. Because the religion has no specific founder, it's difficult to trace its origins and history. Hinduism is unique in that it's not a single religion but a compilation of many traditions and philosophies.

In Hindu religion and spirituality, the pilgrimage has great significance. Members of the faith participate in the following types of pilgrimage. The pilgrimage to each sacred site has its religious significance.

Holy Places: Tirumala, Himalayan Chota Char Dham - Badrinath, Kedarnath, Gangotri, and Yamunotri. Varanasi/Kashi, Prayagraj, Haridwar-Rishikesh, Mathura-Vrindavan, Somnath, and Dwarka. Here important religious tourist attractions related to the Hindu religion will be discussed.

---

**18.1 Objectives:**

---

After reading the present unit, the learners will understand:

- The important religious tourist attractions of Hinduism.
- The features of the Hindu religion

---

**18.2 Twelve Jyotirlingas:**

---

Shiva is one of India's most worshipped deities and has many temples dedicated to him. Most prominent among these temples are the 12 Jyotirlingas of Shiva which are considered to be the most auspicious pilgrim destinations for Shiva devotees. According to an old religious text called the Shiva Mahapurana, there was once an argument between Vishnu and Brahma with each claiming to be the supreme power. To put them to the test, Shiva pierced the three worlds into an enormous pillar of light called the jyotirlinga. He asked Vishnu and Brahma to reach the extreme of the pillar saying whoever finds it first will be victorious.

Brahma rocketed in an upward direction while Vishnu went downward chasing the pillar which they did not know was infinite. Brahma returned claiming that he had found the end while Vishnu honestly accepted defeat. Enraged by Brahma's lies, Shiva appeared as a second Jyotirlingas and cursed Brahma that he would have no place in any of the religious ceremonies while Vishnu will be worshipped for eternity.

The twelve Jyotirlingas are believed to be the temples where Shiva appeared as a form of light. They symbolize the utmost reality and the supreme power and infinity of Shiva.

Here is the list of the 12 jyotirlingas of Shiva with their locations in India:

**1. Somnath Jyotirlinga in Saurashtra, Gujarat:**

One of the most famous of the twelve jyotirlingas, Somnath temple in Gujarat is a major pilgrim site that has been renovated quite a few times. The biggest reason behind its popularity is that it is located near a Triveni Sangam which means a confluence of three rivers – Hiran, Kapila and Saraswati in this case.

**2. Mallikarjun jyotirlinga in Srisailam, Andhra Pradesh:**

Located in the religious temple town of Srisailam, the Mallikarjunaswamy temple is a popular Shiva temple in south India owing to the jyotirlinga here. The Mahashivratri celebrations in Mallikarjunswamy are renowned all across India and are worth witnessing.

**3. Mahakaleshwar jyotirlinga in Ujjain, Madhya Pradesh:**

Ujjain is extremely popular as one of the venues of the Kumbh Mela, and Mahakaleshwar temple is its biggest tourist attraction on account of the jyotirlinga placed here. Situated by the Rudra Sagar Lake, the temple is visited by a huge number of devotees daily.

**4. Omkareshwar Jyotirlinga in Shivpuri, Madhya Pradesh:**

And then there is the Omkaram Amaleshwar jyotirlinga on the holy island of Omkareshwar on the banks of the river Narmada. The swayambhu or self-manifested linga here draws in crowds of devotees all year round.

**5. Vaidyanath Jyotirlinga in Parali, Maharashtra:**

Also known as Baba Dham and Baidyanath Dham, the Vaidyanath jyotirlinga is argued to be in Parli while some say the location of this jyotirlinga is in Deogarh in Jharkhand or Baijnath in Himachal Pradesh. It is believed that this land was a funeral place in the past and therefore the abode of tantric like Bhairava who worshipped Shiva.

**6. Nageswar Jyotirlinga in Gujarat:**

Believed to be the oldest shrine of its kind, the Nageshwar jyotirlinga is said to be in Durkavana meaning a forest that finds mention in old texts. According to a legend, Darukavana was a city inhabited by sea snakes and demons ruled by the old demon Daruka. The demon disappeared after Shiva appeared here and resided in the form of a Jyotirlinga.

**7. Kedareshwar jyotirlinga in Kedarnath, Uttarakhand:**

One of the four major pilgrim centres forming the char dham pilgrimage for Hindus, Kedarnath is located high up in the mountains of Uttarakhand and is visited by a huge number of devotees every year.

**8. Tryambakeswar jyotirlinga in Nasik, Maharashtra:**

Located close to another pilgrim centre Shirdi, Trimbakeshwar or Tryambakeshwar is a famous religious destination for Hindus in India. It is located in the town of Trimbak and is popular for being home to one of the twelve jyotirlingas.

**9. Rameswar jyotirlinga in Rameswaram, Tamil Nadu:**

Perhaps one of the most popular temples in India is the Rameswaram temple known for its brilliant architecture and the jyotirlinga, of course. It is visited by thousands of devotees daily and holds a significant place for Hindus.

**10. Bhimashankar jyotirlinga in Dakini, Maharashtra:**

Another one of the jyotirlingas in the state of Maharashtra, Bhimashankar is an extremely popular destination near the city of Pune. The place gets its name from an evil Asura named Bhima who lived here ages ago and was reduced to ash by

Shiva after a war. On the request of other Gods, Shiva manifested himself at this place in the form of the Bhimashankar jyotirlinga.

**11. Visweswar Jyotirlinga in Varanasi, Uttar Pradesh:**

Varanasi is one of the holiest places to visit in India and the Kashi Vishwanath temple is its biggest attraction thanks to the Visweswar jyotirlinga here. The grand aartis held here during major festivals, especially Mahashivratri, are an experience you cannot afford to miss.

**12. Ghrishneswar Jyotirlinga in Devagiri, Maharashtra:**

Located in a small village called Verul near Devagiri and Aurangabad in Maharashtra, Grishneshwar or Grushneshwar finds mention in the ancient Shiva Purana as one of the Jyotirlingas.

---

**18.3 Check Your Progress:**

---

- **Discuss the important Hindu religious tourist attractions of India:**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

- **Highlight the salient features of the 12 Jyotirlingas of India.**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

### 18.4 Summary

---

Hinduism is the world's oldest religion. It is the third largest religion in the world after Christianity and Islam. The exact date of origin of Hinduism is unknown but it is believed that it originated around 4000 years back. About 900 million people around the world believe in Hinduism. It is believed that 95% of them live in India. Being the oldest religion in the world and having 900 million followers, the followers of this great religion have built thousands of temples around India. Pilgrims visit these places to please their God and Goddesses. Some important pilgrim places are the twelve Jyotirlinga, Char Dham Yatra, Kumbha fair sites etc.

---

### 18.5 Glossary:

---

- **Pilgrimage:** A long journey of a pilgrim to worship God or Goddesses.
- **Pilgrim:** A follower of a religion who covers a long distance to see and worship a religious site.
- **Devote:** Here, devote means the follower of a particular religion.

---

### 18.6 Self-Assessment Questions:

---

- Why Kumbh Mela is celebrated in four different places in India?
- Discuss in detail your favourite Hindu religious tourist attraction.
- Write a detailed note on the Char ham Yatra of Uttarakhand.

---

### 18.7 References and Suggested Readings:

---

- Gwynne, Paul (2009), World Religions in Practice: A Comparative Introduction, Oxford: Blackwell Publication, ISBN 978-1-4051-6702-4
- Chakravarti Mahadev-1994-The Concept of Rudra-Siva Through The Ages-Delhi-Motilal Banarsidass-Second Revised. ISBN 81-208-0053-2
- "Archived copy". Archived from the original on 8 May 2012. Retrieved 3 May 2009.
- The Amnaya Peethams | Sringeri Sharada Peetham Archived 26 June 2006 at the Wayback Machine
- "Why schools in Kedarnath are going soundproof - Times of India". The Times of India. Retrieved 3 November 2018.

- Mohanty, Jagannath (2009). Indian Culture and Education. Deep& Deep. p. 5. ISBN 978-81-8450-150-6.
- Barik, P M (July 2005). "Jainism and Buddhism in Jagannath culture" (PDF). Orissa Review: 36. Retrieved 29 November 2012.
- Avinash Patra (2011). Origin & Antiquity of the Cult of Lord Jagannath. Oxford University Press. pp. 8–10, 17–18.
- Das, Aniruddha. Jagannath and Nepal. pp. 9–10.
- O. M. Starza (1993). The Jagannatha Temple at Puri: Its Architecture, Art, and Cult. BRILL Academic. pp. 62–63 with footnotes. ISBN 90-04-09673-6.
- Char Dham Yatra, by G. R. Venkatraman. Published by Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan, 1988.
- Brockman, Norbert C. (2011), Encyclopedia of Sacred Places, California: ABC-CLIO, LLC, ISBN 978-1-59884-655-3
- Santosh, Urmila (22 November 2016). "Where Mythology Meets Reality: Sunken City Of Dwarka". gounesco.com. GoUNESCO. Retrieved 25 July 2019.
- Shankar, Kalyani (15 March 2007). "Legends by the sea". The Economic Times. Bennett, Coleman & Co. Ltd. Retrieved 25 July 2019.
- Char Dham of Garhwal India, by fmgftfiokmdkgioftnsdtJoe Windless, Sarina Singh, James Bainbridge, Lindsay Brown, Mark Elliott, Stuart Butler. Published by Lonely Planet, 2007. ISBN 1-74104-308-5. Page 468.
- Chardham Yatra, by Savitri Dubey. Published by Alekh Prakashan. ISBN 978-81-88913-25-1
- "Welcome To Alekh Prakashan". Archived from the original on 23 December 2010. Retrieved 11 December 2019.
- "Char Dham and Hemkund Sahib Yatra to restart from May 2014". IANS. news.biharprabha.com. 24 April 2014. Retrieved 24 April 2014.
- FE Online (27 December 2016). "Chardham highway project: PM Modi lays the foundation stone in Dehradun; here's why it's special". The Financial Express. Noida, Uttar Pradesh. Retrieved 12 August 2017.

- <https://www.india.com/travel/articles/check-out-where-the-12-jyotirlingas-of-shiva-are-located-in-india-3234434/>
- <http://kumbh.gov.in/en/research-on-kumbh>
- <https://www.jagranjosh.com/general-knowledge/history-of-kumbh-mela-1358578285-1>
- Christophe Jaffrelot (2010). Religion, Caste, and Politics in India. Primus. pp. 241–242.
- James G. Lochtefeld (2002). The Illustrated Encyclopedia of Hinduism: N-Z. Rosen. pp. 651–652. ISBN 9780823931804.
- Jump up to: a b c James G. Lochtefeld (2008). "The Kumbha Mela festival processions". In Knut A. Jacobsen (ed.). South Asian Religions on Display: Religious Processions in South Asia and the Diaspora. Routledge. pp. 32–41.
- Jadunath Sarkar (1901). India of Aurangzib. Kinnera. p. 56.
- Kama Maclean (28 August 2008). Pilgrimage and Power: The Kumbh Mela in Allahabad, 1765-1954. OUP USA. p. 89. ISBN 978-0-19-533894-2.
- James Lochtefeld (2009). Gods Gateway: Identity and Meaning in a Hindu Pilgrimage Place. Oxford University Press. pp. 252–253. ISBN 9780199741588.
- Amar Farooqui (2011). Sindias and the Raj: Princely Gwalior C. 1800-1850. Primus. p. 131. ISBN 9789380607085.
- Jump up to a b c William R. Pinch (1996). "Soldier Monks and Militant Sadhus". In David Ludden (ed.). Contesting the Nation. University of Pennsylvania Press. pp. 155–158. ISBN 9780812215854.
- William R. Pinch (1996). Peasants and Monks in British India. University of California Press. pp. 64–66.
- "Ujjain: As Kumbh draws to a close, devotees throng Kshipra for 'shahi snan'". Indian Express. 21 May 2016.

---

## Unit-19

### Key Shrines Resorts of Jainism and Buddhism

---

**Structure:**

**19.1 Introduction**

**19.2 Objectives**

**19.3 Religious Diversity in India**

**19.4 Jainism**

**19.4.1 The Teachings of Jainism**

**19.4.2 Theory of Knowledge**

**19.4.3 Five Vows (Panch Mahavrata)**

**19.4.4 The Way of Life Prescribed for Jains**

**19.4.5 Important Key Shrine Resorts of Jainism in India**

**19.5 Buddhism**

**19.5.1 The Teachings of Buddhism**

**19.5.1.1 The Essence of Buddhism**

**19.5.1.2 The Eight -Fold Path**

**19.5.2 Code of Conduct for Buddhists**

**19.5.3 Ten Percepts**

**19.5.4 Major Sects**

**19.5.5 Important Key Shrine Resorts of Jainism in India**

**19.6 Summary**

**19.7 Glossary**

**19.8 Answer to check your progress**

**19.9 References**

**19.10 Suggested Readings**

**19.11 Terminal and Model Questions**

---

## 19.1 INTRODUCTION

---

India is probably the only country with the largest and most diverse mixture of races. It has a large number of belief systems, religions and sects. All these have their own religious practices, ways of worship and customs. We feel that as a student of tourism you should be familiar with the rich tradition of India. Our purpose is to focus on a description of the basic features of Jainism and Buddhism in this unit.

In Jainism and Buddhism, both religions were merely the outcome of the revolt against Hinduism. They flourished on certain aspects of pre-existing system. In fact, it was an appeal for better living in the existing Hindu religion and society. The fundamental theory of these religions like asceticism, self-torture, non-violence etc. had its origin from the Vedas and the Upanishads.

We feel that as a person involved with tourism trade you will come across people belonging to different faiths and religious beliefs from India and abroad. We hope that the study of this Unit will enrich your basic knowledge of the multi-religions Indian society and equip you as tourism personnel. We also discuss about main key shrine resorts of both Jainism and Buddhism in India.

---

## 19.2 OBJECTIVES

---

In this unit we will discuss about the Buddhism and Jainism. After going through this unit you will:

- Be able to appreciate the pluralistic character of Indian culture.
- Know the basic belief systems of the Buddhism and Jainism.
- Be able to acquaint yourself, with main customs and practices of Buddhism and Jainism

---

## 19.3 RELIGIOUS DIVERSITY IN INDIA:

---

India is probably the only country with the largest and most diverse mixture of races. All the five major racial types Australoid, Mongoloid, Europoid, Caucasian and Negroid find representation among the people of India. India is perhaps the most culturally diverse country of the world. One can find representation from almost all the major religions in India. India probably has the most religious diversity in any country. It's the birthplace of Hinduism, Buddhism, Jainism and Sikhism. It's among the few places in the world to have a resident Zoroastrian population. The Syrian Christian Church is well established in Kerala; the Basilica of Bom Jesus in Goa, old churches in Calcutta and Delhi, synagogues in Kerala, temples from the tiny to the tremendous, 'stupas', 'gompas' and the Bodhi tree, the Ajmer Sharif and Kaliya Sharif in Mumbai, all reflect the amazing multiplicity of religious practice in India. Add to this a range of animist beliefs among tribal people in the northeast, Madhya Pradesh and Gujarat who practice forms of nature worship, and you have astounding diversity. Since religion informs every aspect

of Indian life, whether social, political or economic, it's worth the traveller's while to do a little prep reading. The following capsules present a glimpse of the major religious traditions of India. One must keep in mind though, that the principle of secularism is enshrined in the Constitution.

---

#### 19.4 JAINISM:

---

The origin of Jainism is very old. We find reference of Jain Tirthankaras such as Rishabha and Arishtanemi in Regvedic Mantras. Rishabha is the founder of Jainism. Bhagwat Puran and Vishnu Puran also refer to Rishabha as an incarnation of Narayana. Jainism teaches a path to spiritual purity and enlightenment through a disciplined mode of life founded upon the tradition of ahinsa, nonviolence towards all living beings. Along with Hinduism and Buddhism, it is one of the three most ancient Indian religious traditions still in existence. Beginning in the 7th-5th century BC in the Ganges basin of eastern India, Jainism evolved into a cultural system that has made significant contributions to Indian philosophy and logic, art and architecture, mathematics, astronomy and astrology, and literature. The name Jainism derives from the Sanskrit verb ji, "to conquer." It refers to the ascetic battle that it is believed Jainrenunciants (monks and nuns) must fight against the passions and bodily senses to gain omniscience and purity of soul or enlightenment. Its philosophy and practice emphasize the necessity of self-effort to move the soul towards divine consciousness and liberation. Any soul that has conquered its own inner enemies and achieved the state of Supreme Being is called a jina (literally, "Conqueror" or "Victor"), and the tradition's monastic and lay adherents are called Jain ("Follower of the Conquerors"), or Jaina. According to Jain Philosophy there are twenty four great circles of time. In each of these circles one great thinker has come to the world. These thinkers are called Tirthankaras or teachers or "ford-makers" by the followers of Jainism. The 24th and last Tirthankara of this age was Vardhamana, who is known by the epithet Bhagwan Mahavira ("Great Hero") and is believed to have been the last teacher of "right" knowledge, faith, and practice. Jain doctrine teaches that Jainism has always existed and will always exist.

Mahavira was the son of a chieftain of the Kshatriya (warrior) class. He was born in village Kundagrama of Vaishali (in modern Muzaffarpur district in Bihar) in 599 B.C. in rich family. At age 30 he renounced his princely status to take up the ascetic life. Although he was accompanied for a time by the eventual founder of the Ajivika sect, Goshala Maskariputra, Mahavira spent the next 12 years following a path of solitary and intense asceticism. He then converted 11 disciples (called ganadharas), all of whom were originally Brahmans. Two of these disciples, Indrabhuti Gautama and Sudharman, both of whom survived Mahavira, are regarded as the founders of the historical Jain monastic community, and a third, Jambu, is believed to be the last person of the current age to gain enlightenment. Mahavira is believed to have died at Pavapuri, near modern Patna. The community appears to have grown quickly. From the beginning the community was subject to schisms over technicalities of doctrine, however, these were easily

resolved. The only schism to have a lasting effect concerned a dispute over proper monastic practice, with the Shvetambara ("White-robed") sect arguing that monks and nuns should wear white robes and the Digambaras ("Sky-clad," i.e., naked) claiming that a true monk (but not a nun) should be naked. This controversy gave rise to a further dispute as to whether or not a soul can attain liberation from a female body a possibility the Digambaras deny. This sectarian division, still existent today, probably took time to assume formal shape.

In the modern world, Jainism is a small but influential religious minority with as many as 4.2 million followers in India and successful growing immigrant communities in North America, Western Europe, the Far East, Australia and elsewhere. Jains live throughout India. Maharashtra, Gujrat, Rajasthan, Karnataka, Madhya Pradesh, Punjab and Tamilnadu etc. have relatively large Jain Population. They may speak local languages or follow different custom and rituals but essentially they follow the same principles.

---

#### 19.4.1 THE TEACHINGS OF JAINISM

---

The 'Agamas', the sacred writings, are compilation of the teachings of Jain Tirthankaras. Besides 12 'Agamas', the older parts of the 'Acharanga', 'Sutrakritanga' and 'Bhagavati Sutra' also contain the original matter on Jain religion. The central doctrine of the Jainism is that there is life in the whole of nature. Even the non-living things have jiva (soul). No person should therefore indulge in injuring the jiva. This, they believe, occurs only when the soul is in a state of eternal liberation from corporeal bodies. Liberation of the soul is impeded by the accumulation of Karmans, bits of material, generated by a person's actions that attach themselves to the soul and consequently bind it to physical bodies through many births. This has the effect of thwarting the full self-realization and freedom of the soul. As a result, Jains enunciate do not seek immediate enlightenment; instead, through disciplined and meritorious practice of nonviolence, they pursue a human rebirth that will bring them nearer to that state. To understand how the Jains address this problem, it is first necessary to consider the Jain conception of reality. One can achieve nirvana or eternal peace by not injuring the living things. Thus ahimsa (non-violence) occupies the centre stage in Jainism. The main teachings of Jainism are described below in the light of the above-mentioned Jain literature.

- No Faith in the Vedas and the Supremacy of Brahmins
- No Belief in the Existence of God
- Theory of Karma and Transmigration of Soul
- Ahimsa

---

#### 19.4.2 THEORY OF KNOWLEDGE

---

According to Jainism, there are five types of knowledge which help a man in getting salvation.

1. Mati Gyana – It is an ordinarily attained knowledge through senses.
2. Shruti Gyana – This knowledge is attained either by listening to or reciting the contents of sacred books.
3. Avadhi Gyana – This knowledge makes one enlightened with the knowledge of the past, of the present, and of the future.
4. Mana Gyana – It stands for probing into one's mind and heart.
5. Kaivalya Gyana – It is the highest knowledge to be attained by the followers of Jainism.

---

### 19.4.3 FIVE VOWS (PANCH MAHAVRATA)

---

The first Jain figure for whom there is reasonable historical evidence is Parshvanatha (or Parshva), a renunciant teacher who may have lived in the 7th century BC and founded a community based upon the abandonment of worldly concerns. Jain tradition regards him as the 23rd Tirthankara (literally, "Ford-maker," i.e., one who leads the way across the stream of rebirths to salvation) of the current age (kalpa). The 23rd Tirthankara Parsvanantha gave four vows of restraint Lord Mahavira added them fifth and these became the teachings in Jainism. The followers of Jainism endeavoured their best to act according to the Panch Mahavrata so that the soul be freed from the bondage of Karma. This are-

- |                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| 1. Ahimsa:       | Non-Violence (non-injury to any living being) |
| 2. Satya:        | The Truth (not to speak untruth)              |
| 3. Asteya:       | non-stealing                                  |
| 4. Aparigraha:   | not to be attached to worldly possessions     |
| 5. Brahmacharya: | Self-Control (chastity)                       |

According to Jainism, Karma or action binds the self to the body. Ignorance of truth (mithyatva or avidya) causes the rise of passions (Kasaya). The passions which are anger (Krodha), greed (lobha), pride (mana), and deceitfulness (maya) are harmful to the karma. By the practice of right knowledge (samyag-jnana), right faiths (samyag-darshan) and right conduct (samyag-carita) one can liberate from bondage and nirvana can be achieved.

---

### 19.4.4 THE WAY OF LIFE PRESCRIBED FOR JAINS

---

The adherents of Jainism are categorised into two-the ordinary followers and the yatis or monks. The ordinary followers are allowed certain practices which are forbidden for yati as ascetics. The adherence to triratva- right faith, right knowledge and right conduct - is expected from both. The yatis are to take vow not to inflict injury on life, not to marry and not to take food or drink at night. The general code of conduct includes:

1. Non-violence

2. Truthfulness
3. Charity
4. Cultivating right state of mind
5. Regularly practicing meditation
6. Fasting on the eighth and fourteenth days of moon's waxing and waning period.
7. Not to touch intoxicants
8. Recitation of scriptures and mantra

---

#### 19.4.5 IMPORTANT KEY SHRINE RESORTS OF JAINISM IN INDIA

---

There are so many Jain Shrine Resorts throughout India, many of which were built several hundred years ago. These temples are classified according to Jain sects. Many Jain Temples are found in other areas of the world. Following are the main key shrine resorts of Jainism in India:

**Dilwara Temples** - The Dilwara Temple of India are located about 3 km. from Mount Abu, Rajasthan. The five legendary marble temples of Dilwara are sacred pilgrimage place of the Jains. The temples are in the midst of a range of forested hills. These temples built by Chalukya between the 11<sup>th</sup> and 13<sup>th</sup> centuries AD are world famous for their stunning use of marble. The marble temples have an opulent entranceway, the simplicity in architecture reflecting Jain values like honesty and frugality.

**Ranakpur Temples** - The renowned Jain temple at Ranakpur is dedicated to Adinatha. These temples form one of the five major pilgrimages of the Jains and located in village of Ranakpur in the Pali district of Rajasthan and built in the 15th century. Ranakpur temples are known for being the largest and most important temples of the Jain cult. The temple is said to have been built by Seth Dharna Sah (a Jain businessman) with the aid of Rana Kumbha, who ruled Mewar in the 15th century. Ranakpur got its name after the name of the Rajput Monarch and likewise the temples. The temple complex is positioned in an isolated valley on the western side of the Aravalli Range. The Jain Temples of Ranakpur are certainly creditable for their splendid architecture. This temple is wholly constructed in light colored marble and comprises a basement covering an area of 48000 sq feet. There are more than 1400 exquisitely carved pillars that support the temple.

**The Digambara Jain Temple** - The Digambara Jain temple, southwest of the Dhamekh Stupa, Sarnath, built in 1824, is said to be where Shreyanshnath, the 11th Jain tirthankara was born. Inside the temple are good frescoes, which depict the life of Mahavir, the founder of the present day Jain religion.

**Shri Shantinath Jain Swetambar Temple** - Pratishted in 1995, the temple is run by Shree Atamnand Jain shwetambar shee sangh, Gurgaon. The moolnayak bhagwaan of the temple/mandir is shri Shantinath Bhagwaan. The other gods in the temple are Lord Valabh Parashnath, lord Mahavir, Padmawati mata, Saraswati mata and lord Manibhadrvveer.

**Khajuraho Jain Temple** - Shri Digamber Atishay Kshetra, Khajuraho is been located at Village Khajuraho, Taluka Rajnagar, District Chatarpur (M. P.). Which is 60 km from Mahoba, 152 km from Satna and 13 km from Jhansi.

**Sonagiri Jain Temple** - Sonagiri which literally, the golden peak is a place sacred to Digambar Jains. This is a place where King Nanganag Kumar achieved liberation from the cycles of death and life along with his fifteen million followers.

**The Sri Digambar Jain Lal Mandir** - Sri Digambar Jain Lal Mandir is an ancient temple dedicated to the 23rd Tirthankara or Lord Parashvanath and is known as the oldest Jain temple in Delhi that lies opposite the famous Red Fort at the junction of Chandni Chowk and Netaji Subhash Marg which is approachable via local transport and the metro link.

---

### CHECK YOUR PROGRESS - 1

---

Q1- Describe the concept of Jainism.

Q2- Discuss the main teaching of Jainism.

Q3- Write a short notes on: (a) Dilwara Temple (b) Ranakpur Temples

---

## 19.5 BUDDHISM

---

Gautama Buddha, the founder of Buddhism. It is a world religion, which arose in and around ancient Magadha (Modern Bihar), India and is based on the teachings of Siddhartha Gautama, who is known as the Buddha (literally the enlightened one or Awakened One).

Buddha was the son of Shuddhodhan who used to rule a small republic known as Kapilvastu. Mahamaya was the name of his mother. It spread outside of Magadha starting in the Buddha's lifetime, and became the dominant religion. Its followers are spread in various parts of India, Ceylon, and South East Asia etc. Puranas claimed Buddha as an avatara or incarnation of Vishnu. This led many scholars to view Buddhism as a reform movement within Hinduism and not a separate religion.

However, Buddhism gave the greatest setback to Hinduism and now it is generally accepted as a separate religion different from Hinduism. Followers of Buddhism, called Buddhists in English, referred to themselves as Sakyans or Sakyabhiksu in ancient India.

---

### 19.5.1 THE TEACHINGS OF BUDDHISM

---

Buddhism teaches a man to lead a virtuous and moral life. Gautam Buddha did not recognize the authority of gods, scriptures and priests and rejected rituals. He criticized the system of caste and creed. He emphasized the equality of high and

low, men and women in matters of dharma (religion). The fact of human misery or dukha was accepted as universal and Buddha showed a way out of it. The ideas of Karma, rebirth and moksha (salvation) were central to his teachings. After Buddha's death his followers elaborated and interpreted his basic teachings. In due course a number of sects and sub-sects developed.

The Buddha preached his followers the four truths concerning sorrow. He also preached the reason of sorrow and laid emphasis on Trishna (desires), as the chief source of discontentment among human beings.

---

### 19.5.1.1 THE ESSENCE OF BUDDHISM (FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS)

---

**(1) Concept of Dukha:** According to Buddhism, dukha or pain or human misery is an integral part of life and nobody can escape from it. This is evident in sickness, old age, death, reparation, non fulfillment of one's desires. Buddha noticed these suffering as existing all around.

**(2) Reason for Dukha:** Buddha said that the reason for misery or pain is the desire for wealth, power, pleasure and continued existence etc.

**(3) Ending Desire:** To put an end to disappointment and suffering one must stop desiring. Buddha said that a person keeps taking new births to fulfill unsatisfied desires in one's life. To achieve nirvana or salvation from the cycles of birth one should put an end to desires.

**(4) Way to Stop Desires:** Buddha suggested Ashtang Marg or eight fold path for getting rid of sorrow and attaining salvation. He was of the opinion that self-mortification, repetition of prayers, sacrifices and chanting of hymns was not sufficient to attain Moksha. Following the Ashtangika Marga (Eight-Fold Path) is the easiest way to get 'Moksha'.

---

### 19.5.1.2 THE EIGHT-FOLD PATH

---

According to the Buddhism, if a person follows these eight-fold path and other precepts he/she can be free from the cycle of births and deaths and attain nirvana or salvation. These paths are right views, right intentions, right speech, right conduct, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness and right concentration.

- 1. Right Views:** One should have the knowledge of four truths, which were put forth by Gautama Buddha in the first sermon at Sarnath.
- 2. Right Aspiration:** One should renounce all pleasures and have no malice to others.
- 3. Right Speech:** One should abstain from lying and should not speak harsh words nor should abuse anybody.
- 4. Right Action:** One should always perform good deeds and right actions.

5. **Right Living:** One should adopt right means of livelihood and should abstain from any of the forbidden modes of living.
6. **Right Efforts:** One should suppress evil from raising its ugly head and should also make efforts towards eradicating the already existing evils.
7. **Right Mindfulness:** One should always remain self-possessed and careful to overcome both hankering and dejection.
8. **Right Meditation-** One should concentrate the mind on right things.

---

### 19.5.2 CODE OF CONDUCT FOR BUDDHISTS

---

Buddhism divides its followers into two categories:

1. Ordinary Followers
2. Monk Mendicant Members

There are strict rules for the latter. Every person entering the Buddhist fold is to be initiated through a simple ceremony and has to stop subscribing to any other creed. They have to take a sort of vow by declaring.

- I go for refuge to the Buddha
- I go for the refuge to the dharma
- I go for refuge to the order

The ordinary members have to follow five precepts. These relate to abstinence from:

1. Taking life
2. Stealing
3. Adultery
4. Telling lies or untruthfulness and
5. Taking intoxicants

---

### 19.5.3 TEN PERCEPTS

---

The mendicant members or monks have to forsake family, occupation and society and lead a solitary life. They have to follow ten Precepts. These are abstinence from:

1. Taking life
2. Stealing
3. Sexual intercourse in any form
4. Telling lies
5. Taking intoxicants
6. Eating at wrong hours
7. Enjoying dancing, singing and instrumental music
8. Using jewellery and ornaments
9. Sleeping on high luxurious beds

---

## 10. Taking money

---

### 19.5.4 MAJOR SECTS

---

**The Hinayana:** After the death of Buddha a number of councils were held to decide the questions of faith and religious order. One group claimed to adhere to the original traditions. This group came to be called as Hinayan (lesser vehicle). This group had a fixed canonical literature and was an orthodox body. Their main literature was limited to tripitaka (three baskets). These are Vinay Pitaka (Basket of Discipline), Sutta Pitaka (Basket of Discourses) and Abhidhamma Pitaka (Basket of Scholasticism). Its followers are mainly spread in East Asia, Srilanka, Burma, Thailand, Laos, Vietnam, Cambodia and Various parts of India. The Himayana do not recognize deity worship and doctrine of God.

**Mahayana:** The Mahayana branch of Buddhism popularized the concept of a Bodhisattva (literally enlightened being) and the worship of the bodhisattvas. They called themselves as Mahayana (Greater vehicle) Bodhisattva. According to them was potential Buddha and everybody could achieve it. But all of them stop at the bodhisattva state and could not achieve the status of Buddha. They believed that accumulated merit of bodhisattva could be transferred to help those who were struggling to escape from their various states of miseries. This way it could take larger numbers towards salvation. The followers of Mahayana are spread in Nepal, China, Korea, Japan and India. The Mahayana introduced the idea of deity into their religion. Bodhisattva intervenes and saves from danger and death and protects the weak and helpless.

**Vajrayana or Tantrayana:** The followers of Vajrayana incorporate a magical and mystic dimension. The followers of this stream believed that salvation could be achieved through acquiring magical power. They focused on feminine divinities that were considered the source of Sakti (Power) behind the male divinities. Its followers are spread in Tibet, Mongolia parts of Bihar and Bengal in India.

---

### 19.5.5 IMPORTANT KEY SHRINE RESORTS OF BUDDHISM IN INDIA

---

Gautam Buddha has left his footprints on the soils of India and his mark on the soul of mankind. In the course of the heavenly gods and the places consecrated by his presence were held in great veneration. Before he entered Nirvana the Buddha himself spoke of the four places which a pious believer ought to visit with feelings of faith and reverence – the Lumbinivana where the Buddha was born; Gaya (Body-Gaya) Where the reached perfect enlightenment; the Deer Park at Isipatna (Sarnath) where for the first time he proclaimed the Law; and Kusinagara where he reached the unconditional state of Mahaparinirvana. He dilated on the merits of pilgrimage to these places and declared that “they who shall die on such pilgrimages shall be reborn, after death, in the happily realm of heaven”.

The other four places of pilgrimage which, with the above four, make up the atthamahathanani (ashtamahasthanani), or eight sacred places, were the scenes of four of the principal miracles that the blessed one was said to have performed. One of these places is Sravasti (the capital of Kosala), where the Buddha, according to legend, gave a display of miraculous powers to confound Purana Kasyapa, the leader of the Tirthika sect. After this miracle the Buddha, in accordance with the custom of the previous Buddhas, ascended to the Heaven of the Thirty-three Gods; preached the Abhidhamma to his deceased mother and descended to the earth at Sankasya, by a triple ladder constructed by Indra's architect. Rajagriha (the capital of Magadha), was the scene of the third miracle in which the Buddha tamed the infuriated elephant, Nalagiri, let loose by his jealous cousin, Devadatta to encompass his death. The fourth miracle happened at Vaisali, where in a mangrove a number of monkeys offered the Buddha a bowl of honey. These and other events in life were favourite subjects of representation in early Buddhist art and the eight conventional events, enumerated above formed stereotyped stale compositions in sculptures beginning with the Gupta period.

**Lumbini:** Lumbini, where the blessed one was born, was situated at a distance of twelve miles from Kapilavastu.

**Bodh-Gaya:** The next great landmark in the history of Buddhism is the site where the prince of the Sakya clan attained Supreme (Bodhi or Sambodhi). This memorable event happened at Uruvilva (Uruvela), near Gaya, where he sat in meditation under a pipal tree. Because of its sacred associations the place came to be known as Buddha Gaya (Bodh-Gaya) and the tree as the Bodhi Tree.

**Sarnath:** A memorable landmark in the life of the Great Teacher is represented by the holy Isipatana or Sarnath where in the quietness of the Deer Park the Master preached his first Sermon to his five former comrades, revealing for the first time the mystery of suffering and the means of overcoming it. This event is described metaphorically as setting the Wheel of Law in motion (Dharmachakra-Pravartana).

**Kushinagara:** Kushinagar is sacred to the Buddhist as it was the place where under a grove of sala tree the lord passed into Nirvana in his eightieth year. The site has been identified with Kasia in the Kushinagar district of Uttar Pradesh.

**Sravasti:** Sravasti is sacred to the Buddhists because it was here that the Master, in accordance with the practice of the previous Buddhas, performed the greatest of his miracles to confound the heretic Tirthika teachers. According to sacred literature this great event consists of a series of miraculous episodes. Such as the sun and moon shining together in the sky, fire and water emanating alternately from the upper and lower parts of the Master's body, and the Buddha creating multiple representations of himself.

**Sankasya:** Another holy spot connected with the life of the Master was Sankasya, where the Buddha is said to have descended to the earth from the Tryastrimsa

Heaven (Heaven of the Thirty-three Gods) where he went to preach the Abhidhamma to his mother and other gods.

**Rajgriha:** The city of Rajgriha is represented by the ruins of Rajgir, now a hill-girt town in the Patna district of Bihar. Rajgriha was sacred to the Buddhists for reasons more than one. Not only did the Master retire several times to this famous city, but it was also the place where Devadatta, his wicked cousin, made many attempts to encompass his death. Moreover, in this city, in the Sattapanni (Saptaparni) cave of the Vaibhara hill was held the first Buddhist Council (Sangiti) just after the Parinirvana.

**Vaisali:** The city of Vaisali, the capital of the powerful Lichchhavi clan, was in the early days a stronghold of Buddhism. Buddha is said to have visited it three times during his lifetime. In one of these visits, several monkeys are said to have offered the Lord a pot of honey, an incident that finds mention among the eight great events in the life of Master. It was here again that the Buddha announced his approaching a Nirvana and after his Nirvana the Lichchhavis are said to have erected a stupa over their share of the remains of the Master. A little over 100 years after the Nirvana, here was held the second Buddhist Council which was of supreme importance in the history of latter-day Buddhism.

**Sanchi:** Sanchi is the site of the most extensive Buddhist remains. The site had no apparent connection with the traditional history of Buddha. There is considerable force in the view that Sanchi is the modern representative of Chatiyargiri of the Ceylonese chronicle in the neighbourhood of Vadisa, connected with the story of Asoka's marriage with a merchant's daughter and the erection of a monastery on the hill where Mehendra, Asoka's son by that marriage, is said to have halted on the way to his proselytising mission to Ceylon. Most of the monuments are situated on a plateau on the hill top which was enclosed by a wall of solid stone about A.D. 1100. Of more historical value are the battered remains of the Asoka pillar with its capital of four lions back to back, which is situated close to the south gate of the Great Stupa at Sanchi.

**Ajanta and Ellora:** Two of the most remarkable sites of Buddhism are situated in Maharashtra. In a narrow gorge, amidst superb scenery, lie the marvellous caves of Ajanta, five of them chaityas (Shrines) and the remainder viharas (monasteries). Hewn from the living rock, richly sculptured and with walls, pillars and ceilings of some of the caves adorned with paintings, they furnish a continuous narrative of Buddhist art during a period of 800 years and no ancient remains in India exhibit such an admirable combination of architecture, sculpture and painting. The Stupendous caves of Elora are excavated in the scarp of a large rocky plateau. Unlike Ajanta, Elora presents us with remarkable memorials of the three great faiths of India - Buddhism, Brahmanism and Jainism.

---

### CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

---

Q1- Describe the main sects of Buddhism.

Q2- Discuss the main teaching of Buddhism.

Q3- List the Important Key Shrine Resorts of Buddhism in India

---

### 19.6 SUMMARY

---

Jainism and Buddhism were not independent religions. These religions were merely the outcome of the revolt against Hinduism. Both Jainism and Buddhism criticised the bloody sacrifices and rituals. These religious revolutions gave impetus to independent thinking which contributed to the development of Indian philosophy. Thus we see that Jainism and Buddhism were two independent religions in spite of some similarities and dissimilarities.

---

### 19.7 GLOSSARY

---

<b>Ahimsa:</b>	Non-Violence (non-injury to any living being)
<b>Asteya:</b>	Non-stealing
<b>Aparigraha:</b>	Not to be attached to worldly possessions
<b>Vinay Pitaka:</b>	Basket of Discipline
<b>Sutta Pitaka:</b>	Basket of Discourses
<b>Abhidhamma Pitaka:</b>	Basket of Scholasticism

---

### 19.8 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

---



---

#### CHECK YOUR PROGRESS - 1

---

Q1 - See Section 12.4

Q2 - See Section 12.4.1

Q3 - See Section 12.4.5

---

#### CHECK YOUR PROGRESS - 2

---

Q1 - See Section 12.5.4

Q2 - See Section 12.5.1

Q3 - See Section 12.5.5

---

### 19.9 REFERENCES

---

- Tourism Product: Dixit, Manoj & Charu Sheela; New Royal Book Co; Lucknow, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition: 2010
- History of India- Earliest Times to 1526 A.D.: Khurana, K.L.; Laxshmi Narain Agarwal Educational Publishers, Agra, Tenth Revised Edition: 2010
- Tourism – The Cultural Heritage 7 (TS-1): IGNOU, New Delhi: 2002

- 
- <http://www.udaipur.org.uk/temples/ranakpur-temple.html>
  - <http://incredibleindias.in/monument-sarnath.html>
  - <http://www.indianmirror.com/temples/mahavir-jain.html>
- 

### 19.10 SUGGESTED READINGS

---

- Tourism Product: Dixit, Manoj and Charu Sheela; New Royal Book Co.; Lucknow, Second Edition: 2010
  - History of India- Earliest Times to 1526 A.D.: Khurana, K.L.; Laxshmi Narain Agarwal Educational Publishers, Agra, Tenth Revised Edition: 2010
  - Tourism – The Cultural Heritage 7 (TS-1): IGNOU, New Delhi: 2002
- 

### 19.11 TERMINAL AND MODEL QUESTIONS

---

Q1 – Describe early life of Mahavir Swami and throw light how he attained knowledge?

Q2 – Write a note on the rise and fall of Jainism and describe the influence of Jainism on India.

Q3 – Write a note on the contribution of Buddhism to Indian History and Culture.

Q4 – Write short notes on:

- (a) Five Vows (Panch Mahavrata)
- (b) The Essence of Buddhism

---

## Unit-20

### Leading Pilgrim Centres of Sikhism, Islam and Christianity

---

- 20.1 Introduction
- 20.2 Objectives
- 20.3 Religious Diversity in India
- 20.4 Sikhism
  - 20.4.1 Beliefs and Religious Practices of Sikhism
  - 20.4.2 Amrit Ceremony (Baptism)
  - 20.4.3 Five Symbols
  - 20.4.4 Method of Worship
  - 20.4.5 Various Streams of Thought
  - 20.4.6 Important Key Shrine of Sikhism
- 20.5 Islam
  - 20.5.1 Main Sects
  - 20.5.2 Teaching of Prophet Muhammad
  - 20.5.3 Religious Duties of Muslims
  - 20.5.4 Important Islamic Pilgrimage Centre
- 20.6 Christianity
  - 13.6.1 Major Sects and Divisions
  - 13.6.2 Important Christian Pilgrimage Centre
- 20.7 Summary
- 20.8 Answer to check your progress
- 20.9 References
- 20.10 Suggested Readings
- 20.11 Terminal and Model Questions

---

## 20.1 INTRODUCTION

---

India has one of the oldest civilizations in the world. Excavations trace the Indus Valley civilization back for at least 5,000 years. India has a large number of belief systems, religions and sects. All these have their own religious practices, ways of worship and customs. We feel that as a student of tourism you should be familiar with the rich tradition of India.

Our purpose is to focus on a description of the basic features of Sikhism, Islam and Christianity in this unit. We will also highlight some specific features from the tourism perspective wherever required.

We feel that as a person involved with tourism trade you will come across people belonging to different faiths and religious beliefs from India and abroad. We hope that the study of this Unit will enrich your basic knowledge of the multi-religions Indian society and equip you as tourism personnel. We also discuss about main key shrine resorts of Sikhism, Islam and Christianity in India.

---

## 20.2 OBJECTIVES

---

In this unit we will discuss about the Sikhism, Islam and Christianity. After going through this unit you will:

- Be able to appreciate the pluralistic character of Indian culture.
- Know the basic belief systems of the Sikhism, Islam and Christianity.
- Be able to acquaint yourself, with main customs and practices of Sikhism, Islam and Christianity

---

## 20.3 RELIGIOUS DIVERSITY IN INDIA

---

India is probably the only country with the largest and most diverse mixture of races. All the five major racial types Australoid, Mongoloid, Europoid, Caucasian and Negroid find representation among the people of India. India is perhaps the most culturally diverse country of the world. Once can find representation from almost all the major religions in India. India probably has the most religious diversity in any country. It's the birthplace of Hinduism, Buddhism, Jainism and Sikhism. The impact of Islam gave rise to several new Indian sects that preached against idolatry, polytheism and caste. The most important sect that arose out of this fusion was the Sikh community founded by Nanak (1469-1538), a Punjabi, born in Talwandi in Lahore District, now in Pakistan founded Sikhism. It's among the few places in the world to have a resident Zoroastrian population. The Syrian Christian Church is well established in Kerala; the Basilica of Bom Jesus in Goa, old churches in Calcutta and Delhi, synagogues in Kerala, temples from the tiny to the tremendous, 'stupas', 'gompas' and the Bodhi tree, the Ajmer Sharif and Kaliya Sharif in Mumbai, all reflect the amazing multiplicity of religious practice in India. Add to this a range of animist beliefs among tribal people in the northeast, Madhya Pradesh and Gujarat who practice forms of nature worship, and you have

astounding diversity. Since religion informs every aspect of Indian life, whether social, political or economic, it's worth the traveller's while to do a little prep reading. Religion has affected every part of Indian life: the festivals, the clothes, the food, the buildings, and the folklore. The following capsules present a glimpse of the major religious traditions of India. One must keep in mind though, that the principle of secularism is enshrined in the Constitution.

---

#### 20.4 SIKHISM

---

A comparatively new religion, founded some 500 years ago, has netted some 20 million believers from across the world under the umbrella of Sikhism. Sikhism is India's fourth largest religion and beginning with the birth of its founder Guru Nanak Dev (1469-1539). Since childhood he loved to travel, learn and preach humanity. He is considered the founder and the first Guru (teacher) of the faith. Guru Nanak was followed by a chain of gurus ending at Guru Gobind Singh (1666-1708) the tenth guru. The way Sikhism is practiced to-day evolved according to the teachings of these ten gurus. The Sikhs are predominately located in Punjab, but also in many other parts of India. About 2% of India's population are Sikhs. Traditionally the men keep their hair and do not shave their beard or moustache. They gather the hair on their head in a turban. Sikhism is comparatively a new religion in India. Sikhism denounces superstitions and blind rituals, and advocates equality of mankind and remembrance of God all the time. The creators of Sikhism tried to abolish some of the Indian customs such as the caste system and sati (practice) - burning of the widow. In Sikhism everyone has equal rights irrespective of caste, creed, color, race, sex or religion. Sikhism rejects pilgrimage, fasting, superstitions and other such rituals. Sikhism does not have a clergy class as it considers this as a gateway to corruption. However, they have readers and singers in their temples.

A Sikh place of worship is called Gurdwara. Sikhism does not support pilgrimage to holy sites because according to Sikhism, God is everywhere and not in any certain place. But Sikhism has a few important sites, of which, the Harmandir Sahib, also known as the 'Golden Temple' in Amritsar in Punjab is the most important site and is considered the holiest shrine of Sikhism. Additional shrines include the Five Takhts, or thrones; and the Anandpur Sahib.

Sikhism emphasises community services and helping the needy. One of the distinct features of Sikhism is the common kitchen called Langar. In every Gurdwara there is a Langar. Every Sikh is supposed to contribute in preparing the meals in the free kitchen. The meals are served to all and are eaten sitting on the floor, as this is to emphasise the point that all who are there are equals. Sikhism does not believe in holding fasts, for the body is God's present to the human being; and therefore humans must foster, maintain and preserve it in good, sound condition, unless fasting is done to foster the human body like healthy diets.

Guru Granth Sahib ji is written in Gurmukhi script. It includes the writings of the Sikh Gurus and the writings of Hindu and Muslims saints. But out of humility

Guru Gobind Singh Ji did not include his own writings in Guru Granth Sahib ji. His writings appear in Dasam Granth. Guru Gobind Singh Ji is also the Guru behind the unique appearance of Sikh men. During Guru Govind's term as the Guru of the Sikhs and also before him, the ruling empire of Punjab region was the Mughal Empire. The Mughals were Islamic. Some of the Mughul emperors like Aurangzeb were fanatics who harassed the non-Muslims, mainly Hindus and tried to convert them to Islam. Sikh Guru Tegh Bahadur Sahib saved Hindus from Muslims and was named as Hind Di Chadar. In order to stop their persecutions, Guru Gobind decided to make his followers, the Sikhs (meaning learners), a community of fighters. He changed his surname to Singh, which means lion. His followers also changed their surname to Singh. Since then a ceremony of baptizing was established among the Sikhs in which the boys were given the title Singh and the girls were titled Kaur meaning princess. In those days "Singh" as a surname was very popular among a famous warrior caste of north India, the Rajputs. A large number of these warrior Sikhs were originally Rajput Hindus who voluntarily converted for battling against the Mughals.

---

#### **20.4.1 BELIEFS AND RELIGIOUS PRACTICES**

---

The Sikhs follow a well defined belief system and prescribed religious practices. As per the scriptures, a Sikh is a person who believes in --

- Belief in one God,
- Ten Gurus, from Guru Nanak to Guru Govind Singh
- Guru Granth Sahib, their holy book
- The utterances and teachings of the ten Gurus.
- They are supposed to recite the Guru-Mantra - Waheguru (God you are wonderful)
- Living an honest life, abolish discrimination (No plunder, gambling or exploitation of the poor) and believing all as equal.
- Use of intoxicants like alcohol, tobacco, drugs, opium etc., is forbidden.
- Every Sikh is to be initiated into the faith through Amrit ceremony.
- Sikh ceremonies are to be followed on occasions of birth, marriage or death in the family.
- Worship of Idols, graves, tombs, or monasteries is forbidden.
- Sikhs should follow five symbols or Panj Kakars
- In case of violation of religions code, like removal of hairs, use of tobacco, adultery etc., a Sikh has to take Amrit again.

---

#### **20.4.2 AMRIT CEREMONY (BAPTISM)**

---

Guru Gobind Singh initiated this practice in 1600. The ceremony is generally performed when the boys and girls are old enough to understand the obligations of religion. Five baptized sikhs (Panj-Piire) are chosen to perform the ceremony in

a congregation. Amrit (nectar) is prepared by mixing sugar in water by stirring it with a khanda (double edge sword) and recitation of selected passages of the scriptures. The persons to be baptised take the vow of the faith by reciting loudly. Amrit is splashed in their faces. After baptism they are supposed to adhere to five symbols.

---

#### 20.4.3 FIVE SYMBOLS

---

In order to make it easier for his followers to recognize each other, Guru Gobind Singh, chose five marks, some of which even today symbolize the Sikhs. The five signs were, Kesh; Kara; Kanga; Kaccha and Kirpan. The religious Sikhs dress according to Guru Gobind Singh's order, carrying a sword (kirpan). Most of the Sikhs even today have uncut hair and gather it in a turban. But some easygoing Sikhs cut their hair or they do not gather their uncut hair in a turban. All baptized Sikhs have to follow the following live symbols of Sikhism.

- i) **Kesh (hair):** Sikhs are not to trim, shave or cut any hair on any part of their body.
- ii) **Kara (iron bangle):** The iron bangle is to be worn in right hand. It is supposed to remind Sikhs to follow the code of conduct.
- iii) **Kirpan (sword):** This is to be worn by Sikhs as a weapon for self defense and protect the weak and helpless.
- iv) **Kangha (comb):** to keep long hair neat and clean. This is to be kept in the hair-knot.
- v) **Kachcha (drawer / underwear):** It is a sign of chastity and strict morals. It also symbolizes that Kachcha wearer is always ready for struggle.

---

#### 20.4.4 METHOD OF WORSHIP

---

Sikhs believe in the worship of Akal (time less God) and are opposed to idol worship. Their place of worship is called Gurudwara. The doors of Gurudwaras are open to people belonging to all religions and faiths. It is considered to only a religious place but also a refuge and shelter for the needy. One has to enter the Gurudwara after washing feet and covering the head. Inside Gurudwaras 'Guru Granth'- the holy book- is installed on a high pedestal. Here the recitation of Guru Granth Sahib is done. A common kitchen or langar serves food and prasad to the devotees and visitors.

---

#### 20.4.5 VARIOUS STREAMS OF THOUGHT

---

In due course there developed various streams in Sikhism like any other religion:

**i) Nirankari Movement:** The Nirankari Baba Dayal was the founder of Nirankari movement. He opposed the innovations like idol worship, grave worship and other rituals and asked his followers to worship only one Nirankar (God).

**ii) Namdharis Movement:** Namdhari movement was started by Bhagat Jawarhermal and Baba Balak Singh. However, it was popularised by one of the later disciples Baba Ram Singh. They taught worship of one God and opposed the social evils like caste system, infanticide, early marriage and barter of girls in marriage. It developed into a sect later on.

---

#### 20.4.6 IMPORTANT KEY SHRINE OF SIKHISM

---

**Golden Temple:** Golden Temple located in Amritsar city of Punjab, is named after God Hari, the temple of God. The Sikhs all over the world throng the temple to pay obeisance. The Golden Temple, popular as Sri Harmandir Sahib or Sri Darbar Sahib is the sacred epicentre of Sikhism. Bathed in a quintessential golden hue that dazzles in the serene waters of the Amrit Sarovar that lace around it, the swarn mandir (Golden temple) is one that internalizes in the mind scape of its visitors, no matter what religion or creed. On a jewel-studded platform is the Adi Grantha or the sacred scripture of Sikhs wherein are enshrined holy inscriptions by the ten Sikh gurus and various Hindu and Moslem saints. The first and the most important 'Takht' (throne or seat of authority) of Sikhism, established by Guru Har Gobind in 1609, called 'Akal Takht' (the Throne of the Timeless God) and is situated just opposite the gate of Harmandar Sahib. There are many other attractions near the temple. These famous attractions are Akal Takhat, Baba Atal, Guru Ka Langar, Sri Guru Ram Das Niwas, Guru Nanak Niwas, and Central Sikh Museum etc.

**Poanta Sahib:** Paonta Sahib, a city sacred to the memory of Guru Gobind Singh, the tenth Guru of the Sikhs, is also a bustling township with growing industries. It retains tangibly memorials to the martial Guru in the form of his weapons and a majestic Gurudwara and recalls his presence even in the name of the city which is derived from "paon" meaning "foot" either because he set foot in this place or according to an alternative story, because he lost an ornament which he wore on his foot called a "paonta" while bathing in the river Yamuna which flows here. Overlooking the river is the Gurudwara where Guru Gobind Singh held court and wrote the major portion of the "Dassam Granth". The Guru also built the Paonta Fort in over hundred acres of land, which housed not only his followers, but as many as 46 famous poets. Regular poetry reading sessions and symposiums were organised to encourage the sort form. The guru left Paonta Sahib after the battle of Bhangani with Raja Fateh Shah, in which he defeated the errant ruler's army after thirty days of battle. Paonta Sahib is distinguished by its association with the Sikhs and attracts them by the thousands at the spring festivals of 'Baisakhi' and 'Holi'. There are also two Hindu temples, one dedicated to Lord Rama called Devi Ka Mandir and built by a princess, and the other is sacred to Lord Kishna.

**Hemkund Sahib:** The high altitude Lokpal lake, known as Hemkund (4329 mts.) lies in heavenly environs. A steep trek from Ghangharia leads one to this spot in about four to six hours. It is an important pilgrimage for both Hindus and Sikhs, as well as for people from other faiths. There is a Sikh Gurudwara and a Lakshman Temple built on the bank of the lake. Encircled by seven snow clad peaks and their associated glaciers, it reflects its surroundings enchantingly on its crystal clear serene waters. The glaciers from Hathi Parvat and Saptrishi peaks feed the lake and a small stream called Himganga flows out of this lake. As alluded to, in the holy Granth Sahib, Guru Govind Singh, the tenth Guru of the Sikh faith had meditated on the bank of this lake in one of his earlier births. It is widely believed among Sikhs that Guru Govind Singh introduced the features now universally associated with Sikhism. On 15th April 1699, he started the new brotherhood called the Khalsa (meaning the pure) an inner core of the faithful, accepted by baptism (amrit). The five K's' date from this period: kesh (uncut hair) kangha (comb), kirpan (dagger or short sword), kara (steel bangle), and kachh (boxer shorts). The most important is the uncut hair, adopted before the other four. The comb is sometime designated especially as wooden. The dagger and the shorts reflect military influence, while the bangle may be a form of charm. It is believed that Lakshman, the younger brother of Ram, meditated by the lake and regained his health after being severely wounded by Meghnath, son of the demon Ravana, during battle. Despite its ancient connections, Hemkund/Lokpal was discovered by a Sikh Havaldar Solan Singh and became a major pilgrimage centre only after 1930.

**Gurdwara Bangla Sahib:** Built in the memory of the 8th Sikh Guru Sri Harkishen Sahib, Gurdwara Bangla Sahib is one of the important historical Gurdwara in Delhi. The large main hall is un-elaborate except for the open central shrine, where a sculpted bronze cupola hangs over a smaller golden dome under which silk sheets are spread out and covered with flowers. This shrine is the scene of constant devotional music, whose ethereal tones are relayed throughout the entire complex. The Gurdwara complex hosts one higher secondary school, which is having all the arrangement for studies, Baba Baghel Singh Museum, a library and a hospital. Gurdwara has also got a trough that stores the holy water known as 'Amrit' or nectar, which when consumed is believed to cure the diseases of the sick. Gurdwara also has a sarovar or a holy pond, where people take holy dip and pray to the Guru. Delhi Sikh Gurdwara Management Committee celebrates the birth of Guru Sri Harkrishan Sahib with great reverence. Death anniversary of Maharaja Ranjit Singh Ji is also celebrated over here. On the east side of the main Gurdwara in the complex is the 'Langar' (community kitchen) Hall, where free food is served to all devotees with no distinction of caste, creed or status. As in all Sikh places of worship, visitors of all religions irrespective of their cast, colour or creed are welcome. Visitors can deposit shoes, collect brochures, and enlist the services of a free guide at the information centre near the main entrance. To go into the main complex, one need's to cover one's head and wear conservative clothes that cover legs and shoulders.

---

**Check Your Progress - 1**

---

**Q1** - Discuss the main beliefs and religious practices followed in Sikhism.

**Q2** - List the Important Key Shrine Resorts of Sikhism in India.

---

**20.5 ISLAM**

---

Islam is the second-most practiced religion in the Republic of India after Hinduism. The followers of Islam trace their faith from the origin of the world, and claim that it was preached from time to time by a large number of the messengers of God. The Islam as it is practiced today originated around fourteen hundred years ago in Saudi Arabia. Prophet Muhammad is considered the last prophet who preached the present faith of Islam. Prophet Muhammad, the founder of Islam, was born in A.D. 570 at Mecca in Arabia. His father, named Abdullah, belonged to the Quresh tribe among the Arabs. This tribe had great sway over the religious system of the Arabs. The followers of Islam are called Muslims. It is a more democratic religion as compared to other religions and the principle of Millat is followed by its followers and they voluntarily offer their services to the Millat. The collection of the teachings of the Prophet is in the Quran. The significance of Quran for Muslims is similar to that of the Vedas for the Hindus and the Bible for the Christians.

The earliest contact of Muslims with India dates back to 8th century, with Arab sea merchants arriving at the southern sea coast. The second contact was after the Muslim invasions on the North-West frontier region. In the early 8th century, the province of Sindh (in present day Pakistan) was conquered by an Arab army led by Muhammad Bin Qasim. From 10th century onwards a number of invasions from Central Asia followed. In the first half of the 10th century, Mohmud of Ghazni added the Punjab to the Ghaznavid Empire and conducted several raids deeper into modern day India. In 11th century, Ghazi Saiyyad Salar Masud played significant role. A more successful invasion came at the end of the 12th century by Muhammad of Ghor. This eventually led to the formation of the Delhi Sultanate. Towards the beginning of the 13th century the Turks under Muhammed Ghori established themselves as rulers of Delhi. This was followed by a wave of sufisaints from Central Asia who came to India and many of them settled here. Shaikh Muinuddin Chishti is one of the earliest to come and settle here in Ajmer. His mausoleum at Ajmer is visited by lakhs of people belonging to different faiths from India and abroad. Over the years, there has been significant integration of Hindu and Muslim cultures across India and the Muslims have played a prominent role in India's economic rise and cultural influence.

Sufis (Islamic mystics) played an important role in the spread of Islam in India. They were very successful in spreading Islam, as many aspects of Sufi belief systems and practices had their parallels in Indian philosophical literature, in particular non-violence and monism. The Sufis' orthodox approach towards Islam made it easier for Hindus to practice. Hazrat Khawaja Muin-ud-din-Chishti,

Qutbuddin Bekhtiar Kaki, Nizam-ud-din Auliya and Shah Jalal etc. trained sufis for the propagation of Islam in different parts of India. Once the Islamic Empire was established in India, Sufis invariably provided a touch of colour and beauty to what might have otherwise been rather cold and stark reigns. The Sufi movement also attracted followers from the artisan and untouchable communities; they played a crucial role in bridging the distance between Islam and the indigenous traditions. Today, Islam is India's second-largest religion in India (after Hinduism), with around 174 million Muslim population second largest again, after Indonesia in terms of Muslim majority. And had there been no partition, India would have been the largest Muslim country in the world. Islam believes, - "Those who have the means and ability, pilgrimage is an obligation laid down by Allah. The disbelievers should know that Allah is independent of His creatures". And India has a remarkable handful of sites of Islamic importance visited by pilgrims from far and wide.

---

### 20.5.1 MAIN SECTS

---

There are a number of sects and sub-sects among Muslims. Here we will not go into the details of all these sects but confine ourselves to two major well defined sects i.e., the **Sunnis** and the **Shias**.

**(1) The Sunnis:** They believe that after Prophet the succession by Caliphs (Khalifas) was as per the tenets of Islam and traditions layed down by the Prophet. (The Prophet was succeeded by Caliphs - Abu Bakr, Umar, Usman and Ali in this order). They believe in the authority of **Quran** and the **sunna** (tradition) of Prophet only. They recognise no other authority as legitimate and above these two.

**(2) The Shias:** While accepting the supremacy of Quran and the traditions of Prophet, the **shias** differ with the **sunnis** in the matter of succession after Prophet. They believe that the Prophet should have been succeeded by **Ali** (who was also the cousin and son-in law of the Prophet). The other three Caliphs the **shias** believe held their position against the spirit of Islam. In due course a number of minor differences arose giving rise to a well defined separate sect. **The shias** consider **Ali** and his heirs as the **Imams** (leader of community). A total of 12 **Imams** are recognised. The **shias** also believe that the post of Imam is a special favour given by God to the chosen few.

A number of sects among both the **Sunnis** and the **Shias** emerged in and outside India with minor and major differences during the last fourteen hundred years. We will not go into the details of these sects here.

---

### 20.5.2 TEACHING OF PROPHET MUHAMMAD

---

Islam, the new faith of the Prophet, was a simple and straightforward religion and the teachings of Islam are also quite simple. The fundamentals of this religion are as follows:

1. Allah is one who has no partner and who is omnipotent and omnipresent and omnipresent.
2. All the prophets including Moses and Christ were sent as messengers by God. Most crucial is the belief that Prophet Mohammad was the last messenger of God sent on earth.
3. Every follower of Islam is required to offer prayer five times a day.
4. He should keep fast during the month of Ramazan.
5. He should pay Zakat to the poor.
6. Every follower of Islam should travel to Mecca at least once in his lifetime.
7. He should not worship idols.
8. He should pay proper regards to the Quran, the Godly Book.
9. The followers of Islam should have belief in equality of all people.

---

### 20.5.3 RELIGIOUS DUTIES OF MUSLIMS

---

Apart from the above stated tenets of Islam, its followers have certain religious duties.

- 1) **Prayers:** A Muslim must pray five times a day as per prescribed procedure. (at dawn, mid-day, mid-afternoon, after sunset and one and a half hour after sunset). A special prayer at mid-day in the mosque on Fridays where the congregation of the community takes place is also compulsory.
- 2) **Paying Zakat:** A Muslim must pay 2 & 112 percent of his assets for prescribed religious and charitable purposes.
- 3) **Fasting:** Fasting for one month during **Rarnzan** (month of Arabic calendar).
- 4) **Pilgrimage (Haj):** Every Muslim of substantial means must pay a visit to **kaaba** in Mecca (Saudi Arabia) to perform Haj atleast once in the life time.

---

### 20.5.4 IMPORTANT ISLAMIC PILGRIMAGE CENTRE

---

**Ajmer Sharif (Rajasthan):** The propounder of the Chishti Sufi order one of the most vital systems in India and Pakistan, lived, preached the tenets of peace and died here in Ajmer. The Dargah, considered a center of wish fulfillment, has shrines built by various Mughal Emperors. Shah Jehan's daughter, built a prayer room and the tomb of Bhishti, tomb of Saint's daughter-Bibi Hafiz Jama, tomb of Shah Jahan's daughter Chimni Begum, make the Dargah an all-are-welcome spiritual abode. One of the most revered sites in the Islamic world, some 5000 devotees both Muslim and non-Muslim with hearts full of hope and prayers, visit

Dargah Sharif everyday. The annual Urs festival held every June attracts about 15 lakh pilgrims from round the world.

**Jama Masjid (Delhi):** A mastermind of the greatest sculptor of those times, Ostad Khalil and Mughal Emperor Shah Jehan, the red-sandstone Jama Masjid is the largest mosque in India built between 1644 AD and 1658 AD by five thousand artisans. Standing mammoth in the midst of Delhi's bustling Chandni Chowk, the mosque was born "Masjid-i-Jahanuma" or the "Mosque that commands the view of the world" and true to its name, the structure is an infallible insignia of the Islamic influence in India. A replica of the Moti Masjid of Agra, the architectural grandeur apart, its vast courtyard can accommodate upto 25,000 devotees and it hosts a hair of the beard of Hazrat Muhammad, his used chappal (slippers), a chapter of Koran taken from its original holy book, the canopy of his tombstone and the foot print of Muhammad on the stone. Another aspect of interest for pilgrims is that the chief priest (Imam) of Jama Masjid is the direct descendent of the original and first Imam appointed by Shahjahan and till now there is no break in its lineage.

**Hazrat Nizamuddin Auliya Dargah (Delhi):** South Delhi's Dargah of Hazrat Nizamuddin Auliya, built by Muhammad Tughlaq is considered one of the most sacred in the Islamic world. Amir Khusrau, the famous poet and the beloved disciple of Nizamuddin; Jahan Ara Begum, daughter of Shah Jahan and renowned poet Mirza Ghalib are also lie buried here. Urs is also celebrated here, but twice a year, to commemorate the death Anniversary of Nizamuddin Auliya and Amir Khusrau.

**Dargah-Qutb-Sahib (Delhi):** In Delhi's Mehrauli village, near Gandak ki Baoli, there is a Dargah, crowded throughout the year with hopeful devotees (both Islam and non-Islam) who tie a thread near the grave and untie it once their wish is fulfilled. This is the Dargah of Qutb Sahib, the spiritual successor of Khwaja Mu'inu'd Din Chishti of Ajmer. There are other important graves near the Dargah, of believers who wanted to be buried near the Saint, like that of the Mughal emperors Bahadur Shah I (1707-12), Shah Alam II (1759-1806), Akbar II (1806-37) and many persons of royal blood.

**Haji Ali (Mumbai):** Haji Ali Dargah, is the 800 year old tomb of the once wealthy Muslim merchant, who renounced all his earthly property before setting off for a spiritual quest to Mecca. Built 500 yards off the shore, right in the middle of the sea, opposite the Mahalakshmi race-course, the narrow path linking the tomb to the mainland gets submerged during Monsoons. Separate praying rooms for men and women exist. It can only be visited off-monsoons, but if you have landed in Mumbai, in the wrong time, it is still a serene sight to behold the mosque appears floating on the turquoise waters.

**Fatehpur Sikri (Uttar Pradesh):** Drive 37 km West of Agra, and when you begin to see structures in Red Stone till the vision can reach, you know you have reached

Fatehpur Sikri. A Mughal Emperor Akbar township, still populated by some 30,000 citizens, the pilgrims come here to witness the classic unison of Hindu and Islamic architecture and pay their obeisance at the Fatehpur Sikri Mosque (a true replica of the mosque in Mecca), the grand Jami Masjid (has the famed Buland Darwaza) and Dargah Of Sheikh Salim Chisti - where, childless women come for blessings of the saint, a trend heralded by Akbar, who was blessed with three sons, after he came here.

**Mecca Masjid (Andhra Pradesh):** Flanking the Charminar in the Andhra Capital, Hyderabad is the Mecca Masjid, so named because the bricks were brought from Mecca to build the central arch. They say, "Mecca Masjid is poetry in stone". Towards the southern end of the mosque lie the marble graves of Nizam Ali Khan and the families of Asaf Jahi dynasty.

**Hazratbal Mosque (Kashmir):** Hazratbal Mosque is situated on the western bank of the Dal Lake opposite Nishat Bagh in Srinagar. It is the most venerated Muslim shrine in Kashmir, as it houses the Moi-e-Muqaddas or the Sacred Hair of the Prophet Mohammed displayed to the public on religious ceremonies usually accompanied by fairs. The shrine is known by several names including Hazratbal, Assar-e-Sharif, Madinat-Us-Sani and Dargah Sharif. Hazratbal is noteworthy also for being the only domed mosque in Srinagar.

---

## 20.6 CHRISTIANITY

---

Christianity is India's third largest religion, with approximately 24 million followers, constituting 2.3% of India's population and are spread throughout the country. According to tradition Christianity entered India after 50 years of its inception through Thomas one of the apostles of Christ. Thomas landed on the coast of Kerala around 52 A.D. and established seven churches in that area. These early Christians were generally confined to Kerala. With the advent of European missionaries in early 16th century Christianity spread to all parts of India. The Portuguese were the first followed by the Dutch, the French, the British and other European and American missionaries.

Christians are found all across India and in all walks of life, with major populations in parts of South India, the Konkan Coast and the North-East. Their main concentration is in Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Goa, Nagaland, Mizoram, Meghalaya, Manipur and Tripura. The Beliefs Christianity is also considered as a revealed divine religion (like Islam and Judaism). The religious precepts of Christianity are contained in their holy book called the Bible.

### The Jesus Christ

Jesus Christ is considered the central figure in Christian faith. He was born around two thousand years ago. During his life he performed miracles, healed the sick and

even gave life to the dead. He was crucified by his enemies at the young age of 33 years. According to Christian belief he rose again on the 3rd day of his burial and ascended into heaven. He is considered as a true man and true God by his disciples. He commanded his followers to spread his mission to all parts of the world.

### **Concept of God**

According to Christian faith God is one but has revealed himself as three persons - the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit. This concept of God is described as Unity in Trinity. Jesus is God, the Son, form of the Virgin Mary who conceived the Holy Spirit. According to the Christian belief the incarnation of Christ as a human being is a part of the divine plan for the atonement of the sins of mankind.

### **The Bible:**

The Bible is the holy book followed by the Christians. It consists of two collections of books: The Old Testament and the New Testament.

**(1) The Old Testament:** The Old Testament contains the sacred scriptures of the Jews as well as the early Christian scriptures. The Old Testament was originally written in Hebrew.

**(2) The New Testament:** The New Testament was written in the 2nd half of first century A.D. By the end of the second century the greater part of the New Testament was accepted as authoritative. It consists of 27 books and was originally written in Greek. It contains the life and deeds of Christ, the works of his companions and other saints and covers a wide range of things.

### **Sin and Evil**

According to Bible the God created heaven and earth and the first human beings Adam and Eve as the ancestors of human race. Adam and Eve were disobedient to their creator and brought sin and evil in this world. All mankind became heirs to the sin and lost the privilege of being the children of God. The suffering and death of the sinless man Jesus could atone the sins of mankind. God had sent his beloved only son to save the mankind from eternal damnation. Jesus is therefore called the saviour of mankind. God punishes the evil and rewards the good. The biggest good deed is to forgive the persons who sin against other person.

### **Body, Soul and Salvation**

According to the Christian belief man has a body and a soul. The former perishes while the latter survives eternally. Salvation means the continued existence of individual into heaven after death. The Christianity does not believe in the transmigration of souls. Individual's salvation is possible only if he / she accept Jesus as saviour.

### **Communion**

Sunday is considered 'Lord's day' and worship service is organised in the churches. The worship service consists of religious instruction, preaching, prayer and the breaking of bread. The last practice follows from what Jesus did at his last supper on the night before his death. The symbol of a cross reminds the Christians crucifixion of Christ to save mankind.

### **Baptism**

According to Christian faith nobody is considered a born Christian. One has to enter into the faith through a religious ceremony called baptism. This applies to the children born to Christians as well to the followers of other religions who become Christians. Spreading the message of Jesus and enrolling people from other faiths into Christianity is considered a religious duty. The act of spreading the gospel of Christ is termed evangelisation.

---

#### **20.6.1 MAJOR SECTS AND DIVISIONS**

---

Most Christians in India are Catholics of the Latin Church. The state of Kerala is home to the Saint Thomas Christian community, an ancient body of Christians who are now divided into several different churches and traditions. There are two Eastern Catholic Saint Thomas Christian Churches: the Syro-Malabar Catholic Church and the Syro-Malankara Catholic Church. There are also several Oriental Orthodox and independent churches in the Saint Thomas Christian community, including the Malankara Orthodox Syrian Church, the Malankara Jacobite Syrian Church and the Malankara Mar Thoma Syrian Church. Since the 19th century Protestant churches have also been present; major denominations include the Church of South India (CSI), the Church of North India (CNI), the Presbyterian Church of India, Baptists, Lutherans, Anglicans and other evangelical groups. The Christian Church runs thousands of educational institutions and hospitals contributing significantly to the development of the nation.

Christians in India have two major denominations - Catholics and Protestants. The Protestants emerged acquired a repatriate denomination during 16th century. They claimed that the church and society was in a state of crisis. They demanded reforms in such a situation and came to be called as Protestants. The Catholics on the other hand felt that there was no crisis and ascribe the rise of Protestantism to the interplay of certain complex and powerful forces. The Protestants do not believe in the authority of Pope which Catholics consider him as the main authority. The main Protestant sects in India are Calvinist, Anglican and Anabaptist. The main Catholic sects in India are Syrian Church, Latin Church and Malankara.

---

**20.6.2 IMPORTANT CHRISTIAN PILGRIMAGE CENTRE**

---

**Kerala:** The Malayatoor Church, Valiya Palli Church, St. Francis Church and most importantly Santa Cruz Basilica (raised to a cathedral by Pope Paul IV in 1558 AD) are noteworthy churches of India's Christianity holy-hub Kerala with about 9 million Christians. Keralalite Christians have a more remote ancestry than that of Christians of many of the European countries.

**Goa:** Churches like the Basilica of Bom Jesus or the tomb of St. Francis Xavier where his mortal remains attract believers in millions. Or the Church of St. Cajetan, modelled on the original design of St. Peter's Church in Rome and the Church of St Francis of Assisi are the main attractions. The Church and Convent of St Monica is the first Convent for nuns in Goa. Whether you have the time to tour all its churches dotted at every bend of the street. or not, do try to time your tour according to the Festivals. Be it the Christmas time, Feast of our Lady of Candelaria (Feb), Feast of St. Francis Xavier, Feast of our Lady of Rosary, Margao Feast (May) and most importantly, Goa Carnaval celebrated before Lent.

**Tamil Nadu:** Churches worth seeing in Tamil Nadu are Christ the King Church, Kandal Cross Shrine, Luz Church, Manappad Church, Santhome Cathedral Basilica, St. Andrew's Church, St. Mary's Church in the Fort, St. Thomas Mount and Velankanni Church.

**Other Christian Pilgrimage Sites in India:** A 1870 Anglican Cathedral with white and red stone exterior and marble altar, at Allahabad (Uttar Pradesh), form another visual and spiritual feast. In Delhi, the Churches worth seeing include the Church of the Sacred Heart and the Cathedral Church of the Redemption. Mumbai's first Anglican Church -Cathedral of St. Thomas, Chennai's Little Mount in Saidapet, where the Saint lived and preached are sites you should not miss. And if you want to combine religious ardor with a summer-retreat, Himachal Pradesh is the place with important Churches worth visiting like Christ Church and St Michael's Cathedral, the Catholic Church of St. Francis, St. John's Church-In-Wilderness, and the Christ Church.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS - 2**

---

Q. 1 - Describe the five basic tenets in which a Muslim must keep faith.

Q.2 - Write a short note on Christianity.

---

**20.7 SUMMARY**

---

We have seen the veritable character of India as a land of many religions in the sections described above. The diversity so acquired by India has also proved to be one of its mainstays over the developments and growth of civilisation here over the last several millenia. Sikhism, Islam and Christianity criticised the bloody sacrifices and rituals. These religious revolutions gave impetus to independent

thinking which contributed to the development of Indian philosophy. Thus we see that Sikhism, Islam and Christianity were three independent religions in spite of some similarities and dissimilarities.

---

## 20.8 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

---

Check Your Progress - 1

Check Your Progress - 2

---

## 20.9 REFERENCES

---

- Tourism Product: Dixit, Manoj & Charu Sheela; New Royal Book Co; Lucknow, 2<sup>nd</sup> Edition: 2010
- History of India- Earliest Times to 1526 A.D.: Khurana, K.L.; Laxshmi Narain Agarwal Educational Publishers, Agra, Tenth Revised Edition: 2010
- Tourism - The Cultural Heritage 7 (TS-1): IGNOU, New Delhi: 2002
- <http://www.indiatouristspots.com/pilgrimage/sikhism.html>
- [http://www.google.co.in/#hl=en&rlz=1W1ADSA\\_enIN400&q=sikhism+in+india&oq=Sikhi+in+india&aq=0c&aqi=g-c1g-sv1g-b4g-bm2&aql=&gs\\_sm=c&gs\\_upl=5773175671019892151510101012501110910.1.41510&bv=on.2,or.r\\_gc.r\\_pw.,cf.osb&fp=d79fedeeae607a00&biw=975&bih=483](http://www.google.co.in/#hl=en&rlz=1W1ADSA_enIN400&q=sikhism+in+india&oq=Sikhi+in+india&aq=0c&aqi=g-c1g-sv1g-b4g-bm2&aql=&gs_sm=c&gs_upl=5773175671019892151510101012501110910.1.41510&bv=on.2,or.r_gc.r_pw.,cf.osb&fp=d79fedeeae607a00&biw=975&bih=483)
- <http://www.indiainfoweb.com/himachal-pradesh/gurudwaras/poanta-sahib.html>
- [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Islam\\_in\\_India](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Islam_in_India)
- [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Christianity\\_in\\_India](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Christianity_in_India)

**Disclaimer:** The material provided is purely for academic purpose and the unit has been compiled from the various sources, heartfelt acknowledgement is being conveyed to all sources from where the material has been taken.

---

## 20.10 SUGGESTED READINGS

---

- Tourism Product: Dixit, Manoj and Charu Sheela; New Royal Book Co.; Lucknow, Second Edition: 2010
- History of India- Earliest Times to 1526 A.D.: Khurana, K.L.; Laxshmi Narain Agarwal Educational Publishers, Agra, Tenth Revised Edition: 2010
- Tourism - The Cultural Heritage 7 (TS-1): IGNOU, New Delhi: 2002

---

## 20.11 TERMINAL AND MODEL QUESTIONS

---

**Q1** - Describe the variant streams of Sikhism?

**Q2** - Write about 150 words on the main sects in Islam.

**Q3** - Write short notes on:

(a) Bible

(b) Gurudwara

(c) Quran

---

**Unit 21****Religious Fairs And Festivals of Tourist Importance**

---

**Structure:****21.1 Introduction****21.2 Objectives****21.3 Religious Fairs and Festival****21.4 Various Religious Fairs and Festivals of Touristic Importance****21.4.1 Some Common Religious Fairs and Festivals****21.4.2 Andhra Pradesh****21.4.3 Assam****21.4.4 Bihar****21.4.5 Gujarat****21.4.6 Himanchal Pradesh****21.4.7 Karnataka****21.4.8 Kerala****21.4.9 Madhya Pradesh****21.4.10 Maharashtra****21.4.11 Orissa****21.4.12 Punjab****21.4.13 Rajasthan****21.4.14 Tamilnadu****21.4.15 Uttarakhand****21.4.16 West Bengal****21.5 Summary****21.6 Glossary****21.7 Answers to "Check your progress"****21.8 Questions****21.9 Reference / further reading**

---

## 21.1 INTRODUCTION

---

As we know that our country is a land of fairs and festivals. There are uncountable fairs and festivals. The festive celebration of India is woven with the fibers of a galore of traditions, culture, heritage and rituals storing each region's fragrance in it. The fairs and festivals of India are nothing but the outburst of this multi-fragrant basket in different times at different corners of the country. Diverse religious faiths and geographical variance have lead to the celebration of a number of festivals round the year with equal enthusiasm.

The fairs and festivals of our country are of two kinds. Some festivals are of religious nature while others are celebrated to mark the change of season or harvesting. Dance, music, dazzling attires is the integral part of these festive seasons, as we cannot think of Pushkar Fair without the folk dance performance or Dandia Dance without the colourful traditional Gujarati outfits. Goa Carnival, Alleppey Boat Race, Bihu Festival, Puri Rath Yatra are some of the festivals which reflect the diversity of land and is celebrated by the common people with joy and vibrancy, whereas some festivals such as Diwali, Raksha Bandhan, Dussehra, id, etc. are celebrated in all parts of the country with same energy and exuberance.

So India is a country of fairs and festivals and many of them are of touristic importance. Here in this unit we will discuss the main fairs and festival of various states of India which have already attained the tourist importance and some other which have potential to attain the touristic importance.

---

## 21.2 OBJECTIVES

---

Here after reading this unit you will be able to:

- To access the variety of fairs and festival of your country.
- To get the knowledge of culture of India and its states.
- To know the touristic importance of our festivals.
- To enrich your tourism industry.

---

## 21.3 RELIGIOUS FAIRS AND FESTIVAL

---

India is considered to be a spiritual and holy land where several religions are followed and many deities are worshipped. In India, Hinduism, Islam, Buddhism and Jainism are the main religions which are rigorously practiced and followed. The other native Indian religions include Buddhism, Jainism, Sikhism, and Persians. But in modern era, Hinduism is mainly practiced and obeyed. The other natively Indian religions include Buddhism, Jainism and Sikhism. More than nine-tenths of Indian state holds priority where religion plays very important role.

Diverse religious faiths and geographical variance have lead to the celebration of a number of festivals round the year with equal enthusiasm. Some festivals are of religious nature while others are celebrated to mark the change of season or harvesting. Almost all the religious fairs and festivals of our country have

mythological base. The Number of festivals such as Diwali, Raksha Bandhan, Dussehra, id, Maker Sakranti, Holi, Dushera etc. are celebrated in all parts of the country with same energy and exuberance. So in this sphere we also have the unity in diversity.

---

#### 21.4 VARIOUS RELIGIOUS FAIRS AND FESTIVALS OF TOURISTIC IMPORTANCE

---

India is a country of various religions and hence have the verity of fairs and festivals. I do not think there is any month lies without festivals here. Here we are giving you the list of some important fairs and festivals of Inida:

In the month of January Makar Sankranti, Lohri, Pongal, Thai Pusam, Float Festival, National Kite Festival, Kerala Village Fair, Bikaner Camel Festival, Pattadakal Dance Festival, Id-ul-Fittr, Vasant Panchami etc.

In the month of February Mahashivratri, Desert Festival, Goa Carnival, Nagaur Fair, International Yoga Week etc.

In the month of March Holi, Gangaur, Jamshed-e-Navroz, Ramnavami, Id-ul-Zuha, Elephant Festival, Hoysala Mahotsava, Ellora Festival, Khajuraho Dance Festival etc.

In the month of April Good Friday, Baisakhi, Easter, Mahavir Jayanti, Gudi Padva or Ugadi, Pooram, Muharram, Mewar Festival, Buddha Purnima etc and in the month of May Urs.

In the month of June Ganga Dussehra, Hemis Festival and in the month of July Rathyatra, Guru Purnima.

In the month of August Janmashtami, Ganesh Chaturthi, Onam, Nag Panchami, Rakshabandhan and Tarnetar Mela, Boat Races In the month of September.

Navratri, Durga Puja, Dussehra, Marwar Festival lies in October and in the month of November, Sharad Purnima, Diwali, Guru Purab, Ka Pomblang Nongrem, Sonapur Fair, Pushkar Fair, Hampi Festival. The famous Christmas, Konark Dance Festival etc are celebreated in the month of December. So we have a long list of fairs and festivals and it is difficult to provide the details of all of them in a single unit. Hence we are giving you the details of few of them as follows:

---

##### 21.4.1 SOME COMMON RELIGIOUS FAIRS AND FESTIVALS

---

**Durga Puja** is one of the most important festivals in entire India. However it is in West Bengal that one gets to see the most emphatic celebrations. For the people of the state, Durga Puja is more than just a festival, it is the time to express their culture and devotion through the highest degree of energy and enthusiasm. Durga

Puja, apart from being famous among Bengalis, it attracts tourists from all over the world. The festival is celebrated during the Navaratri, commencing on 6th day and ending on the 10th day. This 5 day festival puts forth the grandest exhibition of color and culture that surpasses all other festival by quite a distance.

The main attraction of event are the numerous pandals that are set up for the celebrations. It is estimated that nearly 2000 pandals are erected in Kolkata alone. The pandals that are set up are simply unbelievable. You really have to see one to believe that such marvels can be made and that too in such a short time. Some of them are made copying famous monuments like Taj Mahal, Parliament House and forts of Rajasthan that them another attraction of the festival. The Pandal that houses the idol of Goddess Durga for four days, are as grand from inside as they are from outside. The decorations used inside the pandal are simply stunning. The best thing about them is that the designs that are used once, are never repeated again.

Goddess Durga is believed to be the reincarnation when all gods combined their power to get rid of the demon Mahishasura. According to Mythology, during the time of war between Lord Rama and Demon King Ravana, Lord Rama conjured Goddess Durga to seek her blessings for the war. This prayer was done during the month of Ashwin (6th month according to Bengali calendar), which by Gregorian calendar falls around September or October. This period is thus referred to as 'Akalbodhon'. Another legend has it that Lord Shiva permitted Goddess Durga to visit her mother for nine days in a year. Her visit to her parents is thus celebrated as Durga Puja. On the 10th day, immersion of Goddess Durga idol in River Ganges symbolizes her return to Mt. Kailash.

### **Holi**

Holi is just an excuse to live the moment to the fullest. Men and women drench each other in water, color all with different natural colors and get high by drinking Bhaang and dance. Holi, the Festival of Colors is marked as the opening festival in Hindu calendar, falls on the full moon day in the month of Phalgun. People enjoy themselves playing with several colours and celebrate the whole day with much pump and gait

Originally Holi was regarded to be the festival to celebrate good harvests and fertility of the land. There are several legends and stories behind Holi. A popular legend says that Holi is remembered for the sacrifice of Holika who burnt herself in fire on this day. Holi is therefore regarded one of the most ancient festivals of the Aryans. Holi is also known by the name 'Basant Utsav' which means the festival of spring.

### **Vasant Panchami / Shree Panchami / Saraswati Puja**

Hinduism is a way of life rather than a religion. The people practicing Hinduism have firm faith on Gods and Goddesses whom they

worshiped on various occasions by performing Puja and rituals. Vasant Panchami is a festival that worships Goddess Saraswati as well as it signifies the beginning of Vasant Ritu (spring season). The 5th day of the bright fortnight of the lunar month of Magh – falls usually in the month of January or February) is the day of Vasant Panchami and is also celebrated as Shree Panchami or Saraswati Puja in West Bengal and few other parts of Orissa.

### **Ram Navami - All over India**

The birthday of Lord Rama, the celebrated hero of the famous epic, 'Ramayana', is enthusiastically celebrated on the ninth day of the waxing moon in the month of Chaitra, all over India. Lord Vishnu is worshipped in his human incarnation as Rama, the divine ruler of Ayodhya. Celebrations begin with a prayer to the Sun early in the morning. At midday, when Lord Rama is supposed to have been born, a special prayer is performed. People sing devotional songs in praise of Rama and rock, images of him in a cradle to celebrate his birth. Rath yatras or chariot processions of Ram, his wife Seeta, brother Lakshman and devotee Hanuman are held from many temples.

### **Baisakhi**

The festival is celebrated on the 13th of April every year. This is a prominent Sikh festival but since the population of Sikhs is quite large in parts of Jammu and Kashmir as well, you will see the enthusiastic celebrations of this festival. It is to celebrate the starting of harvesting season in Northern India. The day also witnesses the start of many fairs, some are even week long. Do visit these fairs as they prove to be great place for shopping for local and traditional items. The day is also famous as the birthday of the tenth Sikh Guru, Guru Gobind Singh.

### **Eid-ul-Fitr and Eid-ul-Azha**

Eid-ul-Fitr and Eid-ul-Azha are the most famous Muslim festivals in the state of Jammu and Kashmir. If you have to experience the real fun and celebrations of Id, you have to be in Kashmir where the dominant population is of Muslims. Although, the festival is also celebrated in part of Jammu as well. Eid-ul-Fitr marks the end of fasting month of Ramadan. During this day, instead of five-time namaz, people have to offer namaz six times. The day is very auspicious for all Muslims, they wear new clothes and attend many grand feasts. Eid-ul-Azha is equally important festival, which is more prominent for the Qurbani (sacrifice). People sacrifice goats, sheep and some even Camels.

---

## **21.4.2 ANDHRA PRADESH**

---

There is no time in Andhra Pradesh when one or the other part of the state is not in engulfed in the festive and cheerful mood. Andhra Pradesh is a state of rich with culture and heritage with a strong influence of its past and it is put on display during the many fairs and festivals in the state. The state is home to people of all

religion and every religion has their own special festivals. Each full of color, enthusiasm and energy that make even the smallest of festival, turn out to be a grand affair. The main festivals in the state are the temple fairs like Brahmotsavam in Tirupati and Sri Rama Navami Festival in Bhadrachalam which attract pilgrims and tourist from all over the country. Then there are festivals that are to celebrate the complete history of religion in the state, Lumbini Festival is one such festival that glorify the 200 year old heritage of Buddhism.

### **Brahmotsavam Celebrations in Tirupati**

Among the many festivals celebrated in Tirupati, Brahmotsavam is the most important and the grandest festival. This nine day festival, which is held during the Navaratri, attracts pilgrims and tourists from all over India and from other countries as well. On these nine days, pilgrim count comfortably crosses 100 thousand mark everyday. All days have their own significance and are marked by huge and colorful processions where Lord Venkateswara is taken out along with his consorts. The difference in the various day processions is the chariots in which the Lord rides. The fifth day is important, it is considered to be the day when Lord Vishnu took the form of Mohini and appeared on Earth. Lord Venkateswara is dressed as Mohini and taken in the processions through the temple. The number of Pilgrims is the highest on this day. The start of the festival is symbolized by the hoisting of Garuda Dhwaja (flag with the sign of eagle) and the end of the festival is shown by lowering the Garuda Dhwaja.

---

### **21.4.3 ASSAM**

To know what celebrations really mean, visit Assam on time of a fair or a festival. The jubilation and energy of the moments, takes the spectators to a different level of enjoyment. Population of Assam is constituted by people of different tribes and religion. Every festival of theirs is a reflection of Assamese traditions and culture. The most appealing fact about the festivals of Assam is that it is participated by everyone irrespective of their caste, religion, and tribe. To learn about the lifestyle of people of Assam in a very short span of time, one should get a glimpse of the many fairs and festivals of Assam. The most important festivals in Assam are the three Bihu Festival, all celebrated with equal fervor and enthusiasm. Most of the fairs held in Assam are religious in nature and also depict a religious side of the people.

### **Bihu Festival**

Bihu is the most important festival of Assam celebrated with highest degree of energy. In a year, there are three types of Bihu festivals named Rangali Bihu, Bhogali Bihu and Kangali Bihu. Among the three the most important is the Rangali Bihu, also called Bahag Bihu, which is celebrated during the spring season. This festival marks the start of agricultural festival. The main event of the festival is the Bihu dance by young boys and girls accompanied by music sung by women.

People wear new clothes and prepare some exotic dishes which are not generally prepared on normal days.

The Bhogali Bihu is celebrated in mid-January and is the harvesting festival. The main celebrations happen in the evening before the Bihu day. People make temporary shelter and collect firewood for bonfire. Firewood is collected by stealing them which is permissible for the day. A lavish non vegetarian meal is prepared for all the people gathered. Buffalo fight is another attraction of the day. Kangali Bihu is not as such a big affair like the other two Bihu festivals. Worship of Tulsi plant is the main ritual of the day.

---

#### **21.4.4 BIHAR**

Bihar is a state with people deeply inclined towards their religions and culture. And this shows in the number of festivals celebrated in the state. The festival of Bihar, whether they are tribal festivals or cultural festivals, have celebrations with something special that is above all our imaginations. Like everywhere else, festivals in Bihar too are a time for social gathering, enjoyment and new beginnings. Most of the festivals in Bihar have been carried on since the time Bihar was under Vedic religion, so these festivals still have interesting legends related to them. Even the famous Sonapur Cattle Fair is said to recreate the legend of Gajendra Moksha.

#### **Chhath Festival**

Chhath Puja is one of the main festival of people of Bihar. Chhath Puja is dedicated to Sun God and worshiping is done by everyone without the difference of cast or creed. It is celebrated right after Diwali festival. The best place to experience Chhath Puja is Bragaon near Nalanda which is noted for its Sun Temple. Unlike other festivals which are full of exuberance and expansive celebrations, Chhath Puja is more mellowed down festival for prayers. It is more of thanks giving to Sun God. One day before the Chhath Puja, people gather on the banks of River Ganga and clean themselves. They keep a fast till the late evening. After the Chhath puja, a grand feast consisting of rice, puris, bananas, coconut and grapefruits is served. On the next day, it is mandatory to keep a 24 hour fast where not even a glass of water is allowed. Women cleanse all the utensils in the home. They then go to river bank to pay their homage to Sun God. It is only after the prayers and taking a bath in the river is the fast considered over.

#### **Check Your Progress**

1. What is famous in Puri?
2. Which festival is celebrated during Navratris?
3. Name the festival of colour.
4. Which festival is mark of end of month of Ramadin?
5. Which God/Godess is worshiped in Chhat puja?

---

### 21.4.5 GUJARAT

---

#### **Navratri**

Navratri, meaning `nine nights`, is an ancient and colourful festival. It honours the one Divine Shakti or Force which supports the entire universe, and is personified as the Mother Goddess. Another interesting feature of Navratri is the garba, a circular dance performed by women around an earthenware pot called a garbo, filled with water. A betel nut and a silver coin are placed within the pot, called a kumbh, on top of which a coconut has also been placed. As the dancers whirl around the pot, a singer and a drummer provide the musical accompaniment. The participants clap in a steady rhythm. Nowadays, loudspeakers are used to enhance the sound which grows to a crescendo. The dance usually starts slowly. It gets faster and faster as the music too gets more rapid, until the dance abruptly comes to a halt.

Another dance which is also a feature of Navaratri is the dandia-ras or `stick` dance, in which men and women join the dance circle, holding small polished sticks or dandias. As they whirl to the intoxicating rhythm of the dance, men and women strike the dandias together, adding to the joyous atmosphere. So popular are the garba and the dandia-ras that competitions are held to assess the quality of the dancing. Prizes are given to those judged to be the best. The costumes worn for the dances are traditional and alive with colour.

#### **Trinetreshwer Mahadev Fair, Tarnetar**

There are many fairs in Gujarat where numerous tribal people-gather on special occasions to participate in the various activities that take place at the fair, whether these are religious or secular, and to enjoy themselves thoroughly. The Trinetreshwer Mahadev Fair at Tarnetar, near the industrial town of Thangadh, Saurashtra, is one such fair. It is believed that the fair has been held on this ancient site since antiquity. The fair is linked with the story of Draupadi's swayamvar and it is said that it was at this place that the great archer Arjuna performed the difficult task that won him his bride. A pole was erected in the centre of the kund and a fish was kept rotating at the top of the pole, at top speed. The contestant was supposed to climb up, balance himself with one foot on each of the two scales suspended there and looking at the reflection of the fish in the kund, pierce its eye with an arrow.

---

### 21.4.6 HIMACHAL PRADESH

---

Himachal Pradesh is a land of simple and religious people. The place is full of local deities and you will find a different one at every turn. The people lead a colourful life here with the fairs and festivals adding to their zest. It is as if they are always eager to dress in their traditional attires to dance and enjoy and worship. The festivals sometimes mark the beginning of seasons. Many Sikh festivals like Baisakhi and Lohri are also celebrated largely here and the tribals have their own festivals here.

---

**Kullu Dussehra**

It is the famous festival celebrated in the northern India. It is called Dusshera all over but here it is called Kullu Dusshera. The actual festival begins here when it ends elsewhere. It marks the return of Lord Rama to his homeland Ayodhya. A seven day celebration marks it with the Gods of Kullu, Rupi and Seraj gathering here. For seven days dance and music fill the air. A trade fair is also held simultaneously.

---

**21.4.7 KARNATAKA**

---

When it comes to celebrating a festival, only few states come close to the energy and enthusiasm which is possessed by Karnataka. Almost throughout the year, there is a festival or a fair going on in some part of the state. And people of Karnataka believe in making every event a special one. Most of the festivals are of religious nature. There are number of temples in Karnataka and almost all of them have their special day or festival. And they are celebrated keeping the complete sanctity of the festival. However many festivals like the Hampi Festival, are just another reason for celebrating life and its gifts. Karnataka is home to people of many religions and almost all religions have their own festivals. What is most heartening about Karnataka is that all the festivals are celebrated by people from all religion together giving life to the saying 'Unity in Diversity'.

**Mahamastakabhisheka (Shravanabelagola)**

Mahamastakabhisheka is one of the most revered events taking place in Karnataka. The festival is dedicated to Lord Bahubali in which monks bathe the world's largest monolithic statue with water and milk. Thousands of tourists visit Shravanabelagola, to witness the grand event, which is held every 12 years. The entire atmosphere is filled with the chanting of hymns by Jain monks. The 57 feet high statue is bathed with milk, sugarcane juice, and saffron paste along with showering of gold and silver flowers. Devotees rush up 618 steps to the statue, to reach a spot from where they can get the best view of all the proceedings. The last Mahamastakabhisheka ceremony was held in the year 2006 and the next one is supposed to be held in 2018.

**Tula Sankramana**

Mostly falling in on 17th of October, this is a festival, most awaited by the people of Kodagu district. It is believed that, on this day, Goddess Cauvery visits them in the form of an upsurge of water in a small tank. It is considered a very sacred moment and thousands of devotees visit Kodagu to receive Goddess Cauvery's blessings. Taking a bath in the tank by devotees is the most important ritual of the day. It is said that, taking a dip in the tank purifies body and soul. Devotees also take the holy water to their homes as well.

---

**21.4.8 KERALA Kerala kerela**

---

**Onam**

The legend of Onam first - Lord Kashyap had two sons from his two wives, Diti and Aditi. The former was the mother of demons while the latter was the mother of demi gods. It so happened that in an attempt to increase their individual powers, the demons led by Mahabali and demigods spearheaded by Indra clashed with each other. The resultant defeat of Indra saddened his mother, Aditi to such an extent that Kashyapa himself asked her to pray to Lord Narayana. Aditi heeded his advice and prayed to Lord Narayana with complete devotion who in turn promised her to take birth from her womb and eliminate all her griefs.

Accordingly, Aditi gave birth to Vamana murti who exuded brightness at a very young age itself. He visited Mahabali while he was performing a yagna as a young Brahmin lad and sought a portion of land covered by his three foot steps. Mahabali was warned by his guru that the Brahmin was no ordinary person and hence he should not promise him anything in haste. However, Bali was an honoured person and hence did not wish to retreat from his words. Knowing very well that he could lose everything, he gave a go ahead to the Brahmin lad to take three foot steps. It was during this time that Vamana grew to huge size and covered earth in his first step and heaven in his second. The devout king Bali offered him his head to take the third step. Pleased by his devotion and sincerity, Lord Narayana allowed him to visit his people once every year before pushing him down the earth into the infernal regions (patala).

- Therefore, the Keralites celebrate the Onam festival every year to mark the arrival of Lord MahaVishnu as well as the great Emperor Mahabali. Historically, the celebration of Onam festival finds first mention in the Sangam age.
- The timing of the festival coincides with the harvest season of Kerala. Celebrations begin ten days before, beginning from Atham and culminating on Thiru Onam. The two days hold utmost importance in the entire festival. It is on Thiru Onam that the people get ready to welcome their benevolent king on his annual visit.
- The people of Kerala celebrate this festival with all fanfare. The grandeur of Onam is so huge that it was declared a National Festival by the Government of India in the year 1961. The Government has also been promoting Onam on an International basis to make people aware of the cultural richness of the country.

**Champakulam Moolam Boat Race**

This is counted as the oldest boat race of Kerala. The legend behind this race states that the king of Chempakasseri, Maharaja Devanarayana, as guided by his guru, ordered the construction of a Krishna Temple at Ambalappuzha. However, a little before the installation, it was found out that the idol was damaged. The idol was declared inauspicious for the temple and the king was hugely upset over the

sudden development. The ministers of his court advised him to send some men to bring down the idol of Shree Krishna from the the Karikulam Temple in Kurichi. The king followed the advice. After successful completion of their work, the ministers, on their way back to halted at Champakulam to spend the night. In the morning, boats from the entire region sailed to escort the idol to the temple amidst colourful procession. The idol was installed on time and with much fanfare.

### **Aranmula Uthrattadi Vallamkali**

The story of Aranmula Boat Race goes that a Brahmin once pledged to feed one pilgrim a day. Lord Shree Krishna, pleased by his dedication, appeared himself one day. Overwhelmed, the Brahmin offered 51 measures of rice and all the provisions of Thiruvona Sadya (Onam afternoon feast) to be held at the Aranmula Parthasarathy Temple. However, enemies from other village became aware of it and tried to destroy the provisions. At this point of time, the Brahmin's own villagers came to his rescue on snake boats and assisted him to carry his offering on large snake boats, palliyodam.

---

## **21.4.9 MADHYA PRADESH**

---

Fairs and Festivals of Madhya Pradesh are the best time for tourist to get the real experiences of tribal lives in central India. These tribal festivals set Madhya Pradesh as a completely unique state. But what makes this part of India really famous all over the world, are the cultural festivals like Khajuraho Dance Festival and Tansen Music Festival that attracts uncountable number of art lovers from all parts of the world. Apart from these, the state celebrates all the major festivals of all religion with high level of devotions and dedications.

### **Bhagoriya Festival**

This is a very interesting festival celebrated specially in West Nimar and Jhabua district by people of Bhil and Bhilala tribe. The festival is a different version of 'Swayamvara', the traditional method of marriage in India. The celebration of the festival starts 8 days before Holi and continues till Holi. During this festival, young boys and girls find their partners and elope. And afterwards, they are accepted as husband and wife by the society. According to traditions, the boy applies color on the face of the girl he chooses to be his wife, and if she agrees she too applies color on the face of that boy. The festival is celebrated in the month of March.

### **Karma**

This is a special festival celebrated by the Korba tribal but other tribes too celebrate this festival. The Karma festival is one of their most important religious festivals and is celebrated with great enthusiasm. It is celebrated during the month of August. During the festival, people keep a full day fast from the morning of festive day to the morning of next day. In the night, people sing and dance around a branch from the Karam tree.

---

**21.4.10 MAHARASHTRA**

---

Maharashtra is probably the most culturally active state in the whole of India. And the credit of this goes to the people of India who are truly vibrant and lively lot. No wonder then that the festivals of Maharashtra would be occasions of magnificent and unhindered celebrations. Most part of the year, Maharashtra is immersed in the enthusiasm of festivals. Even before a festival is over, preparations for the next one are already on way; so close are all the festivals in this state. Most splendid of all religious festivals is the Ganesh Chaturthi celebrated around the month of August. Apart from all the religious festivals, Maharashtra is known for many cultural festivals like Pune Festival and Elephanta cave festival where one can witness the amalgamation of music, dance and drama.

**Ganesh Chaturthi**

Celebrates in the month of August-September, Ganesh Chaturthi is the most important festival in Maharashtra. This is a 11 day festival that marks the birth of Lord Ganesha, keeps the people of Maharashtra engaged in its preparations from months before. Mumbai is the main centre where one could see the celebrations of Ganesh Chaturthi at its very best. Every street in the city is decorated with lights; every shop and home is cleaned and ornamented. The last day of the festival is called 'Chaturthi'. On this day, huge statues of Lord Ganesha are taken out in gala processions to the nearest river or sea and immersed. The immersion marks the end of the festival.

---

**21.4.11 ORISSA**

---

The fairs and festivals of a state is a mirror to the energy and enthusiasm of the people of the state. And this is absolutely true when it comes to Orissa. There are numerous festivals that keep Orissa engulfed and excited throughout the year. Orissa is a land full of temples and there are festivals that are exclusive to many temples. With the eagerness that is shown by the people, these festivals often turn out to be more than just religious ceremonies. They become a cultural showcase of Orissa.

**Jagannath Puri Rath Yatra**

Rath Yatra in Puri is the grandest procession that takes place, probably in entire world. Held in the month of July, it is also the biggest event held in Orissa. The festival is the celebration of Journey of Lord Jagannatha, Lord Balabhadra and Goddess Subhadra, to their birthplace Gundicha Mandir. The idols of the three gods is taken out of the Jagannatha Temple in three humongous chariots. The chariots are pulled by thousands of devotees along the wide roads of Puri. Millions of other pilgrims line these streets to get a glimpse of the gods in their chariots. The distance that is covered to Gundicha Temple is 3 km. feel the devotion that looming large in the air. The entire scene of Rath Yatra will leave you mesmerized and open mouthed.

---

**Konark Dance Festival**

Held in the month of December, Konark Dance Festival has become another major attraction besides the famous sun Temple. During the festival, many renowned artists display their skill in various classical Dances. The festivals also turn out to be a great platform for many budding dancers where they can showcase their talent. Having the magnificent floodlit Sun Temple as backdrop, the performances give a feel of fantasy. The main dances that are performed here are Bharatnatyam, Odissi and Kathak.

---

**21.4.12 PUNJAB**

---

Punjab is a state of colors, energy and enthusiasm. And all these are evident in the many festivals celebrated throughout the state of Punjab. Not only are the bigger festivals a stage for experiencing the exuberance of the masses.No matter what time you are in Punjab, you are always in between the celebrations of a festival or really close to one. Festivals of Punjab means a lot of good music, entertaining dance and uncountable varieties of mouth watering dishes. Since Punjab is predominantly an agricultural state, it is no surprise that Baisakhi, the harvesting festival, is the most important festival for the people of Punjab.

**Lohri**

So strong is the electrifying ambiance of Lohri, that it no longer is bound to the state of Punjab. It is today a major festival in almost all states of North India. Lohri, also called the 'Festival of Bonfire' is celebrated every year on the 13th of January. The lighting of bonfire around which people perform folk dances and sing Punjabi songs marks the festival. January is a time when the weather is extremely cold and the temperatures linger close to 0 degrees. Thus for many people, Lohri is a also a temporary relief from the chilling weather. In the morning of the day, children run from door to door demanding Lohri 'Loot' in form of either money or eatables like sweets, jaggery, gajak or rewri. As the evening sets in, huge blocks of wood are arranged and are lit up. They are set up either on harvesting fields or in front of the homes.

**Baisakhi**

Amongst all the festivals of Punjab, Baisakhi is the most important festival of the state. Baisakhi is a festival celebrating the harvesting of Rabi crops. Not only is it an important day for the farmers, but the festivals also holds a great importance in Sikh religion as well. This day starts early for the people of Punajb. Many take bath in the holy river and visit the nearby Gurudwara. There are special prayers organized in all gurudwaras. Afterwards cultural programmes are organized where people gather to enjoy by dancing and singing. The celebrations of Baisakhi is the best place to witness the Bhangra and Giddha dance.

**Hola Mohalla**

Hola Mohalla is a festival that is among the most important festivals for the Sikh community. The festival marks the New Year according to the lunar Nanakshahi calendar of Sikhs. This day is seen as an occasion for the Sikh community to show their martial skills in faux battles. In fact, 'Hola Mohalla' literally means for 'mock fights'. Originated during the time of Guru Gobind Singh, the first mock fight was held at Anandpur in 1701 AD. This too is a three day festival and on all three days there are grand celebrations including mock fights, exhibitions, display of

---

#### **21.4.13 RAJASTHAN**

---

##### **Pushkar Festival**

The little town of Pushkar in Rajasthan has gained international recognition as the venue of the largest camel fair in the world. Though the festival is primarily known for its camel trade, yet there are many more enjoyable aspects of the festivals that visitors can feel enthusiastic about. For international tourists, the colors' and spirit of the Rajasthan is a big attraction while for the domestic tourists, it is also the religious aspect that holds significance.

The Pushkar Fair is celebrated for a period of seven days during the period of Kartik Purnima. The major attraction of the fair, the camel trade dominates for the first five days. The buyers and sellers flock in huge numbers to participate in the trading of camels. Smooth transaction is as common as heavy bargaining. Trading is not restricted to the camels as the sale of other animals like goats, sheep and horses are also carried on in full swing.

The enthusiasm of the festival finally gives way to religious fervour. Pushkar is the only place in India where a temple dedicated to Brahma exists. During the Pushkar festival, a dip in the Pushkar Lake is considered extremely auspicious to wash away all the sins of human body and mind. Infact, it will not be wrong to say that many visitors come to Pushkar fair just to offer their prayer to the creator of the universe. In the night, thousands of oil lamps are floated in the water in respect of Lord Brahma. The entire atmosphere glows with not only the illuminations of the lamps but also with the deep faith of the devotees. This prayer ceremony gives a beautiful conclusion to the Pushkar Festival.

##### **Baneshwar Fair, Dungarpur**

A religious fair held in Jab-Feb every year, at the confluence of the Mahi and Som rivers. The Bhil tribal-community in Rajasthan, Gujarat, and Madhya Pradesh assemble at the confluence for holy dips, to immerse the mortal remains of dead relatives or to offer prayers at this auspicious spot. The festival is dedicated to Kalki, the 10th incarnation of Lord. Vishnu. Festivities include magic shows, acrobatic, dances and songs. A procession carrying a silver image of Kalki on horse back, is taken around the village.

---

**Gangaur Festival, Jaipur**

Gangaur is an 18-day festival celebrated by women all across Rajasthan. Married women pray for the long lives of their husbands while unmarried girls pray for a good match. The festival celebrates the love between Shiva and his consort Gauri or Parvati the festival commences on Holi. Women gather flowers and draw water from selected wells while chanting hymns in praise of the goddess. At the end of 18 days, the festivities culminate with the arrival of Lord Shiva to escort his wife back home. A grand procession, symbolic of a marriage procession, carries a beautifully decorated idol of Gauri in a gold and silver palanquin through the city. The procession includes elephants, camels, horses, dancers, drummers and joyous children.

**Mewar Festival, Udaipur**

The Mewar festival at Udaipur is held in March-April every year and welcomes the spring season. The festival is dedicated to goddess Gauri (Parvati). A procession carrying the idols of Gauri and Shiva, is taken around the city to the Gangaur Ghat at Lake Pichola. The entire city turns in their colourful traditional costumes. A stately boat procession then starts from the lake. The occasion is marked by traditional dancing and singing. Boat races are also organised.

**Teej Fair, Jaipur**

Teej is celebrated in the Hindu month of Shravan, corresponding with July-August every year and marks the advent of the monsoons, a time of joy and respite in Rajasthan. The festival is extremely popular with Rajasthani women. It is dedicated to goddess Parvati, the consort of Shiva. Married women dress up in all their bridal fineries, they apply henna on their palms and swing on flower-decorated swings as they sing traditional songs. They pray to goddess Parvati for the long lives of their husbands.

**Urs Ajmer Sharif, Ajmer (According to Lunar Calendar)**

Held in the memory of the revered Sufi saint Khawaja Moinuddin Chisti, the Urs at Ajmer Sharif is an occasion for thousands of believers to congregate at the shrine and offer their prayers. All of Ajmer seems to take on a festive air and several programmes are organised to mark the festivals.

---

**21.4.14 TAMILNADU**

---

Tamil Nadu. There is no place like this. Having fascinated tourists for decades, Tamil Nadu has something new to offer every year. Tamil Nadu is blessed with a rich culture and a traditional past. The glory and the grandeur comes alive to greet you every day. Temples, beaches, hill stations, gopurams, mountains, waterfalls, wildlife... name it, you have it. The festivals and the festive moods of Tamil Nadu are other reasons for the constant inflow of tourists. There is a festival for every month.

Festivals serve as an occasion for family reunion from long time and now become a part and parcel of people's lives, occasions like the Natyanjali Dance festival, has started attracting tourists from all over the world. Tamil Nadu is also blessed with innumerable number of temples, almost all of these religious structures have their own special festivals and fairs to celebrate. Most of these temple festivals are in the month between September and November and between March and June. Come, and join the soil of verginity along in festivals of Tamil Nadu you will see a perfect blend of dance, music and religion that will give you an insight into the real world of frolic and celebrations. Festivals that make a year full of fond memories. We welcome you to share the same.

### **Pongal Festival**

Pongal is one of those festivals that is celebrated almost everywhere in India but with different names. It is the most important festival celebrated in Tamil Nadu to mark the harvesting of crops. The festival and celebrations are spread over a period of four days. The celebrations are generally confined to people's home and you might not be able to see much activities on the roads but the third day is for thanking and paying homage to natural factors like Sun god, earth and cattle that play a major part in the harvesting of crops and you might just spot locales outside their homes worshipping their cattles. These sights will introduce you to a different kind of relation between man and animal, different than any that you have ever imagined.

### **Natyanjali Festival**

A festival dedicated to dance in devotion to Lord Shiva in the form of Nataraja is what Natyanjali Dance festival is all about. This is one of the main festival that is celebrated with a lot of enthusiasm and fervor. The festival is celebrated in Chidambaram every year in the month of February-March. It all begins from the day of Mahashivratri for the next five days. The visitors get a chance to see the performance of all the prominent dancers of India on the same platform. The performances are delivered in front of the Nataraja temple as a devotion to Lord Nataraja. The festival witnesses a large number of spectators so it is advisable that you book your ticket well in advance.

### **Chithirai Festival**

Venue is the famous Madurai temple, 500 kms. from Chennai. The festival starts from the Tamil month -Chithirai, and goes on for ten days. The highlight is the procession of Lord `Kallazhagar` (Lord Vishnu) the elder brother of Goddess Meenakshi, who proceeds from his abode - Azhagarmalai 30 kms. from Madurai, to give away his sister in marriage to Lord Sundareshwar. The celebration is filled with pomp and festivity: The `Kallazhagar` entering the river Vaigai is indeed a spectacular sight.

### Check Your Progress

1. Which fair of Gujarat is associated with Droupadi of Mahabharata?
2. Where do the Mahamastakabhiseka festivals is celebrated/
3. Name the tow wives of Lord Kahyap associated with the Onam festival.

---

#### 21.4.15 Uttarakhand Fairs and Festivals

---

Fairs and festivals for long have been the unique, interesting feature of the land of India and Uttarakhand is also no exception. In fact it won't be wrong to say that it's a land of fairs and festival. Uttarakhand, a land dotted with temples and more temples, has its own fairs and festivals, which are inherent to the culture here and have been passed from one generation to another since centuries. At such auspicious occasions, places of worship like **Uttarakhand temples** turn into venues of fairs and great celebration attracting people from far and wide. A fair held in the state is not just linked with its cultural identity but is also an important mark of its socio economic fabric. It offers glimpses of all aspects of a culture. A common trend in India and in Uttarakhand therefore is that many festivals come with their attached fairs.

#### Jauljibi and Thal Fairs

The fair of Jauljibi (or the Kumaoni festival as it is known) is held here every year in the month of November. The place is also very significant since it is the confluence point of Rivers Kali and Gori. It is also the place of meeting of cultures, Shauka, Nepali and Kumaoni; these three cultures meet at this place. Stressing on the significance of this place in the past and even today is the fact this is the getaway to important places like Johar, Darma, Chaudans and Byans. It was also once the centre point between Tibet and Tarai regions. While the fair is important for its commercial value yet its cultural significance is equally important. It invites visitors from as far as Nepal, who come here to sell horses, ghee and take back food grains and jaggery. A similar kind of fair is organised in Thal on the occasion of Makar Sankranti on the occasion of Vaishakh Sankranti on 14th April every year and is particularly famous with Shaukas.

#### The Uttarayani Fair

The Uttarayani fair is a very important fair to the cultural and social fabric of Uttarakhand. It is organised at not one but many places throughout the land of Uttarakhand - Bageshwar, Rameshwar, Suit Mahadev, Chitrashila (Ranibagh) and Hansheshwar. However it's Bageshwar where maximum crowds gather, though all are important from cultural, social and economic point of view. The fair also is

connected with history, in the past also this fair has played key role, during the freedom movement. Gandhiji came here in Bageshwar fair in 1929.

### **Nanda Devi Fair**

Nanda Devi is the patron goddess of people of mountains. The Nanda Devi fair is held at many important cities across Uttarakhand like in Almora, Nainital, Kot, Ranikhet, Bhowali, Kichha and on a smaller level in villages of Lohar and in valleys of Pindar. According to the locals, the fair started in Kumaon region during the time of Kalyan Chand in 16th century. The fair is very important and sees visitors from far-flung areas. Rich with folk expression, the Nanda Devi fairs are also important from economical point of view. Famous Festivals of Uttarakhand

### **Makar Sankranti**

An important festival in northern India, it marks the beginning of season change. People give alms to the poor on this day and take dips in holy rivers. Uttarayani fair is held around this time. Another locally celebrated autumn festival of Uttarakhand around this time is Ghughutia or Kale Kauva. People make sweetmeats of flour and jaggery and make it in the shape of pomegranates, swords and knives and other such interesting shapes. A necklace is made with these then with an orange in the centre. Little children wear these and go out to attract crows and other birds and offer them pieces from their necklaces.

### **Phool Dei**

The festival is celebrated in the beginning of month of Chaitra according to the Hindu calendar, which comes sometime in mid March. It is mainly a festival of young girls, where in they go from house to house with plates full of rice, jaggery, coconut, green leaves and flowers. These girls give their blessings and wishes for the prosperity of the house and are given presents, jaggery, sweets, and money in return.

### **Harela and Bhaitauli**

This festival is celebrated on first day of navaratri. It's an important Kumaoni festival where women fill baskets with soil and sow seven different kind of seeds in them. On the tenth day, when the seeds have germinated and grown into grasses, they are plucked and put in head and behind the ears. It is during this time that brothers send gifts to their sisters. The presents are called Bhaituali.

### **Olgia**

The festival is celebrated on the first day of August or Bhado as it is called in the Hindi calendar. This is the time when the fields are full of lush green harvest and the milking animals are very productive. Earlier son in-laws to father and nephews to maternal uncles used to give presents, however now a days it has changed.

People eat chapatis with ghee and urad dal (pulse) filled in it. The festival's popularity has declined over a period of time.

### **Khatarua**

While some say that the festival is celebrated in lieu of victory of king of Kumaon. But the popular belief goes that the festival marks the beginning of autumn season. It's celebrated sometime in mid September, the first day of month of Ashwin according to the Hindu calendar. Bonfires are lighted around which children dance. People offer cucumbers to fire as it is said to destroy all the evils. Special care is taken of animals during this time.

### **Bat Savitri**

Another popular festival celebrated in entire northern India by married women for the well being of their spouses. The festival is celebrated on the last day of the dark half of the month of Jyeshtha according to Hindu calendar. Women worship Savitri who with her intense devotion brought her husband from death and observe fasts. They also worship a holy tree called Bat or Banyan tree.

### **Ganga Dusshera or Dasar**

The festival is celebrated sometime between May and June on the tenth day of the month of Jyeshtha according to Hindu calendar. This is the day of worshipping river Ganga and people take a dip in holy rivers. Many people put up stalls and offer water and food.

---

## **21.4.11 WEST BENGAL**

---

Anybody who wishes to see the real culture of West Bengal in its exuberant best, be in West Bengal during all the major festivals of the state. In fact, it does not matter which time of the year you are visiting the state, you will always be close to a festival as the entire year is filled with festivals. Some of the festivals are celebrated throughout the state with same passion and devotion, whereas some are area oriented and are seen celebrated only in some places. In all festivals, one gets to experience the famous traditions and rituals that have hung on to the culture of West Bengal since the beginning, and the mythological aspect that are mesmerizing for people from different religion and beliefs. The main festival of all undoubtedly is Durga Puja which is celebrated during the Navaratri.

### **Durga Puja**

Durga Puja is the most important and most widely celebrated festival in West Bengal. It is celebrated during the Navaratri which fall close to the months of September or October. The tradition of Durga Puja celebrations has been prevalent since 16th century. Since then the festival is celebrated with magnificence seldom seen anywhere else. The puja goes on for five consecutive days starting the 6th day of Navaratri and ending on the 10th day. During the five days, huge and grand pandals are set up in all parts of the state where cultural events are organized

throughout the day. Every day of the festival people dress themselves in new and traditional clothes. It is also the time when the range and variety of exotic dishes is at its widest. On the tenth day, the idol of Goddess Durga is taken to River Ganges for the most important ritual of the festival, the immersion of idol of Goddess Durga. This marks the end of Durga Puja Festival.

### **Naba Barsho**

Naba Barsho is the Bengali New year that falls in the month of April according to Gregorian calendar. The date is generally 13th or 14th of the month every year. To ride into the New Year, people clean and decorate their houses by making elaborate and colorful rangolis or alpanas in front of their houses. Rangolis are generally made using flour put around earthenware pot decorated with auspicious swastika. Some people also use flowers to design these Rangolis at the facade of their homes. For the New Year to be prosperous, people offer pujas to Lord Ganesha and Goddess Lakshmi. You will see most of the people clad in traditional dresses, women in white saris with red borders and men in dhotis and kurta in the morning and attending parties in the evening in all glamor and modernity.

---

### **21.5 SUMMARY**

---

Diverse religious faiths and geographical variance have lead to the celebration of a number of festivals. Some of them are common throughout the country with the equal enthusiasm and some of them have peculiar feature of the region. But it is true that all the fairs and festivals of our country have its root in our culture.

In this unit you went through esteem of various fairs and festivals of India and I hope it will certainly gave you the true picture of our rich cultural heritage. But one thing is very alarming that all this is not moving to our new generation and hence many of them are at the edge of lapse. So the need of time is to preserve our rich heritage of fairs and festival.

---

### **21.6 GLOSSARY**

---

**Enthusiasm**-strong interest or admiration

**Attire**-cloths, dresses

**Dazzle**-impress or overpower with knowledge, ability

**Exuberance**-lively, high spirited

---

### **21.7 ANSWERS TO "CHECK YOUR PROGRESS"**

---

1. Raht Yatra
2. Durga puja
3. Holi
4. Id-ul-fitr
5. Chhath puja

6. Trinetreshwer fair
7. Saravanbegola, Karnataka
8. Diti and Aditi

---

## 21.8 QUESTIONS

---

1. Describe the famous religious festivals of Uttarakhand.
2. "The religious fairs and festivals of India justify the unity of diversity of India". Do you agree with the statement? Explain.
3. Write an essay on the religious fairs and festivals of India.
4. Write short notes :
  - a) Onam
  - b) Jagnath Rath yatra
  - c) Nanda devi Fair
  - d) Id-ul-fitr
  - e) Chhath fair

---

## 21.9 REFERENCE / FURTHER READING

---

G. Evans (Fair Trade: Cultural Tourism and Craft Production in Third World, 1994).

Medieval India, NCERT, New Delhi, 1990

Ancient India, NCERT, New Delhi, 1999

Raj Kuldeep, History of India (Ancient and medieval), Sarswati House Pvt Ltd, Delhi

Raj Kuldeep, Modern India and Contemporary world, Sarswati House Pvt Ltd, Delhi

Krishan deva, Temples of North India, NBT, New Delhi, 1969

---

[http://archive.tourism.nsw.gov.au/Sites/SiteID6/objLib13/2\\_defining\\_nature\\_tourism.pdf](http://archive.tourism.nsw.gov.au/Sites/SiteID6/objLib13/2_defining_nature_tourism.pdf)

<http://www.manase.org/en/maharashtra.php?mid=68&smid=21&id=872>

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tourism\\_in\\_Maharashtra](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tourism_in_Maharashtra)

<http://www.tourismgoa.in/wildlife-in-goia.htm>

<http://diutourism.co.in/>

[http://www.yoto98.noaa.gov/yoto/meeting/tour\\_rec\\_316.html](http://www.yoto98.noaa.gov/yoto/meeting/tour_rec_316.html)

<http://www.indialine.com/travel/beaches>

<http://www.maharashtratourism.net/beaches/index.html>

<http://www.maharashtratourism.net/beaches/>

<http://www.mapsofindia.com/maps/goa/beaches-go.html>

<http://diutourism.co.in/nagoa-beach-diu-india.php>

[http://archive.tourism.nsw.gov.au/Sites/SiteID6/objLib13/2\\_defining\\_nature\\_tourism.pdf](http://archive.tourism.nsw.gov.au/Sites/SiteID6/objLib13/2_defining_nature_tourism.pdf)

<http://www.yatra.com/travel/india-tourism/maharashtra-tourism.html>

<http://www.bharatonline.com/maharashtra/wildlife.html>

<http://www.maharashtratourism.net/hill-stations/index.html>

<http://www.maharashtratourism.net/trekking/index.html>

<http://www.maharashtratourism.net/waterfalls.html>

<http://www.goatourism.gov.in/>

[http://www.goa-tourism.com/around\\_goa.php?id=4](http://www.goa-tourism.com/around_goa.php?id=4)

[http://ecotourisminindia.com/eco\\_places/diu.html](http://ecotourisminindia.com/eco_places/diu.html)